# Portuguese

PROGRAMMATIC COURSE VOLUME 1 (REVISED)



FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE DEPARTMENT OF STATE

## Portuguese

#### PROGRAMMATIC COURSE VOLUME 1 (REVISED)

by
JACK LEE ULSH
and
ASSOCIATES



FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE DEPARTMENT OF STATE

### FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE BASIC COURSE SERIES

Edited by

MARIANNE LEHR ADAMS

#### PREFACE

Portuguese Programmatic Course was prepared by Jack Lee Ulsh, supervisor of Portuguese instruction at the Foreign Service Institute. This first volume contains 25 units of work. Volume 2 contains an additional 23 units and completes the course. The Portuguese presented in both volumes is educated speech drawn principally from Brazilian sources but intended to serve the needs of students going to Europe or Africa. The guidance of an instructor will be helpful in making such adaptations as are appropriate for continental or African Portuguese as well as for regional variations within Brazil.

The first edition of Volume I appeared in 1974. In this, the revised edition, units 1 - 7 have been rewritten with an entirely different format and units 8 - 10 have undergone major changes. Units 11 - 25 have been left essentially as they were, receiving only minor modifications and corrections.

Inês de Freitas Ulsh was the author's chief consultant for the first edition, contributing substantially to the development of many of the dialogs and drills. Much of her work remains in units 11 - 25 of the present edition. The author's principal contributor and consultant for the revised units 1 - 10 has been Murilo Von Meien. Useful suggestions were offered by M. Zilah Pereira Aranha.

The tape recordings which provide the principal substance of this course were made under the guidance of Mr. Ulsh in the FSI language laboratory with Jose M. Ramirez serving as the audio engineer. The Portuguese voicing was done by Yara Alvarenga, T. Lisieux C. Campbell, Zoe Finhane Greene, Milenne Dias Hauseman, Neire Barim de Souza Johnson, Mrs. Ulsh and Mr. Von Meien. Announcements and English voicing were supplied by Mr. Ulsh.

The original manuscript was typed by Irma Ponce, Maryko Deemer and Claire Freeman. Revised units 1 - 10 and the changed portions of units 11 - 25 were typed by Megan Maria McCall.

The cover and the title page were prepared by John McClelland of the Audio Visual Staff. Mr. Von Meien photographed the view of Rio de Janeiro which was used for the cover design of both volumes.

The original edition of Volume I was accompanied by an instructor's manual which provided a guide to the recorded portions of the student's text and contained a script for all of the Portuguese which had been recorded and which did not appear in print in the student text. The revised Volume I has no separate instructor's manual. Recorded portions which are not evident from the text are included in a special section in the back of the volume.

Lloyd B. Swift
Associate Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute

TO ÂNGELA

#### Foreword

This volume contains twenty-five units of work. Units one through twenty-four contain new material. Unit twenty-five is a review.

A portion of the materials is presented through programming. Indeed, the word <u>programmatic</u> in the title means just that: partially programmed.

In the typical programmed format, information is given to you by means of a carefully designed sequence of numbered 'frames.'
What is a 'frame?' A frame is simply a step in a learning sequence, and it bears a number for identification. Let us illustrate.

- Right now you are looking at a frame. It is frame number one, and we have given it that number. It is the first step in a very brief learning sequence that you are now undertaking.
- 2. This is frame number 2. Usually a frame will refer you to an item recorded on the tape. When this is the case, you will see one or more sets of parentheses appearing right after the frame and just below it, like this:

( ) ( )

3.	The parentheses will always mean that something is recorded on
	the tape, and the number of sets of parentheses will always
	tell you the number of times that that particular 'something'
	is recorded on the tape. Thus, two sets of parentheses will
	indicate that the item appears twice. Likewise, you can
	expect to hear an item three times if you see this:

( ) ( ) ( )

- 4. So, when you see one or more sets of ( ), you should <u>turn</u> on the tape and listen. But, always be sure you read the frame first. You will probably find it necessary to <u>turn</u> off the tape after the last set of ( ) to keep the tape from getting ahead of you.
- 5. You will often see an 'x' after some or all of the parentheses, like this:

( ) ( ) x ( ) x ( ) x

6. That 'x' means that you are to mimic aloud (at the very least, under you breath, softly) what you have just heard. In this case you would repeat aloud after <a href="each">each</a> of the last three times you hear the item. You may let the tape run as you do this.

( ) ( ) x ( ) x ( ) x

- 7. Beginning in Unit 10 you will be asked questions which will be based on information we have given you. You are to answer aloud. The correct answers will appear just below the frame, to the left of the page, partially in the margin, like this:
  (Answer)
- 8. Always give you answer aloud first. Then check the answer in the left margin to see if you were right. To avoid temptation you should keep the answer covered with your hand or a suitably sized piece of paper.\* Reveal the answer only after you have spoken it aloud. You should then further verify the correct response by listening to it on the tape, where we have pre-recorded it, and by repeating it aloud as shown. This procedure will usually be indicated as follows:

Verify: ()x ()x

So much for our very brief introduction to programming. It is unlikely that you will have any trouble following along.

All portions of these materials, whether they are programmed or not, lend themselves well to self-instruction. It is recommended, however, that you have a 'check-out' session with an

<sup>\*</sup> The author once saw a student using a fat cigar. No objections, provided it's not lighted!

instructor at regular intervals to assure yourself that you are progressing satisfactorily. During these sessions the instructor can verify what you have prepared, polishing it and practicing it with you. In an intensive course where you are studying Portuguese up to eight hours a day it is advisable to plan on two to three or more hours of 'check-out' per day, preferably not all at one sitting.

In the first six units the programming leads to brief conversational <u>exchanges</u>. These exchanges appear in the text and they are pre-recorded on tape. You should take the time to learn them well, because you will be asked to exhibit them and practice them with your instructor during the check-out sessions.

A series of longer exchanges called <u>dialogs</u> begins in Unit seven. These too you will want to prepare thoroughly so that you feel comfortable participating in them with your instructor.

In Units eight through twenty-four you will find a variety of practice exercises dealing with one or another grammatical point. Most of these exercises are recorded on tape. Follow the instructions for each one and work conscientiously. Your instructor will want to verify that you have mastered the point being drilled.

#### CONTENTS

כד	~	۵	£	$\neg$	$\sim$	_
	4	⊏:	1	а		_

#### Foreword

Unit 1	
Programming	1
Pronunciation	
Nasal om	2
Nasal <u>im</u>	4
dj sound in <u>dia</u>	6
Word Order	
<u>Estā, sim</u>	7
Pronunciation	
unaspirated $\underline{\mathtt{t}}$	10
<u>em</u> diphthong	11
syllable-final $\underline{\mathbf{r}}$	16
ch sound in noite	20
sh sound in chovendo	21
<u>ão</u> diphthong in <u>não</u>	22
Negation	
<u>não</u> for 'no' and 'not'	22

Unit 2		
Programming		25
Part I		
obrigado/obrigada		26
o senhor/a senhora	28,	29
Pronunciation		
<pre>nh of senhor/senhora</pre>	28,	29
o of <u>senhora</u>		29
flapped $\underline{r}$ of $\underline{\text{senhora}}$		30
<pre>vai/vou in greetings</pre>		32
Pronunciation		
nasal <u>ui</u> diphthong ( <u>muito</u> )		34
Leavetaking		37
Pronunciation		
<u>é</u> of <u>até</u>		37
o of <u>logo</u>		38
<u>ã</u> of <u>amanhã</u>		39
Part II		
casado/casada		41
sou		43
<pre>solteiro/solteira</pre>		46
Pronunciation		
<u>lh</u> of <u>filho</u>		50
tem/tenho	50,	51

Pronunciation	
<u>l</u> of <u>Qual</u>	56
<u>e</u> of <u>velha</u>	56
<u>o</u> of <u>nova</u>	57
<u>r</u> of <u>Maria</u>	58
chamar-se	61
Unit 3	
Programming	63
Pronunciation	
r of Yara	63
conhece/conheço	64
Pronunciation	
r of professor	67
<u>e</u> of <u>ela</u>	67
<u>e</u> of verb <u>é</u>	68
<pre>nh of minha</pre>	68
o of <u>nossa</u>	70
<u>r</u> of <u>claro</u>	73
e of essa	75
<u>r</u> of <u>rapaz</u>	75
esse/essa	76
<pre>meu/nosso with masculine nouns</pre>	78 <b>,</b> 79
<pre>ele/ela contrast</pre>	80
Ouem?	83

Unit 4	
Programming	87
Pronunciation	
nasal $ ilde{\underline{ ilde{a}}}$	87
<u>do/da</u> showing possession	91
Onde?/Onde esta?	95
Responses to Onde?: em, na	96, 97
Exchanges with <u>va</u> i/ <u>vou</u>	101
Unit 5	
Programming	107
Pronoun <u>eu</u>	107
<u>vou/vai</u> with infinitive	108
Infinitive = neutral form	110
Neutral forms: $-\underline{ar}$ , $-\underline{er}$ , $-\underline{ir}$	114
Pronunciation	
<u>j</u> and <u>s</u> of <u>Jose</u>	115
$\underline{r}$ and $\underline{l}$ of <u>Raquel</u>	116
<u>r</u> of <u>Roberto</u>	116
stressed syllable in <u>Inês</u>	117
stressed syllable in <u>Lúcia</u>	118
<pre>mas (contrastive statements)</pre>	119
pretende with infinitives	122
<pre>pretendo with infinitives</pre>	123, 124
Quando?	127
Responses to Quando?	127

Unit 6	
Programming	135
Pronunciation	
syllable-final $\underline{1}$	135
Title of respect: dona	136
Title of respect: o senhor	137
quero/quer with infinitives	138, 139
posso/pode with infinitives	146, 147
por que? (Why?)	152
porque (because)	153
com	157
sem	158
Unit 7	
Programming	163
I-forms	163
He-forms	164
We-forms	165
We-forms with infinitives	167
Definite article and indefinite article	167, 168
Pronunciation	
flapped $\underline{r}$ in clusters	169
<u>é que</u> after <u>Onde</u> ?	170, 171
Você	171, 172

Dialog		173
Supplemental Practice	es	
I-form with neutr	cal form	176
We-form with neut	ral form	177
He-form with neut	ral form	179
Asking questions		181
Answering question	ons	182
Practice with <u>so</u>		183
Practice with qui	ser	185
Translation pract	cice	186
	Unit 8	
Programming		191
Pronunciation		
diphthong review	V	192
open $\underline{E}$ , closed $\underline{e}$	2	195
Dialog		198
A Look at the Grammar	:	
They-forms		200
'Going to'		205
'Not' + verb		211
Comprehension		214
Translations		214

Unit 9	
Programming	219
Pronunciation	
t and ch contrast	219
d and dg contrast	220
Dialog	222
A Look at the Grammar	
Classification of Nouns: Gender	224
Definite articles	228
Indefinite articles	230
Comprehension	233
Translations	233
Unit 10	
Programming	236
The Contractions <u>na</u> and <u>no</u>	236
Descriptive Adjectives	240
Dialog	243
A Look at the Grammar	
Contractions <u>no</u> and <u>na</u>	245
'Being': <u>ser/estar</u>	245
More contractions: <a href="mailto:numa">numa</a>	252
Comprehension	254
Translations	254

Unit 11	
Programming	257
Pronunciation	
Open <u>O</u> ; closed <u>o</u>	257
Structure	
Pluralizing <u>s</u>	259
Voiced/unvoiced contrast	262
Pluralizing <u>z</u>	263
Plural nos, nas, nuns, numas	265
Dialog	269
Some numbers	270
A Look at the Grammar	
I. Plural Nouns	270
II. Gender Agreement	
Quantos	272
Meu, minha	274
III. More contractions	
<u>do, da, dos, das</u> <u>dum, duma, duns, dumas</u>	275 277
Comprehension	278
Translations	278

Unit 12	
Programming	281
Cognates	281
ter que	286
Dialog	288
A Look at the Grammar	
I. Verbs of -ar type	290
II. <u>Gostar</u> + <u>de</u>	295
III. <u>ter</u> <u>que</u>	300
IV. Negative questions	302
Comprehension	304
Translations	304
Unit 13	
Programming	306
Pronunciation	
Nasal Vowels	306
Open <u>O</u> ; - <u>ar</u> verbs	311
Dialog	313
A Look at the Grammar	
I. They-forms of $-\underline{ar}$ verbs	315
II. We-forms of -ar verbs	317
III. Conjunction que	318
Comprehension	322
Translations	322

#### Unit 14

Programming	326
Past tense - <u>ar</u> verbs, I-forms/he-forms	326
Past tense: 'go'; 'have'	330
Contractions <u>ao</u> , <u>à</u>	333
Contractions <u>nele</u> , <u>nela</u>	334
Dialog	336
A Look at the Grammar	
I. Past tense -ar verbs	339
II. Past tense of 'having'	343
III. Contractions <u>ao</u> , <u>à</u>	345
IV. Past tense of 'going'	346
V. achar que; falar que	347
Comprehension	348
Translations	348
Unit 15	
Programming	350
-aram ending	352
-amos ending, present and past	354
<u>ir</u> , <u>ter</u> in past	355
'we are'; 'they are'	359
saber/conhecer	360
Dialog	361
A Look at the Grammar	

	I.	<pre>-ar verbs in past, we-forms and they-forms</pre>	365
		With jā, ainda não	369
	II.	We-forms, they-forms of 'having', 'going' in past	371
	III.	Ter, Ser, Estar; we and they-forms, present	374
	IV.	<u>Ser</u> for identity	377
	V.	Double negative <u>nãonada</u>	380
	Comprehen	sion	381
	Translati	ons	381
		Unit 16	
Programming 384			384
	- <u>er</u>	verbs in past	384
	Ref	lexives	388
	pel	o/pela	392
	Dialog		393
	A Look at	the Grammar	
	I.	-er verbs in past	396
	II.	Telling time	398
	III.	Reflexives	403
	Comprehen	sion	403
	Translati	ons	404

Unit 17		
Programming		
Pronunciation		
- <u>ão</u> / <u>ões</u> ; cognates	408	
- <u>al</u> /- <u>ais</u> ; cognates	411	
$\underline{z}$ link before vowels	413	
Structure		
- <u>ir</u> verbs in past	414	
<u>de</u> with <u>sair</u>	419	
Dialog	422	
Expansion Exercises		
Adverbial Time Expressions	424	
Comprehension		
Translations		
Unit 18		
Programming		
Possessives:		
o meu/a minha	430	
<u>o seu/a sua</u>	432	
o nosso/a nossa	434	
o <u>livro</u> <u>dele/a carta dele</u> , <u>etc</u> .	435	
o dele/a dele, etc.	437	
o ( <u>livro</u> ) <u>de Paulo</u> , etc.	438	

Dialog		
Supplementary Vocabulary		
	Days of the week	443
	Months of the year	443
	Expansion Exercises	
	Days and months	443
	comprar and mandar	444
	<u>a gente</u> 'we'	444
	Comprehension	445
	Exchanges	
	Unit 19	
Programming		447
Pronunciation		
	Nasal vowel linked to non-nasal vowel	447
	Present tense - <u>ir</u> verbs	450
	- <u>ndo</u> form of verb	454
	Dialog	458
	Expansion Exercises	460
	Comprehension	465
	Translations	465

#### Unit 20

Programming		467	
	n <u>O</u> and <u>E</u> in <u>-ar</u> and verbs	467	
est	e, <u>esse</u> , etc.	476	
Dialog		480	
Expansio	n Exercises		
1.	Common greetings	483	
2.	<u>dá</u> para	484	
3.	Que + noun!	485	
4-8.	Cognates ending in $-\frac{\tilde{a}o}{and}$ and $-al$	486	
Comprehe	nsion	490	
Exchanges		490	
	Unit 21		
Programming 49		493	
I.	- <u>ava</u> endings	493	
II.	Nouns and adjectives ending in stressed $-\underline{el}$ , $-\underline{ol}$ , $-\underline{il}$ , $-\underline{ul}$	506	
Dialog		512	
Expansion Exercises			
1.	viajar	514	
2.	alias	514	
3.	Que (exclamation)	515	
Translations 516			

Unit 22	
Programming	518
- <u>ia</u> endings	518
Dialog	531
Expansion Exercises	
1. Common First Names	534
2. Name Combinations	535
3. vender	535
Translations	536
Unit 23	
Programming	540
<u>era</u> , etc.	540
tinha, etc.	541
estava, etc.	544
'Past description'	546
pretendia, etc.	548
queria, etc.	549
<u>ia</u> , etc.	550
tinha que, etc.	551
sabia, etc.	552
Dialog	554
Expansion Exercises	
1. reparar	555
2. progurar	555

3.	perder-se	556
4.	o dinheiro dá	556
5.	More Names	
	A. First Names	558
	B. Family Names	558
Translati	ons	559
	Unit 24	
Programmi	ng	563
I.	Unstressed $-\underline{el}$ and $-\underline{il}$ endings	563
II.	Open $\underline{0}$ and closed $\underline{o}$ in certain adjectives	573
Dialog		580
Expansion Exercises		
1.	acabar + -ndo	582
2.	precisar	582
3.	More Family Names	583
Exchanges	,	585
	Unit 25	
REVIEW		
Outline of Review 591		
Portuguese-English Vocabulary 633		
Index of Grammatical and Topical Features 641		
Instructor's Guide to the Accompanying Recordings 647		

#### Unit 1

1.	Listen to this vowel sound on the tape. Do not repeat it
	yet.
	( ) ( )
2.	The sound you just heard is a Portuguese nasal vowel.
	Listen to it again.
	( ) ( )
3.	This masal vowel sound is seldom heard all by itself.
	Usually it is heard in combination with other sounds. To
	illustrate, we can put a $\underline{b}$ sound before it. The result is
	a one-syllable word. Just listen.
	( ) ( )
4.	Here is your chance to repeat that word. Mimic the voice
	on the tape as accurately as you can.
	( )x ( )x
5.	Now we will put an $\underline{s}$ in front of this same nasal vowel.
	This gives us another Portuguese word. Just listen.
	( ) ( )
6.	Here is your chance to repeat that word. Mimic the voice
	on the tape as accurately as you can.
	( )x ( )x
7.	Now we will put a $\underline{d}$ in front of the vowel. This gives us
	still another word. Just listen.
	( ) ( )

8.	Now say the word. Mimic the voice on the tape as accurately
	as you can.
	( ) <sub>X</sub> ( ) <sub>X</sub>
9.	In this frame we will review the three words just given,
	and we will show you what they look like. Mimic the voice
	on the tape as your eye follows along below.
	bom ( )x ( )x
	som ( )x ( )x
	dom ()x ()x
10.	This visual stimulus may tempt you to say an $\underline{\mathtt{m}}$ sound
	when pronouncing these words. This would be wrong. There
	is no $\underline{m}$ sound in these words. Be sure that you do not let
	yourself say one.
	bom ( )x
	som ( )x
	dom ( )x
11.	Here is another common word in which this same nasal vowel
	occurs. Just listen.
	com ( ) ( )
12.	Now repeat the word, making sure that you do not end it
	with an $\underline{m}$ sound.
	com ( )x ( )x
13.	Here are two common names that contain this nasal vowel.
	Just listen. Do not repeat yet.
	Afonso ( ) ( )
	Alonso ( ) ( )

14.	Now repeat. Be careful that you say the nasal vowel and
	that you do not say an $\underline{n}$ sound.
	Afonso ( )x ( )x
	Alonso ( )x ( )x
15.	Let us now go on to another nasal vowel. Listen to the
	voice on the tape. Do not repeat yet.
	( ) ( )
16.	As before, we will prefix several consonant sounds to this
	nasal vowel in order to form words. First we will prefix
	an $\underline{s}$ sound. Just listen.
	( ) ( )
17.	Now imitate the voice on the tape as well as you can.
	( )x ( )x
18.	Listen to this same nasal vowel preceded by an $\underline{m}$ sound.
	( ) ( )
19.	Now imitate.
	( )x ( )x
20.	Listen to this same nasal vowel preceded by a $\underline{v}$ sound.
	( ) ( )
21.	Now imitate.
	( )x ( )x

22.	In this frame we will review the three words just given,
	and we will show you what they look like. Continue to
	mimic the voice on the tape as your eye follows along
	below.
	sim ( )x ( )x
	mim ( )x ( )x
	vim ( )x ( )x
23.	The <u>sight</u> of the $\underline{m}$ may tempt you to <u>say</u> an $\underline{m}$ . Do not let
	that happen. Pronounce a nasal vowel instead.
	sim ( )x
	mim ( )x
	vim ( )x
24.	Here is the same nasal vowel preceded by the $1 \le 1$ sound.
	Just listen.
	( ) ( )
25.	That was the first syllable of a two-syllable word. Now
	repeat the syllable.
	( )x ( )x
26.	The second syllable of the word does not have a nasal
201	vowel. Just listen.
	( ) ( )
27	Now repeat the second syllable.
27.	
	( )x ( )x
28.	By combining the two syllables we produce the word. Listen
	then mimic.
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x

29.	Here is how the word appears in print. Mimic carefully as
	you look at it.
	lindo ( ) ( )
30.	As you see, in this word an $\underline{n}$ appears, but you should try
	not to say an $\underline{n}$ . Instead, say the nasal vowel.
	lindo ( )x ( )x
31.	You will often find this same word said with a different
	ending. Just listen.
	linda ( ) ( )
32.	Now repeat. Try not to say an $\underline{n}$ sound.
	linda ( )x ( )x
33.	The word you just said can also be a proper name. Repeat
	it again, being sure to make the vowel nasal.
	Linda ( )x ( )x
34.	In a brief conversational exchange that will soon be
	presented, you will offer the greeting 'Good day.' Here
	is the word 'good.' It is a word you have already
	practiced. As you say it again, remember to make the
	vowel nasal.
	bom ( )x ( )x
35.	And here is the word 'day.' It is a new word for you,
	and there is no nasal vowel.
	dia ( )x ( )x
36.	Many Portuguese speakers pronounce the $\underline{d}$ of $\underline{dia}$ as you just
	heard it, very similar to our English $\underline{d}$ . Other speakers
	pronounce the $\underline{d}$ much like the $\underline{j}$ of English $\underline{j}$ eep, as you

	will hear at this point on the tape.
	dia ( )x ( )x
37.	Either pronounciation is correct. Both are common. For
	the moment we will ask you to copy the j of jeep.
	dia ( )x ( )x
38.	It may also be useful to represent this sound with the
	symbols dg, as in the English word 'fudge.' Say the word
	'fudge,' then transfer the dg to the Portuguese word dia.
	fu <u>dg</u> e ( )x ( )x
	<u>d</u> ia ( )x ( )x
39.	If we put $\underline{bom}$ and $\underline{dia}$ together we have the greeting
	'Good day,' or 'Good morning.'
	bom dia ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
40.	The person responding to this greeting will likely use the
	same phrase in returning the greeting.
	bom dia ( )x ( )x
41.	In the third line of the conversational exchange to which we
	are leading you, the speaker says 'The day is beautiful.'
	You already know 'day.'
	dia ( )x ( )x
42.	Here is 'the day.'
	o dia ( )x ( )x
43.	Notice that the word 'the' in this phrase is simply the
	sound $\underline{\mathbf{u}}$ .
	o ( )x ( )x
44.	Here again is 'the day.'
	o dia ( )x ( )x
	1.6

45.	The word 'beautiful' is also a word you have already
	practiced. As you say it again, remember to make its
	first vowel nasal.
	lindo ( )x ( )x
46.	Listen to the way you say 'is.'
	está ( ) ( )
47.	Now repeat.
	está ()x ()x
48.	Here, then, are the last two words of this sentence: 'is
	beautiful.'
	está lindo ( )x ( )x
49.	And here is the complete sentence: 'The day is beautiful.
	O dia está lindo ( )x ( )x
50.	In the fourth line of this exchange the speaker agrees
	that it is a beautiful day. He says, 'Yes, it is.' You
	already know 'it is.'
	está ()x ()x
51.	And you have already practiced the word 'yes.' As you
	say it again, remember to make the vowel nasal.
	sim ( )x ( )x
52.	Here, then, is the fourth and final line of the exchange:
	'Yes, it is.'
	Está sim ( )x ( )x
53.	The normal sequence in Portuguese is 'It is, yes' rather
	than 'Yes, it is.'
	Está sim ( )x ( )x

You are now ready for the first of a series of brief conversational exchanges. The exchange appears on the next page and it is pre-recorded at this point on the tape. As with all the exchanges which are to follow, we have recorded it twice, once with a pause after each sentence, to enable you to repeat while the tape is still running, and once straight through, without pauses, so you can hear the exchange as a bit of normal conversation. Work through the recorded presentations several times, especially the one with pauses, mimicking and practicing both roles until you feel you know the material well enough to participate in it with your instructor in the check-out session. Then go on to frame 54.

Eab	~ ~	~~	4	1
Exch	าท	ae.	<b>#</b>	1

Bom dia.	
Bom dia.	
O dia está lindo.	
Está sim.	
	Good morning.
	Good morning.
	The day is beautiful.
	Yes, it is.

54.	As part of the next exchange one of the speakers asks if
	'everything is well.' Here is the word for 'everything.'
	Do not repeat it yet.
	tudo ( ) ( )
55.	The first syllable is $\underline{tu}$ Just listen.
	<u>tu</u> - ( ) ( )
56.	This syllable sounds a lot like our English word 'too.'
	but the 't' is different. If you say English 'too' and
	put your hand about an inch from your mouth you will feel
	a puff of air. Try it.
	too ( )x ( )x
57.	This puff of air is a part of the English 't' sound when
	it comes at the beginning of a word. Say these English
	words and feel the air hitting your hand.
	tall ( )x ( )x
	tan ( )x ( )x
	tin ( )x ( )x
	ten ( )x ( )x
	toe ( )x ( )x
	too ( )x ( )x
58.	The Portuguese 't' does not have this puff of air. Try
	to say the following Portuguese syllables without it.
	ta ( )x ( )x
	to ( ) y ( ) y

( )x

tu ( )x

59.	A degree of control is required to keep the air flow in
	check. Practice the syllables again.
	ta ( )x ( )x
	to ( )x ( )x
	tu ( )x ( )x
60.	Here again is the word 'everything.' Say it without the
	puff of air on the 't.'
	tudo ( )x ( )x
61.	The second syllable is much like our English word 'do.'
	tudo ( )x ( )x
62.	Now listen to the word 'well.' Do not repeat it yet.
	( ) ( )
63.	We can approach the pronunciation of the word 'well' via
	the English word 'bay.' First, say the English word 'bay.
	bay ( )x ( )x
64.	Second, pronounce just the '-ay' portion of 'bay.'
	-ay ( )x ( )x
65.	Third, say the '-ay' with nasalization. Mimic carefully.
	nasalized -ay ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
66.	Finally, put a $\underline{b}$ sound in front of the nasalized '-ay.'
	This should give you the Portuguese word 'well.'
	b plus nasalized -ay ( )x ( )x
67.	Continue to mimic the word as you now see it for the first
	time.
	bem ( )x ( )x

68.	Seeing the way the word is written might tempt you to
	pronounce it with an $\underline{m}$ sound. There is no $\underline{m}$ sound.
	Continue to mimic.
	bem ( )x ( )x
69.	Now let us put $\underline{\text{tudo}}$ and $\underline{\text{bem}}$ together so that we can ask
	'Is everything well?' or 'Is everything okay?'
	Tudo bem? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
70.	No verb is needed in this expression. Observe that in
	English too we can do without the verb: 'Everything okay?'
	Tudo bem? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
71.	The response to this question is likely to consist of the
	very same words delivered as a statement: 'Everything (is)
	fine.'

Tudo bem ( )x ( )x

Exchange	++	2
Lachange	1-	_

 Bom dia.		
 Bom dia.		
 Tudo bem?		
 Tudo bem.		
	 Good morning.	
	 Good morning.	
	 Is everything	okay?
	Everything is	okay.

72.	A useful variation in the above exchange is to have the
	second speaker respond with 'So-so' rather than 'Everything
	is fine.' In Portuguese 'so-so' is said literally as 'more
	or less.' First, just listen to the phrase 'more or less.'
	( ) ( )
73.	Here is the word 'more.' Listen and repeat.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
74.	Here is the word 'or.'
	( ) ( )x ( )x
75.	Now we put them together: 'More or' Notice the $\underline{z}$
	sound between the two words.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
76.	And finally here is the word 'less.'
	( ) ( )x ( )x
77.	Now we have the complete phrase: 'More or less.'
	( )x ( )x
78.	This is what the phrase looks like.
	a. mais ( )x
	Be sure you pronounce a $\underline{z}$ sound here.
	b. mais ou ( )x
	c mais on menos ( )x ( )x

Exchange	#	3
Drivinge		_

Bom dia.	
Bom dia.	
Tudo bem?	
Mais ou menos.	
	Good morning.
	Good morning.
	Everything okay?
	So-so (more or loss)

79.	So far our exchanges have concentrated on greetings in the
	morning. In the next exchange we will direct ourselves to
	the afternoon. Here is the word 'afternoon.' Listen, but
	do not mimic yet.
	tarde ( ) ( )
80.	The first syllable of the word is <u>tar</u> Just listen.
	tar- ( ) ( )
81.	The pronunciation of an $\underline{r}$ at the end of a syllable varies
	a bit from region to region. Many speakers pronounce it in
	a way that suggests a strong English $\underline{h}$ sound, that is, an
	$\underline{h}$ sound with a bit of friction or rasping added to it.
	Try to mimic that pronunciation here.
	tar- ( )x ( )x
82.	That is the pronunciation we will use in these frames.
	Mimic it again.
	tar- ( )x ( )x
83.	The second syllable is -de. Just listen.
	-de ( ) ( )
84.	The consonant sound here is the j sound of 'jeep,' or the
	dg of 'fudge.'
	-de ( )x ( )x
85.	Many speakers will have a $\underline{d}$ sound here, much like our
	English $\underline{d}$ , but for the moment we will ask you to use the
	$\underline{j}$ of 'jeep' or the $\underline{dg}$ or 'fudge.' Mimic again.
	-de ( )x ( )x
86.	Here are both syllables, forming the word for 'afternoon.'
	tarde ( )x ( )x
	1.16

87.	The word <u>tarde</u> requires a different form of the word for
	'good.' We can not use the form bom. Instead we use the
	form <u>boa</u> . Just listen.
	boa ( ) ( )
88.	There is no nasal vowel in boa. Mimic what you hear.
	boa ( )x ( )x
89.	Here is the complete phrase 'Good afternoon.'
	boa tarde ( ) ( )x ( )x
90.	The person addressed is likely to respond with the same
	greeting.
	boa tarde ( ) ( )x ( )x
91.	In a previous exchange we said that the day was beautiful.
J	Here we will say that the afternoon is beautiful. Here is
	'the afternoon.'
	a tarde ( )x ( )x
0.0	
92.	As you say the word 'beautiful' remember to make the first
	vowel nasal.
	linda ( )x ( )x
93.	Notice that the word in this instance is <u>linda</u> and not
	<u>lindo</u> .
	linda ( )x ( )x
94.	Here is the sentence: 'The afternoon is beautiful.'
	A tarde ( )x
	A tarde estā ( )x
	A tarde está linda ( )x ( )x

95.	The response to that senten	ce is translatable as 'It
	certainly is, or 'It is, i	ndeed.' Here is the word which
	serves as the equivalent of	'certainly' or 'indeed.'
	mesmo ( ) ( )x	( )x
96.	Notice the $\underline{z}$ sound in $\underline{\text{mesmo}}$	
	mesmo ( )x	( )x
97.	And here is the response:	'It certainly is.'
	Fatá mosmo ( )	( )x ( )x

## Exchange ## 4

 Boa tarde.	
 Boa tarde.	
 A tarde está linda.	
 Está mesmo.	
	 Good afternoon.
	 Good afternoon.
	 The afternoon is beautiful.
	It certainly is

98.	Now we will go on to an appropriate greeting for evening
	or night. Here is the first syllable of the word for
	'night.'
	( ) ( )x ( )x
99.	Here is the whole word.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
100.	Here is what the word for 'night' looks like.
	noite ( )x ( )x
101.	The word can be pronounced with a $\underline{t}$ sound, as above, or it
	can be pronounced with a sound resembling the $\underline{\mathtt{ch}}$ of 'cheese'
	noite ( )x ( )x
102.	Either way is correct, but for the moment we will ask you
	to use the <u>ch</u> of 'cheese.'
	noite ( )x ( )x
103.	You already know the proper form for 'good.'
	boa ( )x ( )x
104.	So here is the greeting 'Good evening.'
	boa noite ( )x ( )x
105.	The person responding to this greeting is likely to use the
	same greeting in return.
	boa noite ( )x ( )x
106.	In the next exchange the first speaker wants to know if it
	is raining. Listen to the word for 'raining.'
	( ) ( )
107.	Mimic the first syllable of the word.
	( )x ( )x

108.	Mimic the second syllable. The vowel here is nasal.
	( )x ( )x
109.	Here is the third syllable.
	( )x ( )x
110.	Now mimic the whole word.
	( )x ( )x
111.	Here is what the word 'raining' looks like.
	chovendo ()x ()x
112.	Notice that the $\underline{ch}$ spelling calls for an $\underline{sh}$ pronunciation.
	chovendo ()x ()x
113.	Try to make the second vowel nasal and try not to pronounce
	an $\underline{\mathbf{n}}$ .
	ven ( )x ( )x
	chovendo ()x ()x
114.	We already know the word 'is.'
	está ()x ()x
115.	So we can ask 'Is it raining?'
	Está chovendo? ( )x ( )x
116.	The answer is one that you have seen before: 'Yes, it is.'
	Está sim ( )x ( )x
117.	Or, as a variation, and depending on the weather, the answer
	might well be 'No, it is not.' In this frame listen to
	the Portuguese word that serves for both 'no' and 'not.'
	Do not repeat it yet.
	( ) ( )

118.	Now let's pronounce the word. First, say an $\underline{n}$ sound
	followed by a nasalized <u>uh</u> sound. Be sure you nasalize
	the $\underline{\mathrm{uh}}$ . Mimic carefully.
	$\underline{n}$ + nasalized $\underline{uh}$ ( )x ( )x
119.	Now, proceed to add a $\underline{u}$ sound to the above, and continue
	the nasalization.
	$\underline{\mathbf{n}}$ plus nasalized $\underline{\mathbf{u}}$ plus nasalized $\underline{\mathbf{u}}$ ( )x ( )x
120.	The above maneuvers should give you the Portuguese word
	that serves for both 'no' and 'not.' Mimic the word
	again.
	( )x ( )x
121.	Here is what the word looks like.
	não ( )x ( )x
122.	And here is the alternate answer, 'No, it is not.'
	Não, não está ( )x ( )x
123.	The first $\underline{\tilde{nao}}$ corresponds to English 'no,' the second to
	English 'not.'
	Não, não está ( )× ( )×

## Exchange # 5

 Boa noite.	
 Boa noite.	
 Está chovendo?	
 Está sim.	
	 Good evening.
	 Good evening.
	 Is it raining?
	 Yes, it is.

## Exchange ≠ 6

 Boa noite.	
 Boa noite.	
 Está chovendo?	
 Não, não está.	
	 Good evening.
	 Good evening.
	 Is it raining?
	 No, it's not.

	Unit 2
	Part 1
1.	Here is an easy phrase which often serves as a greeting.
	It means 'How are you?', or 'How goes it?'. Just listen.
	( ) ( )
2.	The first word means 'how.' Mimic the word.
	( )x ( )x
3.	The second word literally means 'goes.' Mimic the word.
	( )x ( )x
4.	The two words together mean 'How are you (going)?', or
	'How goes it?'. This is a greeting.
	( )x ( )x
5.	Here is what the words look like.
	Como vai? ( )x ( )x
6.	A common response to this greeting is 'Well, thanks.' You
	already have the word for 'well.'
	bem ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
7.	Listen to the word for 'thanks.'
	( ) ( )
8.	Here it is syllable by syllable. Just listen.
	1. ( )
	2. ( )
	3. ( )
	4. ( )
	Together: ( ) ( )

9.	Now mimic the word.		
	1.	(	) x
	2.	(	) x
	3.	(	) x
	4.	(	) x
	Together:	(	)x ( )x
10.	This is what it looks like	e.	
	obrigado ()x	(	) x
11.	If you are male, you will	say	the word as it was just given.
	If you are female, you wi	ll sa	ay it like this.
	obrigada ( )x	(	) x
12.	Here, then, is 'Well, tha	nks,'	said by a male.
	Bem obrigado ( )x	(	) x
13.	And said by a female.		
	Bem obrigada ( )x	(	) x

	Exchange	# 1	
 Bom dia.			
 Bom dia.			
 Como vai?			
 Bem obrigada.			
			Good morning.
			Good morning.
			How are you?
			Fine, thanks.
	Exchange	<b>≠</b> 2	
 Boa tarde.			
 Boa tarde.			
 Como vai?			
 Bem obrigado.			
			Good afternoon.
			Good afternoon.
			How's it going?
			Fine, thanks.

14.	'You' is said several ways in Portuguese. Here is one way.
	Just listen.
	( ) ( )
15.	There are three syllables in that expression. Observe and
	listen, but do not repeat yet.
	1. 0 ( )
	2. se- ( ) ( )
	3nhor ( ) ( )
	Together: o senhor ( ) ( )
16.	Mimic the first syllable. It is simply a $\underline{u}$ sound.
	o ()x ()x
17.	Now mimic the second syllable.
	se- ( )x ( )x
18.	And the third syllable.
	-nhor ( )x ( )x
19.	The $\underline{nh}$ of the third syllable resembles the $\underline{gn}$ of the English
	or French word cognac.
	-nhor ( )x ( )x
20.	The $\underline{r}$ varies a bit. For many Portuguese speakers it is a
	sound which is similar to a strong English $\underline{h}$ sound. That
	is the pronunciation we are using in these frames.
	-nhor ( )x ( )x
21.	Now let us put the three syllables together.
	o senhor ( )x ( )x

22.	What you have been practicing is the way to say 'you' when
	you are addressing a man.
	o senhor ( )x ( )x
23.	When addressing a woman the corresponding expression is a
	bit different. Just listen in this frame.
	( ) ( )
24.	Here is the expression syllable by syllable. Observe and
	listen, but do not mimic yet.
	1. a ( ) ( )
	2. se- ( ) ( )
	3nho- ( ) ( )
	4ra ( ) ( )
	Together: a senhora ( ) ( )
25.	The third syllable begins with the 'gn' sound of 'cognac.'
	Just listen.
	3nho- ( ) ( )
26.	The vowel sound in <pre>-nho-</pre> is like the vowel sound in the
	English word 'paws.' Now, mimic this sequence, maintaining
	the same vowel sound throughout.
	1. paws ( )x ( )x
	2. aw ( )x ( )x
	3nho- ( )x ( )x
	4. senho- ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	5. a senho- ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	6. a senhora ( )x ( )x

27.	The $\underline{r}$ of the last syllable	le i	s a q	uick	flap of the to	ngue	9
	against the front of the	roo	f of	the :	mouth. It is t	he s	same
	sound we are likely to he	ear	in En	glis	h words such as		
	'gotta', 'buddy', and 'ca	addy	'. M	imic	the following	Engl	lish
	words as they are said or	ı th	e tap	e an	d notice what h	appe	ens
	to your tongue as you rur	ov	er th	e <u>t</u>	and the $\underline{d}$ .		
	buddy ( )x ghett	0	( )	x	nitty-gritty	(	) x
	baddy ( )x batty	7	( )	х	should'a	(	) x
	caddy ( )x catty	7	( )	х	would'a	(	) x
	woody ( )x auto		( )	x	ought'a	(	) x
28.	This flap of the tongue i	ls t	he <u>r</u>	of Po	ortuguese <u>senho</u>	ra.	
	Maintain that flap as you	ı mi	mic t	his:	sequence.		
	(English) ought'a	(	) x	(	) x		
	-ora	(	) x	(	) x		
	-nhora	(	) x	(	) x		
	senhora	(	) x	(	) x		
	a senhora	(	) x	(	) x		
29.	Now repeat the two forms	for	<b>'</b> you	. '			
	o senhor	(	) x	(	) x		
	a senhora	(	) x	(	) x		
30.	We can use the forms for	'yo	u' in	the	greetings we h	.ave	been
	practicing. We can add t	hem	to <u>c</u>	omo	vai?		
	Como vai o senhor?	(	) x	(	) x		
	Como vai a senhora?	(	) x	(	) x		

Exchange ## 3
 Como vai o senhor? Bem obrigado.
How are you? Fine, thanks.
Exchange ## 4
 Como vai a senhora?  Bem obrigada.
How are you?

31.	We can also phrase the greeting like this:
	O senhor vai bem? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	A senhora vai bem? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
32.	This greeting literally asks 'Are you (going) well?' The
	response to it may include the form for 'I go' or 'I am
	going,' which is vou. Mimic carefully.
	vou ( )x ( )x
33.	The response could thus be 'Yes, I am (going well).'
	Vou sim ( )x ( )x

	Exchange	#	5
O senhor vai bem?			
	  Exchange		Are you well? Yes, I am.
 A senhora vai bem? Vou sim.	Exchange	++	
			Are you well? Yes, I am.

34.	The expression 'very well' often finds its way into these
	greetings. The word 'very' requires some special attention
	First, mimic this item.
	moo-i ( )x ( )x
35.	Now, nasalize the vowels.
	$m\widetilde{o}\widetilde{o}-\widetilde{1}$ ( )x ( )x
36.	Don't let it drag out too much.
	mõõí ()x ()x
37.	Now add the syllable $-to$ .
	mõõí-to ( )x ( )x
38.	That was the word 'very.' Here is what it really looks
	like.
	muito ( )x ( )x
39.	Now you can say 'very well.'
	muito bem ( )x ( )x
40.	You will need the word for 'and' in the next several
	exchanges. Here is 'and.'
	( )x ( )x
41.	This is what 'and' looks like.
	e ()x ()x
42.	Now you can ask 'And you?' as part of your greeting.
	e a senhora? ( )x ( )x
	e o senhor? ( )x ( )x

Exchange # 7
O senhor vai bem?
Vou sim, e a senhora?
Muito bem, obrigada.
Are you going well?
Yes, I am, and you?
Very well, thanks.
Exchange # 8
Como vai a senhora?
Muito bem, obrigada. E o senhor?
Muito bem, obrigado.
How are you?
Very well, thanks, and you?
Very well, thanks.

Exchange	#	9
----------	---	---

 Como vai o senhor?	
 Vou muito bem, obrigado.	
E o senhor?	
 Muito bem.	
	 How are you doing?
	 I'm doing very well, thanks,
	and you?
	Very well

43. Listen to this item, which is the word for 'until.'

	até ( ) ( )
44.	Repeat the first syllable.
	a- ( )x ( )x
45.	Repeat the second syllable. Try to avoid a puff of air on
	the 't.'
	-té ( )x ( )x
46.	The vowel of the second syllable is similar to the $\underline{e}$ of
	English 'set.'
	-é ()x ()x
	até ( )x ( )x
47.	We are leading you to say 'Until later.' In Portuguese,
	'later' is literally the equivalent of 'more late.' You
	already know the word for 'more.'
	mais ( )x ( )x
48.	And you know the word for 'late,' which is also the word
	for 'afternoon.'
	tarde ( )x ( )x
49.	Therefore, 'later' is mais tarde.
	mais tarde ( )x ( )x
50.	Now let's precede the above with até, 'until,' in order to
	say 'until later.'
	até mais tarde ( )x ( )x

51.	Até mais tarde is one of several phrases that are
	appropriate when departing someone's company. In such
	circumstances it expresses the idea 'See you later.'
	até mais tarde ( )x ( )x
52.	Listen to this item.
	logo ( ) ( )
53.	Repeat the first syllable. The $\underline{o}$ is similar to the $\underline{a}$ of
	English 'paws' or 'laws.' Mimic carefully.
	1o- ( )x ( )x
54.	Repeat the second syllable.
	-go ( )x ( )x
55.	Repeat the word.
	logo ()x ()x
56.	Now precede it with <u>até</u> .
	até logo ( )x ( )x
57.	The above phrase is another way to express the idea 'See
	you later.'
	até logo ( )x ( )x
58.	Now listen to the word for 'tomorrow.'
	amanhã ( ) ( )
59.	Mimic the first syllable.
	a- ( )x ( )x
60.	Mimic the second syllable.
	-ma- ( )x ( )x

61.	The $\underline{nh}$ of the third syllable is similar to the $\underline{gn}$ sound of
	'cognac.' The vowel is nasal. Mimic carefully.
	-nhã ()x ()x
62.	Try the third syllable again. The nasal vowel might be
	described as a nasalized 'uh.'
	-nhã ()x ()x
63.	Now mimic the whole word.
	amanhã ()x ()x
64.	Precede it with até and you will say 'Until tomorrow.'
	até amanhã ( )x ( )x
65.	Now when you leave somebody you can say 'I'll see you
	tomorrow.'
	até amanhã ( )x ( )x

	Exchange ## 10
Até logo Linda.	
Até logo Afonso.	
	See you later, Linda.
	Coo way labor Afanca
	See you later, Afonso.
	Exchange # 11
	Excitative A 11
Até amanhã Linda.	
Até amanhã Afonso.	
	See you tomorrow, Linda.
	See you tomorrow, Afonso.
	Euchange // 12
	Exchange ≠ 12
Até mais tarde.	
Até mais tarde?! Não	o, até amanhã.
	See you later.
	See you later?! No, see you
	555 152 125511. No, 566 162
	tomorrow.

	Unit 2
	Part 2
66.	In the next few exchanges you will be using the word
	'married.' First, listen to the word.
	( ) ( )
67.	Now repeat it syllable by syllable.
	1. ( )x
	2. ( )x
	3. ( )x
	Together: ( )x ( )x
68.	This is what the word 'married'looks like. Mimic.
	ca- ( )x
	-sa- ( )x
	do- ( )x
	Together: casado ( )x ( )x
69.	The above form is the appropriate form when referring to
	males. When referring to females the form has a different
	ending.
	1. ca- ( )x
	2sa- ( )x
	3da ( )x
	Together: casada ( )x ( )x
70.	Here is how you say 'is married.'
	é casado ( )x ( )x referring to a male
	é casada ( )x ( )x referring to a female

71.	In this instance the verb 'is' is $\underline{\underline{e}}$ .
	é ()x ()x
72.	The verb form $\underline{\check{\mathbf{e}}}$ is a single vowel sound, the vowel sound
	which is similar to the $\underline{e}$ of 'bed.' Again, mimic carefully.
	é ()x ()x
73.	Here again is the phrase 'is married.'
	é casado ( )x ( )x a male
	é casada ( )x ( )x a female
74.	Now you can say, for example, 'Afonso is married.'
	Afonso é casado ( )x ( )x
75.	And you can say 'Linda is married.'
	Linda é casada ( )x ( )x
76.	The verb $\stackrel{c}{\underline{\epsilon}}$ is also the form that accompanies $\underline{o}$ senhor
	and <u>a senhora</u> , in which case it translates as 'are.' So
	you can also say 'You are married.'
	O senhor é casado ( )x ( )x
	A senhora é casada ( )x ( )x
77.	By changing the intonation on the two previous items you
	can make questions out of them.
	O senhor é casado? ( )x ( )x
	A senhora é casada? ( )x ( )x
78.	The answer to these questions will more than likely
	involve the verb form for 'I am.' Here it is.
	sou ()x ()x

79.	The form $\underline{sou}$ rhymes with the form $\underline{vou}$ . Do not confuse
	them.
	'I go' vou ( )x ( )x
	'I am' sou ( )x ( )x
80.	So you can answer the question by saying 'Yes, I am.'
	Sou sim ( )x ( )x
81.	Notice the word order: 'I am, yes.'
	Sou sim ( )x ( )x
82.	Or the answer might be 'No, I am not.'
	Não, não sou ( )x ( )x
83.	The first $\underline{\tilde{nao}}$ , is 'no,' the second is 'not.'
	Não, não sou ( )x ( )x

Exchang	ge # 13
_	
 O senhor é casado?	
 Sou sim.	
(or)	
 Não, não sou.	
	Are you married?
	Yes, I am.
	(or)
	No, I'm not.
Exchan	ge # 14
 A senhora é casada?	
 Sou sim.	
(or)	
 Não, não sou.	
	Are you married?
	Yes, I am.
	(or)
	No, I'm not.

Exchange ## 15
A Linda é casada?* Não, não é.
Is Linda married? No, she's not.
Exchange ≠ 16
O Alonso é casado? *
Is Alonso married? Yes, he is.

\*The definite articles frequently accompany names. The Portuguese speaker literally says 'the Alonso' and 'the Linda,' etc.

84.	The response might also include the word for 'single.'		
	Listen to the word 'single' syllable by syllable. Do not		
	mimic yet.		
	1. ( )		
	2. ( )		
	3. ( )		
	Together: ( ) ( )		
85.	This is what the word 'single' looks like. Mimic.		
	sol- ( )x		
	-tei- ( )x		
	ro- ( )x		
	Together: $()_{\mathbf{X}}$ $()_{\mathbf{X}}$		
86.	Be sure the $\underline{r}$ is a flapped $\underline{r}$ , the same kind of $\underline{r}$ that is		
	in <u>senhora</u> . Compare.		
	senho <u>r</u> a ( )x ( )x		
	soltei <u>r</u> o ( )x ( )x		
87.	The word <u>solteiro</u> is the appropriate form when referring		
	to a male.		
	solteiro ( )x ( )x		
88.	When referring to a female, the word has a different ending		
	solteira ( )x ( )x		
89.	Your answer, then, might be 'No, I'm single.'		
	Não, sou solteiro ( )x ( )x (or)		
	Não, sou solteira ( )x ( )x		

I	Exchange ## 17
O senhor é casado?	
Não, sou solteiro.	
	Are you married?
	No, I'm single.
I	Exchange ## 18
A senhora é casada?	
Não, sou solteira.	
	Are you married?
	No, I'm single.
ī	Exchange ## 19
O senhor é casado?	
Não, não sou. Sou s	olteiro.
	Are you married?
	No, I'm not. I'm single.

	Exchange #	20	
O senhor é solteir	0?		
Não, não sou. Sou	casado.		
		Are you singl	e?
		No, I'm not,	I'm married.
		- '	
		· 03	
	Exchange #	= 21	
A senhora é soltei	ra?		
Sou sim.			
		_ Are you singl	.e?
		Yes, I am.	
	Evahanga +	4 22	
	Exchange #	- 22	
A Linda é casada?			
É sim.			
		Is Linda marr	ried?
		Yes, she is.	

	Exchange	#	23
--	----------	---	----

 0	Afc	nso	é	solteiro?
Nã	ão,	não	é.	

\_\_\_\_ Is Afonso single?

No, he's not.

90.	If you receive the response 'I'm married,' your next question
	is likely to be 'Do you have any children?' Listen to the
	word 'children.'
	( ) ( )
91.	Here is the first syllable of the word. Mimic.
	fi- ( )x ( )x
92.	The second syllable begins with a consonant that resembles
	the $\underline{lli}$ of 'William.' Listen carefully and mimic the
	second syllable.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
93.	Here is what the second syllable looks like.
	-lhos ( )x ( )x
94.	And here is the whole word.
	filmos ( )x ( )x
95.	You also need to know how to say 'have.' Here is the
	proper form of the verb 'have.'
	tem ( ) ( )
96.	The word rhymes with $\underline{\text{bem}}$ . Mimic.
	bem ( )x ( )x
	tem ( )x ( )x
97.	Try to pronounce the $\underline{t}$ with little or no puff of air.
	tem ( )x ( )x
98.	Now you can ask 'Do you have (any) children?'
	O senhor tem filhos? ( )x ( )x
	(or)
	A senhora tem filhos? ( )x ( )x

99.	In order to answer, you need the verb form for 'I have.'
	Listen to it.
	( ) ( )
100.	Listen to it syllable by syllable.
	1. ( )
	2. ( )
	Together: ( ) ( )
101.	Here is the first syllable. Try to mimic it without a puff
	of air on the $\underline{t}$ sound.
	te- ( )x ( )x
102.	Here is the second syllable. Mimic it. The $\underline{nh}$ resembles
	the <u>gn</u> of 'cognac.'
	-nho ( )x ( )x
103.	Now mimic the whole word. Remember, it means 'I have.'
	tenho ()x ()x
104.	The response, then, might be 'Yes, I do (have).'
	Tenho sim ( )x ( )x
105.	Notice the word order: 'I have, yes.'
	Tenho sim ( )x ( )x
106.	Or it might be 'No, I do not (have).'
	Não, não tenho ( )x ( )x
107.	The first $\underline{\tilde{nao}}$ is 'no,' the second is 'not.'
	Não, não tenho ( )x ( )x
108.	The form $\underline{tem}$ also goes with Alonso, Linda, etc. So you
	can ask, 'Does Linda have children?'
	Linda tem filhos? ( )x ( )x

109.	And you	can answe	er,	'Yes,	sł	ne does.'
	Тє	em sim	(	) x	(	) x

Exchange ## 24

A senhora tem filhos?	
Não, não tenho.	
	Do you have children?
	No, I don't.

Exchange	<b>#</b> 25
O senhor tem filhos?	
Tenho sim.	
	Do you have any children?
	Yes, I do.
Exchange	<i>⊭</i> ≠ 26
O Afonso tem filhos?	
Não, não tem. Afonso é	solteiro.
	Does Afonso have children?
	No, he doesn't. Afonso is
	single.
Exchange	<b>≠</b> 27
A Linda tem filhos?	
Tem sim.	
	Does Linda have children?
	Yes, she does.

110.	In the next exchange the response will continue with 'I
	have two daughters.' Here is the word for 'daughter.'
	filha ( )x ( )x
111.	Notice that the word is closely related to the word for
	'children.'
	filhos ( )x ( )x
	filha ( )x ( )x
112.	And here is 'two daughters.'
	duas filhas ( )x ( )x
113.	Mimic 'two' again.
	duas ( )x ( )x
114.	Mimic 'two daughters' again.
	duas filhas ( )x ( )x
115.	Now you can complete the response with 'I have two
	daughters.'
	Tenho duas filhas ( )x ( )x

Exchange ≠ 28*
O senhor tem filhos?  Tenho sim. Tenho duas filhas.
Do you have any children? Yes, I do. I have two daughters.
Exchange # 29
A Linda tem filhos? Não, não tem.
Does Linda have any children No, she doesn't.

<sup>\*</sup> You will learn more about adopting this response to your own particular situation in a later unit.

116.	In the next set of exchanges you will be asking 'Which is
	the older (one)?' and 'Which is the younger (one)?' Here
	is the word for 'which.' Do not mimic yet.
	Qual ( ) ( )
117.	As you mimic the word, notice that the $\underline{1}$ sound is very
	close to a $\underline{w}$ sound. This happens when $\underline{\text{Qual}}$ stands alone.
	Qual ( )x ( )x
118.	However, the $\underline{w}$ sound is lost and the $\underline{1}$ sounds like an $\underline{1}$
	when $\underline{\text{Qual}}$ is followed by a vowel sound. This is the case
	in the phrase Qual é. The phrase means 'Which is?'
	Qual é? ( )x ( )x
119.	Be sure to make the verb $\underline{\acute{e}}$ sound like the $\underline{e}$ of 'bed.'
	Qual é? ( )x ( )x 'Which is?'
120.	Now listen to the word 'old' as it is used in reference
	to a female. Do not repeat it yet.
	( ) ( )
121.	Here it is syllable by syllable.
	1. ( )
	2. ( )
	Together: ( ) ( )
122.	Mimic the first syllable. The vowel is the $\underline{e}$ of 'bed.'
	ve- ( )x ( )x
123.	The second syllable begins with the sound which is
	reminiscent of the <u>11</u> sound in the English word 'William.'
	Mimic the syllable.
	-lha ( )x ( )x

124.	Now mimic the word 'old.'
	velha ( )x ( )x
125.	In order to say 'the older' you say 'the more old.' You
	already know the word 'more.'
	mais ( )x ( )x
126.	So you can now say 'the more old' or 'the older.'
	a mais velha ( )x ( )x
127.	And by starting with Qual e, you can ask 'Which is the
	older (one)?'
	Qual é ( )x ( )x
	Qual é a mais velha? ( )x ( )x
128.	From 'old' we go to 'young.' Here is the word 'young.'
	nova ( )x ( )x
129.	The $\underline{o}$ of $\underline{nova}$ should sound like the $\underline{a}$ of English 'paws.'
	p <u>a</u> ws ( )x ( )x
	n <u>o</u> - ( )x ( )x
130.	Mimic the word again.
	nova ( )x ( )x
131.	'The younger' is said literally as 'the more young.'
	a mais nova ( )x ( )x
132.	You can now ask 'Which is the younger (one)?'
	Qual é a mais nova? ( )x ( )x
133.	In the upcoming exchanges 'Maria' is the younger one.
	Mimic the name 'Maria.'
	Maria ( )x ( )x

134.	If the flapped $\underline{r}$ gives you trouble, try the following
	sequence. First, say the English 'muddy.'
	muddy ( )x ( )x
135.	Now, put the stress (accent) on the second syllable, i.e.
	on the <a href="edy">-dy</a> , as the voice on the tape will now do. Mimic.
	muddý ( )x ( )x
136.	Finally, attach the vowel $-a$ to the end.
	muddý-a ( )x ( )x
137.	That bit of trickery ought to give you something reasonably
	close to the pronunciation of Maria.
	Maria ( )x ( )x
138.	Now you are prepared to say 'Maria is the younger one.'
	Here is the first part.
	A Maria é ( )x ( )x
139.	And here is the whole sentence.
	A Maria é a mais nova ( )x ( )x
140.	Maria is the younger and Sandra is the older. Listen to
	the name 'Sandra.'
	Sandra ( ) ( )
141.	The first syllable of <u>Sandra</u> has a nasal vowel in it, but
	it has no $\underline{\mathbf{n}}$ sound. Mimic carefully. Make the vowel nasal.
	San- ( )x ( )x
142.	The second syllable has the flapped $\underline{r}$ coming right after
	a $\underline{d}$ . The $\underline{r}$ may be a bit more difficult to pronounce in
	this location.
	-dra ( )x ( )x

143.	. Now mimic the complete name.						
	Sandra ( )x ( )x						
144.	You are now able to say 'Sandra is the older (one).'						
	A Sandra é ( )x ( )x						
	A Sandra é a mais velha ( )v ( )v						

Exchang	re ## :	30			
 Qual é a mais nova?					
A Maria é a mais nova.					
		Which	is t	he younger	one?
				he younger	
		naria	13 0	ne younger	one.
Exchang	re # :	31			
 E a mais nova?					
 A Maria é a mais nova.					
	<del></del>	And th	ne yo	unger one?	<b>,</b>
		Maria	is t	he younger	one.
Evahana	·	2.2			
Exchang	e <del>//</del> .	32			
 Qual é a mais velha?					
 A Sandra é a mais velha.					
		Which	is th	he older?	
		Sandra	a is	the older	one.

145.	Listen to the question 'What is her name?'
	( ) ( )
146.	The first part of that phrase is a word you already know,
	the word 'how.'
	como ( )x ( )x
147.	The second part is new. Mimic carefully.
	se chama ( )x ( )x
148.	Literally it means 'calls herself.'
	se chama ( )x ( )x
149.	Be sure that you give an $\underline{\text{sh}}\text{-type}$ sound to the $\underline{\text{ch}}$ of $\underline{\text{chama}}$
	as you did earlier with chovendo. Compare.
	chovendo ()x ()x
	chama ( )x ( )x
150.	In Como se chama? you are asking 'How does she call
	herself?' i.e., 'What is her name?'
	Como se chama? ( )x ( )x
151.	Now you are equipped to ask the longer question 'And the
	younger one, what is her name?'
	E a mais nova, como se chama? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
152.	In the response the two elements 'se chama' are reversed.
	Chama-se ( )x ( )x
153.	The hyphen is a writing convention that need not concern
	us at this point. Just mimic.
	Chama-se ( )x ( )x
154.	Here is the complete response: 'Her name is Maria.'
	Chama-se Maria ( )x ( )x

Exchange ## 33	
E a mais nova, como se chama?	
Chama-se Maria.	
	And the younger one, what's her name?
	Her name is Maria.
Exchange ≠ 34	
Como se chama a mais velha?	
Chama-se Sandra.	
	What's the name of the older one?
	Her name is Sandra.

Unit 3

1.	Several words thus far presented have a flapped 'r' between
	vowels. Practice those words again.
	senho <u>r</u> a ( )x ( )x
	soltei <u>r</u> o ( )x ( )x
	Ma <u>r</u> ia ( )x ( )x
2.	Here is another commonly heard name that has the same flapped
	'r' between vowels.
	Yara ( )x ( )x
3.	If you have trouble with the $\underline{r}$ , try saying English 'atta,'
	as in 'Atta boy!'
	Atta ( )x ( )x
4.	Now if you prefix a $\underline{Y}$ and change the first vowel to the
	appropriate Portuguese vowel, you should come out with a
	good pronunciation of 'Yara.'
	Yara ( )x ( )x
5.	In the next exchange we are going to ask 'Do you know Yara?'
	This requires a particular form of the verb 'know.' Here
	is the form.
	( ) ( )
6.	Here it is by syllables.
	1. ( )
	2. ( )
	3. ( )
	Together: ( ) ( )

7.	Mimic the first syllable.	
	co- ( )x ( )x	
8.	The second syllable begins with the $q\underline{n}$ sound of 'cogna	c.'
	The vowel is similar to the $\underline{e}$ of 'bed.'	
	-nhe- ( )x ( )x	
9.	Here is the final syllable.	
	-ce ( )x ( )x	
10.	Now mimic the whole word.	
	conhece ( )x ( )x	
11.	Now you can ask 'Do you know Yara?'	
	O senhor conhece a Yara? ( )x ( )x	
	A senhora conhece a Yara? ( )x ( )x	
12.	In order to answer that question you need to have the	form
	of the verb that corresponds to 'I know.' Here is tha	t
	form, syllable by syllable.	
	1. ( )	
	2. ( )	
	3. ( )	
	Together: ( ) ( )	
13.	Now mimic.	
	1. co- ( )x ( )x	
	2nhe- ( )x ( )x	
	3ço ()x ()x	
14.	The printed symbol $\underline{c}$ always represents an $\underline{s}$ sound.	
	-ço ( )x ( )x	

15.	Here are the syllables together. This is the verb form
	that corresponds to 'I know.'
	conheço ( )x ( )x
16.	Now you can answer 'Yes, I know (her).'
	Conheço sim ( )x ( )x
17.	There is no need for the word 'her' in this response. Your
	answer is 'I know, yes.'
	Conheço sim ( )x ( )x
18.	You can also answer 'No, I do not know (her).'
	Não, não conheço ( )x ( )x

	Exchange ##	1
 A senhora conhece a	a Yara?	
		Do you know Yara? Yes, I do.
	Exchange ≠	2
 O senhor conhece a Não, não conheço.	Maria?	
		Do you know Maria?

19.	You can amplify your response with such phrases as 'She's
	a teacher, friend,' etc. We will introduce information of
	this sort in these frames. First, here is the word
	'teacher.'
	professora ( )x ( )x
20.	Notice the flapped $\underline{r}$ in $-\underline{ora}$ .
	-ora ( )x ( )x
	professora ( )x ( )x
21.	The $\underline{r}$ in the first syllable, $\underline{pro-}$ , is also flapped. Coming
	just after the p as it does, and not between vowels, it may
	be a bit more difficult for you to say. Mimic as well as
	you can.
	pro- ( )x ( )x
	professora ( )x ( )x
22.	Here is the word for 'she.' First, just listen.
	ela ( ) ( )
23.	Now mimic the first syllable, $\underline{e}$ . The vowel sound is like
	the <u>e</u> of 'bed.'
	e- ( )x ( )x
24.	Mimic the second syllable.
	-la ( )x ( )x
25.	Now say the whole word.
	ela ( )x ( )x
26.	Repeat the phrase 'She is'
	ela é ( )x ( )x

27.	Now you can say 'She is a teacher.'
	Ela é professora ( )x ( )x
28.	Notice that Portuguese does not include an indefinite
	article here, a word corresponding to English 'a.'
	Ela é professora ( )x ( )x
29.	Be sure the vowel of $\underline{ ilde{e}}$ (the verb 'is') is similar to the
	e of 'bed.'
	é ()x ()x
	Ela é professora ( )x ( )x
30.	Here is the word 'my.'
	minha ( )x ( )x
31.	Once again, the $\underline{\mathrm{nh}}$ is reminiscent of the $\underline{\mathrm{gn}}$ of 'cognac.'
	minha ( )x ( )x
32.	Now you can say 'my teacher.'
	minha professora ( )x ( )x
33.	Many times the definite article will precede. Thus you may
	hear, and say:
	a minha professora ( )x ( )x
34.	Here is the sentence 'She's my teacher.'
	Ela é a minha professora ( )x ( )x

	Exchange	<b>#</b> 3			
A senhora conhece Conheço sim. Ela		sora.			
			you kno	w Yara? She's a	teacher.
	Exchange	<b>≠</b> 4			
 O senhor conhece a		a profe:	ssora.		
				w Maria? She's my	, teacher.

## PORTUGUESE

35.	You may want to say 'our teacher.' Here is the appropriate
	form of 'our.'
	nossa ( )x ( )x
36.	Notice the sound of $\underline{o}$ . It is like the $\underline{a}$ of English 'paws.'
	p <u>aw</u> s ( )x ( )x
	no- ( )x ( )x
	nossa ( )x ( )x
37.	Now mimic 'our teacher.'
	nossa professora ( )x ( )x
38.	Once again the definite article may precede.
	a nossa professora ( )x ( )x
39.	Here is the sentence 'She's our teacher.'
	Ela é a nossa professora ( )x ( )x
	Exchange ## 5
	A senhora conhece a Yara?
	Conheço sim. Ela é a nossa professora.
	Do you know Yara?
	Yes, I do. She's our teacher.

40.	Here is the word 'friend,' as applied to a female friend.
	amiga $()x$ $()x$
41.	Now you can say 'She's my friend.'
	Ela é minha amiga ( )x ( )x
42.	And 'She's our friend.'
	Ela é nossa amiga ( )x ( )x

		Exc	hange	<b>#</b> 6						
 O senhor o	conhec	e a	Yara?							
 Conheço s	im. E	Ela é	nossa	amiga	a.					
					Do	you	know	Yara?		
					Yes	s, I	do.	She's	our	friend.
		Exc	hange	<del>//</del> 7						
 A senhora	conhe	ece a	n Maria	?						
 Conheço s	im. H	Ela é	minha	amiga	а.					
					Do	you	know	Maria	?	
					Yes	s, I	do.	She's	my	friend.

43.	You might also answer with a word which translates as
	'certainly.' Here is the word 'certainly.'
	claro ( )x ( )x
44.	Once again we have a flapped $\underline{r}$ between vowels.
	-aro ( )x ( )x
	claro ( )x ( )x
45.	Now you can answer 'Certainly, she is my friend.'
	Claro, ela é minha amiga ( )x ( )x
46.	Or, 'Certainly, she's our teacher.'
	Claro, ela é a nossa professora ( )x ( )x

Exchange 🖊 8
O senhor conhece a Yara? Claro, ela é a minha professora.
Do you know Yara? Certainly, she's my teacher.
Exchange # 9
A senhora conhece a Yara? Conheço claro, ela é a nossa professora.
Do you know Yara? Certainly I know her, she's our teacher.

47.	In the next several exchanges we will make some substitutions
	for $\underline{\text{Yara}}$ and $\underline{\text{Maria}}$ in the question 'Do you know?' To
	begin with, here is a word meaning 'girl,' or 'young lady.'
	moça ( )x ( )x
48.	If we want to say 'that young lady,' we can say:
	essa moça ( )x ( )x
49.	$\underline{\mathtt{Essa}}$ translates as 'that.' The $\underline{\mathtt{e}}$ of $\underline{\mathtt{essa}}$ is like the $\underline{\mathtt{e}}$ of
	'bed.'
	essa ( )x ( )x
	essa moça ( )x ( )x
50.	Now we can ask, 'Do you know that young lady?' First, just
	listen.
	O senhor conhece essa moça? ( ) ( )
51.	Mimic the last three words.
	conhece essa moça? ( )x ( )x
52.	Now mimic the entire sentence.
	O senhor conhece essa moça? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
53.	Here is a word for 'young man.' First, just listen.
	rapaz ( ) ( )
54.	This word gives us another opportunity to practice the $\underline{\boldsymbol{r}}$
	sound that resembles an English $\underline{h}$ sound. Here the $\underline{r}$ comes
	at the beginning of a syllable, rather than at the end.
	First, mimic the English word 'ha' said with a bit more
	rasping than usual.
	ha ( )x ( )x

55.	Hold on to that rasping sound as you say the Portuguese
	syllable <u>ra</u> .
	ra ( )x ( )x
56.	Now continue, and say the word $\underline{\text{rapaz}}$ 'young man.'
	rapaz ( )x ( )x
57.	Notice that the word ends in an $\underline{s}$ sound not a $\underline{z}$ sound.
	rapaz ( )x ( )x
58.	Here is 'that young man.'
	esse rapaz ( )x ( )x
59.	Notice, the form for 'that' is $\underline{\text{esse}}$ , not $\underline{\text{essa}}$ . Compare:
	esse rapaz ( )x ( )x
	essa moça ( )x ( )x
60.	Now you are ready for the question ' $\mbox{\sc Po}$ you know that young
	man?' First, just listen.
	A senhora conhece esse rapaz? ( ) ( )
61.	Mimic the last three words.
	conhece esse rapaz? ( )x ( )x
62.	Now mimic the entire question.
	A senhora conhece esse ranaz? ( )x ( )x

Exchange ## 10
O senhor conhece essa moça?  Conheço sim. É a Sandra.
Do you know that young girl? Yes, I do. It's Sandra.
Exchange ≠ 11
A senhora conhece esse rapaz?  Não, não conheço.
Do you know that young man?  No, I don't.

63.	You know the word 'daughter.'
	filha ( )x ( )x
64.	Here is the word 'son.'
	filho ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
65.	Here is the word for 'friend' when the friend is a male
	friend.
	amigo ( )x ( )x
66.	And here is the word for 'teacher' when the teacher is a
	male teacher.
	professor ( )x ( )x
67.	The word for 'my' changes its form when used with these
	'male' persons. The appropriate form is $\underline{\text{meu}}$ , not $\underline{\text{minha}}$ .
	First, just listen.
	meu ( ) ( )
68.	The $\underline{eu}$ portion of the word $\underline{meu}$ is easier than it may seem.
	Mimicking the first vowel is no problem.
	e ( )x ( )x
69.	Nor is mimicking the second vowel.
	u ()x ()x
70.	Now run them together.
	eu ( )x ( )x
71.	And prefix an $\underline{m}$ sound.
	meu ( )x ( )x
72.	Now you can say 'my son.'
	meu filho
	( )x ( )x

73.	You can say 'my friend' when the friend is a male friend.
	meu amigo ( )x ( )x
74.	And you can say 'my teacher' when the teacher is a male
	teacher.
	meu professor ( )x ( )x
75.	The word for 'our' will have a different form too with
	these items. First, just listen.
	nosso ( ) ( )
76.	The vowel sound of $\underline{\text{no}}\text{-}$ is the vowel sound of English
	'paws.' Listen to it, and mimic it.
	no- ( )x ( )x
77.	Here is the whole word.
	nosso ( )x ( )x
78.	Now you can say 'our teacher.'
	nosso professor ( )x ( )x
79.	And 'our friend.'
	nosso amigo ( )x ( )x
80.	All of the above items may be preceded by the definite
	article o.
	o meu filho ( )x
	o meu amigo ( )x
	o meu professor ( )x
	o nosso amigo ( )x
	o nosso professor ( )x
	o nosso filho ( )x

81.	Here, now, is a common name.
	Paulo ( )x ( )x
82.	Take special care to pronounce the first syllable correctly
	Pau- ( )x ( )x
83.	Here is the name again.
	Paulo ( )x ( )x
84.	Here is another common name.
	Luís ( )x ( )x
85.	Notice that the $\underline{i}$ receives a strong stress.
	-is ( )x ( )x
86.	Here is the name again.
	Luís ( )x ( )x
87.	Here is another common name.
	Marcos ( )x ( )x
88.	Notice the $\underline{h}\text{-type}$ pronunciation of the $\underline{r}$ at the end of the
	first syllable.
	Mar- ( )x ( )x
89.	Here is the name again.
	Marcos ( )x ( )x
90.	You have had the pronoun 'she.' Here is the pronoun 'he.'
	ele ( )x ( )x
91.	Notice the contrast between 'she' and 'he.'
	ela ( )x ( )x
	ele ( )x ( )x

92.	The final vowels of the two pronouns are different. In
	addition, the initial vowel of $\underline{\text{ela}}$ sounds much like the
	$\underline{e}$ of 'bed,' while the initial vowel of $\underline{ele}$ sound more like
	the $\underline{ay}$ of English 'say,' but clipped short, without the
	glide. Compare again.

ela	(	) x	(	) x
ele	(	) x	(	) x

## Exchange # 12 a-f

In these exchanges the first line (the question) is constant. Practice altering the second line (the response).

Question: O senhor conhece esse rapaz?

Response a) Conheço sim, é o Luís.

- b) Conheço sim, é o meu amigo Luís.
- c) Claro, é o Luís.
- d) Claro, é o nosso professor!
- e) Conheço, é o Marcos.
- f) Conheço claro, é o Paulo.

Question: Do you know that young man?

Response a) Yes, I do, it's Luís.

- b) Yes, I do, it's my friend, Luís.
- c) Certainly, it's Luis.
- d) Certainly, it's our teacher!
- e) Yes, I know him. It's Marcos.
- f) Certainly I know him. It's Paulo.

93.	In the next few exchanges you will be asking 'Who is she
	(he, it)?' Here is the word for 'who?' Just listen.
	quem ( ) ( )
94.	The word $\underline{\text{quem}}$ rhymes with $\underline{\text{bem}}$ and $\underline{\text{tem}}$ . Mimic.
	bem () $x$ () $x$
	tem ( )x ( )x
	quem $()x$ $()x$
95.	As you observed, the word $\underline{\text{quem}}$ begins with a $\underline{k}$ sound.
	quem ( )x ( )x
96.	Now you can ask 'Who is she (he, it)?
	Quem é? ( )x ( )x
97.	Make sure the verb $\underline{\underline{e}}$ sounds similar to the $\underline{\underline{e}}$ of 'bed.'
	é ()x ()x
	Quem é ()x ()x

Exchange ≠ 13
O senhor conhece esse rapaz?  Não, quem é ele?
Do you know that young man?  No, who is he?
Exchange ## 14
A senhora conhece essa moça? Não, quem é ela?
Do you know that young girl? No, who is she?

	Exchang	e #	15		
 Quem é esse rapaz?					
 É o Paulo.					
			Who is that	young	man?
		<del></del>	It's Paulo.		
	Exchang	e #	16		
 Quem é essa moça?					
 É a Maria.					
			Who is that	young	girl?
			It's Maria.		
	Exchang	re #	17		
 Quem é?					
 É o meu amigo Marco	os.				
			Who is it?		
			It's my frie	end, Ma	arcos.

		Exchange	#	18
 Quem é? É o nosso pr	ofessoı	r.		
				Who is it?  It's our teacher.
		Exchange	#	19
 Quem é? É o meu filh	0.			
				Who is it? It's my son.

Unit 4
--------

1.	Recall the word for 'tomorrow.'
	amanhã ( )x ( )x
2.	Recall that the final syllable of the word has a nasal vowel
	-nhã ( )x ( )x
3.	This nasal vowel is a common one. You also came across it
	in the first syllable of the name <u>Sandra</u> .
	San- ( )x ( )x
	Sandra ( )x ( )x
4.	Here it is again in the first syllable of the word for
	'band.'
	ban- ( )x ( )x
	banda ( )x ( )x
5.	Because of the influence of English, it is easy to think
	you hear an $\underline{n}$ sound in $\underline{Sandra}$ and $\underline{banda}$ . But there is none
	there. What you hear in the first syllable of each word is
	a Portuguese nasal vowel, the same nasal vowel you hear in
	the last syllable of $\underline{amanh\tilde{a}}$ . Compare, and mimic.
	amanhã ()x ()x
	-ã () x () x
	San- ( )x ( )x
	Sandra ( )x ( )x
	ban- ( )x ( )x
	banda ( )x ( )x

6.	Listen for the same vowel in the first syllable of this new
	word, the verb 'to dance.'
	dançar ( )x ( )x
7.	Again, the influence of English may lead you to think there
	is an $\underline{\mathbf{n}}$ sound in the first syllable. But there is none
	there. What you hear is a nasal vowel. Mimic carefully.
	dan- ( )x ( )x
	dançar ( )x ( )x
8.	Here are several more words with which you can practice this
	nasal vowel. We will not bother you with their meanings.
	Ignore the $\underline{n}$ and concentrate on the nasal vowel.
	ando ( )x
	dando ( )x
	falando ( )x
	dançando ( )x
	quando ( )x
	antes ( )x
	santos ( )x
	tantos ( )x
9.	Now listen to the word for 'samba.'
	samba ( ) ( )
10.	It is the $\underline{\mathtt{m}}$ that may get in the way here. The influence of
	English may lead you to think you hear an $\underline{\mathtt{m}}$ sound in this word,
	but there is none there. What you hear is the same nasal vowel
	Listen and mimic.
	samba ( )x ( )x
	4.2

11.	Here is another name. It has this same nasal vowel. Just
	listen.
	Santos ( ) ( )
12.	Mimic the first syllable of the name.
	San- ( )x ( )x
13.	Now mimic both syllables.
	Santos ( )x ( )x
14.	Here is another name with the same nasal vowel. Just
	listen.
	Ângela ( ) ( )
15.	The nasal vowel is in the first syllable. Listen and mimic.
	Ân- ( )x ( )x
16.	The second syllable begins with the $\underline{s}$ sound of English
	'lei $\underline{s}$ ure,' 'plea $\underline{s}$ ure' and 'trea $\underline{s}$ ure,' or the $\underline{z}$ sound of
	'azure.' Mimic carefully.
	-ge- ( )x ( )x
17.	Be sure you do $\underline{\text{not}}$ say the $\underline{j}$ sound of English 'job,'
	'Jack,' etc. Mimic the syllable again.
	-ge- ( )x ( )x
18.	Now say the whole name.
	Āngela ( )x ( )x

Exchange # 1		
 Quem é essa moça?		
 É a Sandra.		
	Who is that	girl?
	It's Sandra.	
Exchange ≠ 2		
 O senhor conhece essa moça?		
 Conheço sim. É a Ângela.		
	Do you know	that girl?
	Yes, I do.	It's Ângela.
Exchange ≠ 3		
 Quem é esse rapaz? A senhora c	onhece?	
 Claro. É o Santos.		
	Who is that	young man? Do
	you know him	1?
	Certainly.	It's Santos.

19.	Observe and mimic this item.
	do Marcos ( )x ( )x
20.	The above item means 'of Marcos.'
	do Marcos ( )x ( )x
21.	Now observe and mimic this item.
	a filha do Marcos ( )x ( )x
22.	The above item literally means 'the daughter of Marcos.'
	In everyday English we would translate it as 'Marcos's
	daughter.'
	a filha do Marcos ( )x ( )x
23.	Using the same pattern you can now say 'Luís's daughter.'
	a filha do Luís ( )x ( )x
24.	Likewise vou can say 'Santos's daughter.'
	a filha do Santos ( )x ( )x
25.	And you can say 'Paulo's daughter.'
	a filha do Paulo ( )x ( )x
26.	Also, you can substitute 'son' in the above phrases.
	o filho do Marcos ( )x
	o filho do Luís ( )x
	o filho do Santos ( )x
	o filho do Paulo ( )x
27.	Observe and mimic this item.
	da Yara ( )x ( )x
28.	The above item means 'of Yara.'
	da Yara ( )x ( )x

29.	Now observe and mimic this item.
	o filho da Yara ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
30.	The above item literally means 'the son of Yara.' In
	everyday English we would translate it as 'Yara's son.'
	o filho da Yara ( )x ( )x
31.	Using the same pattern, you can also say 'Maria's son.'
	o filho da Maria ( )x ( )x
32.	You can say 'Sandra's son.'
	o filho da Sandra ( )x ( )x
33.	And you can say 'Ângela's son.'
	o filho da Ângela ( )x ( )x
34.	Also, you can substitute 'daughter' in the above phrases.
	a filha da Yara ( )x ( )x
	a filha da Maria ( )x ( )x
	a filha da Sandra ( )x ( )x
	a filha da Ângela ( )x ( )x

Exchange ## 4
 O senhor conhece essa moça?
Conheço sim. É a filha da Ángela.
Do you know that young girl?
Yes, I do. It's Ângela's
daughter.
Durch and a 4/ 5
Exchange ## 5
 Quem é esse rapaz?
 É o filho da Maria.
Who is that young man?
It's Maria's son.
10 3 Maria 3 3011.
Exchange ## 6
 Quem é esse rapaz? A senhora conhece?
Conheço sim. É o filho do Santos.
•
Who is that young man? Do
you know him?
Yes, I do. It's Santos' son.

Exchange # 7
O senhor conhece a filha do Paulo?  Conheço sim. Chama-se Sandra.
Do you know Paulo's daughter? Sure. Her name is Sandra.
Exchange ## 8
Quem é? É o Marcos, o filho do Santos.
Who is it?  It's Marcos. Santos' son.

35.	In the upcoming exchanges you will have the chance to
	practice the phrase 'Where is?' Here is the question-
	word 'Where?' First, just observe and listen.
	onde ( ) ( )
36.	The first syllable rhymes with the word $\underline{bom}$ . It has
	the same nasal vowel. Listen and mimic.
	bom ()x ()x
	on- ( )x ( )x
37.	Now mimic the word onde, meaning 'Where?'
	onde ( )x ( )x
38.	Many speakers pronounce the word as you just heard it, with
	a recognizable $\underline{d}$ sound. Many others will pronounce it
	with the $\underline{j}$ sound of 'jeep,' as in this frame. Listen and
	mimic.
	onde ( )x ( )x
39.	For the moment we will use the <u>j</u> of 'jeep.'
	onde ( )x ( )x
40.	Now observe this item and repeat it.
	onde está? ( )x ( )x
41.	The above item means 'Where is?'
	Onde está? ( )x ( )x
42.	It is the way you will ask 'Where is Paul?', for example.
	Onde está o Paulo? ( )x ( )x
43.	And 'Where is Sandra?'
	Onde está a Sandra? ( )x ( )x

44.	And, indeed, 'Where is everybody and anybody?'
	Onde está a Yara? ( )x
	Onde está a minha filha? ( )x
	Onde está o meu professor? ( )x
	Onde esta o filho do Santos? ( )x
	Onde está a mais nova? ( )x
	Onde está a mais velha? ( )x
45.	Now we will give you a few of the responses. First, here
	is 'at home.'
	em casa ( )x ( )x
46.	Notice the $z$ sound in <u>casa</u> .
	casa ( )x ( )x
47.	Notice also that there is no $\underline{\mathtt{m}}$ sound in this phrase.
	em casa ( )x ( )x
48.	Now you can answer 'He (She) is at home.'
	Está em casa ( )x ( )x
49.	Here is 'in New York.' Just listen.
	em Nova Iorque ( ) ( )
50.	The word 'new' you have already had in the sense of 'young.'
	nova ()x ()x
	Nova Iorque ( )x ( )x
51.	Now you can answer 'Paulo is in New York.'
	O Paulo está em Nova Iorque ( )x ( )x

52.	The word $\underline{em}$ meaning 'in' precedes quite a few place names
	Está em Washington ( )x
	Está em Filadélphia ( )x
	Está em Denver ( )x
	Está em Brasília ( )x
	Está em Lisboa ( )x
53.	By way of contrast, notice this item.
	na festa ( )x ( )x
54.	The above item means 'at the party.'
	na festa ( )x ( )x
55.	You will use the same pattern to say 'at school.'
	na escola ( )x ( )x
56.	Notice the $o$ sound in $escola$ . It resembles the $a$ of
	English 'paws.'
	paw ( )x ( )x
	esco- ( )x ( )x
	escola ( )x ( )x
	na escola ( )x ( )x
57.	So now you can say 'Angela is in/at school.'
	A Ângela está na escola ( )x ( )x
58.	And you can say 'Yara is at the party.'
	A Yara está na festa ( )x ( )x
59.	Here is the word 'here.'
	aqui ( )x ( )x

60.	And here is the phrase 'is here.'
	está aqui ( )x ( )x
61.	Now you can say 'Marcos is here.'
	O Marcos está aqui ( )x ( )x
62.	And you can say 'Maria is here.'
	A Maria está aqui ( )x ( )x

		Exchange #	9
 Onde	está Maria?		
 Está	em casa.		
			Where's Maria?
			She's at home.
		Exchange ##	10
 Onde	está a Ângela	?	
Está	na escola.		
			Where's Angela?
			She's at school.
		Exchange #	11
Onde	está a Sandra	?	
	na festa.		
			Where's Sandra?
			She's at the party.

Exchange ## 12							
 Onde	está o professor?						
 Está	em Washington	n.					
				Where's the teacher?			
				He's in Washington.			
		Exchang	e #	13			
 Onde	está a filha	do Sant	os?				
 Está	aqui.						
				Where is Santos' daughter?			
				She's here.			
		Exchang	e #	14			
 Onde	está o Luís?						
 Está	em Nova Iorqu	ue.					
				Where is Luis?			
				He's in New York			

63.	With the question-word $\underline{\text{Onde}}$ and the verb form $\underline{\text{vai}}$ you
	are now equipped to ask 'Where are you going?' First,
	just listen to the question.
	Onde o senhor vai? ( ) ( )
64.	Now mimic.
	vai ( )x ( )x
	o senhor vai ( )x ( )x
	Onde o senhor vai? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
65.	Now substitute 'a senhora.'
	a senhora vai ( )x ( )x
	Onde a senhora vai? ( )x ( )x
66.	We will approach the response by recalling the verb form
	that corresponds to 'I go' or 'I am going.'
	vou ( )x ( )x
67.	You practiced this form in the phrase 'I'm going (doing)
	well, thanks.'
	Vou bem obrigado ( )x ( )x
68.	Now notice its use in this phrase. Just listen.
	Vou a Nova Iorque ( ) ( )
69.	The phrase means 'I'm going to New York.' The English
	preposition 'to' often translates as $\underline{a}$ in Portuguese. Mimic
	a Nova Iorque ( )x ( )x
	Vou a Nova Iorque ( )x ( )x
70.	Here is 'to Lisbon.'
	a Lisboa ( )x ( )x

71.	Now you can say 'I'm going to Lisbon.'
	Vou a Lisboa ( )x ( )x
72.	Here is 'to Brasilia.'
	a Brasília ( )x ( )x
73.	Now you can say 'I'm going to Brasilia.'
	Vou a Brasília ( )x ( )x
74.	You can also say 'I'm going to the party.'
	Vou à festa ( )x ( )x
75.	Later on we will tell you the reason for the accent mark
	( ) over the $\underline{a}$ . For now just repeat.
	Vou à festa ( )x ( )x
76.	You can phrase questions such as the following.
	O senhor vai a Nova Iorque? ( )x
	A senhora vai a Filadélfia? ( )x
	O senhor vai à festa? ( )x
77.	And you can phrase answers such as the following.
	Vou sim ( )x
	Não, não vou ( )x
	Vou, claro ( )x
78.	The form $\underline{\text{vai}}$ accompanies $\underline{\text{o}}$ senhor and $\underline{\text{a}}$ senhora. It also
	accompanies <u>Angela</u> , <u>Marcos</u> , <u>filho</u> , <u>filha</u> , etc., i.e. any
	third person item.
	a Ângela vai ( )x
	o Marcos vai ( )x
	o Paulo vai ( )x

	a minha filha vai	(	) x		
	o professor vai	(	) x		
79.	79. So you can also phrase questions such as these:				
	A Sandra vai?	(	) x		
	O Luís vai a Brasília?	(	) x		
	O amigo da Yara vai?	(	) x		
80.	And you can phrase answers	like	e these:		
	A Yara vai sim	(	) x		
	Não, o Marcos não vai	(	) x		

Exchange	#	15	
 Onde o senhor vai?			
 Vou à festa.			
			Where are you going?
			I'm going to the party.
Exchange	#	16	
 Onde o Luis vai?			
 Vai a Nova Iorque.			
			Where is Luis going?
			He's going to New York.
Exchange	#	17	
 Onde a Ângela vai?			
 Vai a Lisboa.			
		_	Where is Angela going?
			She's going to Lisbon.

Exchange 🛨	18
A senhora vai a Denver?	
Não, não vou.	
	Are you going to Denver?
	No, I'm not.
Exchange 🖽	19
O senhor vai à festa?	
Vou sim.	
	Are you going to the party?
	Yes, I am.
Exchange ##	20
O Marcos vai?	
Vai sim.	
	Is Marcos going?
	Yes, he is.

	Exchange ##	21	
A senhora vai?  Vou sim.			
		Are you going? Yes, I am.	
A professora vai?	Exchange #	22	
Não, não vai.		Is the teacher going?	

Unit 5

1.	Listen to this item but do not repeat it yet.
	eu ( ) ( )
2.	Mimic just the first vowel.
	e- ( )x ( )x
3.	Mimic the second vowel.
	-u ( )x ( )x
4.	Now mimic the two together.
	eu ( )x ( )x
5.	The above item is the pronoun 'I.'
	eu ( )x ( )x
6.	Sometimes $\underline{eu}$ accompanies the verb form, as 'I' does in
	English. For example:
	'I am going' = eu vou ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	'I know' = eu conheço ( )x ( )x
7.	But since the verb form itself tells us who the actor is,
	the pronoun <u>eu</u> is often not said.
	vou ( )x ( )x
	conheço ( )x ( )x
8.	Do not be concerned about when you should and when you
	should not say $\underline{eu}$ . There is really no strict 'right' or
	'wrong' about it. There are guidelines, but we will talk
	about them later when they will be more meaningful to you.
	In the meantime, just repeat.
	eu ( )x ( )x

	eu vou ( )x ( )x
	eu conheço ( )x ( )x
9.	Observe this item. First, just listen.
	chegar ( ) ( )
10.	Mimic the first syllable. Notice it begins with an $\underline{\operatorname{sh}}$ -type
	sound.
	che- ( )x ( )x
11.	Mimic the second syllable. Notice it ends with the $\underline{\boldsymbol{r}}$
	sound that resembles a strong English $\underline{h}$ .
	-gar ( )x ( )x
12.	Now mimic the word.
	chegar ( )x ( )x
13.	The word means 'arrive.'
	chegar ( )x ( )x
14.	Now observe this item. Just listen.
	vou chegar ( ) ( )
15.	You know that $\underline{\text{vou}}$ means 'I am going.' The combination $\underline{\text{vou}}$
	<u>chegar</u> therefore must mean 'I am going to arrive.' Mimic.
	vou chegar ( )x ( )x
16.	At times you may want to use the pronoun $\underline{eu}$ with the above
	phrase.
	eu vou chegar ( )x ( )x
17.	Now notice this combination. Mimic.
	vai chegar ( )x ( )x

18.	The form $\underline{\text{vai}}$ is the form of 'going' that we use with $\underline{\text{Maria}}$ ,
	Paulo, o senhor, etc. We may want to include an actor with
	this combination so we know who we are talking about. We
	can say, for example, 'Sandra is going to arrive.'
	A Sandra vai chegar ( )x ( )x
19.	We can say 'The teacher is going to arrive.'
	O professor vai chegar ( )x ( )x
20.	We can say 'My son is going to arrive.'
	O meu filho vai chegar ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
21.	We can also say 'You are going to arrive.'
	O senhor vai chegar ( )x ( )x
	A senhora vai chegar ( )x ( )x
22.	Now observe this word. Do not repeat yet.
	ficar ( ) ( )
23.	The above word means 'stay.' Now repeat.
	ficar ( )x ( )x
24.	Notice the $\underline{h}$ -type quality to the $\underline{r}$ at the end of the word.
	ficar ( )x ( )x
25.	Now observe this combination.
	vai ficar ( )x ( )x
26.	That combination means 'going to stay.'
	vai ficar ( )x ( )x
27.	We need to provide an actor so that we know who is going to
	stay. We can start with 'Paulo.' Here is 'Paulo is going
	to stay.'
	O Paulo vai ficar ( )x ( )x

28.	We can say 'Maria is going to stay.'
	A Maria vai ficar ( )x ( )x
29.	We can say 'the teacher is going to stay.'
	O professor vai ficar ( )x ( )x
30.	We can ask questions, too. We can ask 'Are you going to
	stay?'
	A senhora vai ficar? ( )x ( )x
31.	Now mimic this combination.
	vou ficar ( )x ( )x
32.	The above combination means 'I am going to stay.' It can
	also be said with the pronoun $\underline{eu}$ .
	eu vou ficar ( )x ( )x
Observ	ation:

Both <u>ficar</u> and <u>chegar</u> are examples of Portuguese verbs in the infinitive form, the form that generally corresponds to English 'to + verb.' We will also call this form the 'neutral form.' It is 'neutral' in that it does not change its shape to correspond to person(s) doing the acting. By way of contrast, forms like <u>conheço/conhece</u>, and <u>vou/vai</u> show different shapes as the actors change. In this sense they are not neutral forms.

33. Here is the infinitive or neutral form of the verb 'study.' estudar ( )x ( )x

34.	Now you can practice these	co	mbinatio	ns	where	you	say	
	that somebody is going to	stu	dy.					
	A Maria va	ıi e	studar	(	) x			
	A Sandra va	ıi e	studar	(	) x			
	Quem vai	. es	tudar?	(	) x			
	O senhor vai	. es	tudar?	(	) x			
	Onde o senhor vai	. es	tudar?	(	) x			
	(eu) vo	u e	studar	(	) x			
35.	Here is another infinitive	or	neutral	fo	orm: 'd	dance	e.' Y	lou
	practiced it earlier when	you	were mi	mic	cking 1	nasal	L vowe	els.
	dançar ( )x	(	) x					
36.	Now practice these combina	ıtio	ns.					
	A senhora vai dançar?	(	) x					
	A Sandra vai dançar?	(	) x					
	O Luis vai dançar?	(	) x					
	(eu) vou dançar	(	) x					

	Exchange # 1
O senhor vai ficar?	
	Are you going to stay? Yes, I am.
	Exchange ## 2
Quem vai ficar? A Yara vai ficar.	Who is going to stay? Yara is going to stay.
Quem vai estudar? O Luís vai estudar.	Exchange ≠ 3
	Who is going to study?

Exchange	e ## 4
O senhor vai estudar?	
Não, não vou.	
	Are you going to study? No, I'm not.
Exchange	e ## 5
2.10.141.9	-
Quem vai chegar?	
A Ângela vai chegar.	Who is soing to arrivo?
	Who is going to arrive? Angela is going to arrive.
Exchange	e <del>//</del> 6
A senhora vai dançar?	
Vou sim.	
	Are you going to dance?
	Yes, I am.

37.	Many neutral forms end in $-ar$ , as do chegar and ficar.
	Others end in $-\underline{er}$ or $-\underline{ir}$ , and a very few end in $-\underline{or}$ . Here
	is the neutral form meaning 'know' or 'meet.' It is an
	example of a neutral form that ends in $-\underline{\text{er}}$ .
	conhecer ( )x ( )x
38.	You already know the forms that correspond to 'I know' and
	'you know.'
	conheço ( )x ( )x
	conhece ( )x ( )x
29.	Here is the neutral form again.
	conhecer ( )x ( )x
40.	Practice these combinations.
	O Paulo vai conhecer ( )x
	a professora vai conhecer ( )x
	a Maria vai conhecer ( )x
	o senhor vai conhecer ( )x
	(eu) vou conhecer ()x
41.	Here is an example of a neutral form that ends in $-\underline{\text{ir}}$ :
	the verb 'leave.' First, just listen.
	sair ( ) ( )
42.	Now mimic by syllables.
	sa- ( )x ( )x
	-ir ( )x ( )x
	sair ( )x ( )x

Practice these combinations. They say that someone is
going to leave, or they ask if someone is going to leave.
O senhor vai sair? ( )x
A Ângela vai sair? ( )x
Quem vai sair? ( )x
(Eu) vou sair ( )x
O Marcos vai sair ( )x
Here is another common name that will be useful. First,
just listen.
José ( ) ( )
Mimic the first syllable. Notice that the first sound is
like the $\underline{s}$ of English 'pleasure' and 'leisure.'
Jo- ( )x ( )x
Mimic the second syllable. Notice that it begins with a
$\underline{z}$ sound. Notice also that the vowel is similar to the $\underline{e}$
of 'bed.'
-sé ( )x ( )x
$-s\acute{e}$ ( )x ( )x Now mimic both syllables together.
Now mimic both syllables together.
Now mimic both syllables together.  José ( )x ( )x
Now mimic both syllables together.  José ()x ()x  Practice these phrases.
Now mimic both syllables together.  José ()x ()x  Practice these phrases.  O José conhece ()x
Now mimic both syllables together.  José ()x ()x  Practice these phrases.  O José conhece ()x  O José vai ()x

49.	Here is another name. First, just listen.
	Raquel ( ) ( )
50.	Mimic the first syllable. The $\underline{r}$ is similar to a strong
	English $\underline{h}$ sound.
	Ra- ( )x ( )x
51.	Mimic the second syllable. The $\underline{1}$ for many Portuguese
	speakers sounds much like a $\underline{w}$ sound.
	-quel ( )x ( )x
52.	Now mimic both syllables together.
	Raquel $()x$ $()x$
53.	Practice these phrases.
	a Raquel conhece ( )x
	a Raquel vai ( )x
	a Raquel vai conhecer ( )x
	a Raquel vai dançar ( )x
	a Raquel vai sair ( )x
54.	Here is another name that starts with the same $\underline{r}$ sound.
	First, just listen.
	Roberto ( ) ( )
55.	Now mimic the name by syllables.
	Ro- ( )x ( )x
	-ber- ( )x ( )x
	-to ( )x ( )x
	Together: Roberto ( )x ( )x

56.	Practice these phrases.		
	o Roberto conhece	(	) x
	o Roberto vai	(	) x
	o Roberto vai sair	(	) x
	o Roberto vai estudar	(	) x
	o Roberto vai chegar	(	) x
57.	Here is another name. First	t j	ust listen.
	Inês ( )	(	)
58.	Mimic the first syllable.		
	I- ( )x	(	) x
59.	Mimic the second syllable.		
	-nês ( )x	(	) x
60.	Mimic the two syllables together	eth	er. Notice that it is the
	second syllable which is st	res	sed stronger than the first
	Inês ( )x	(	) x
61.	Practice these phrases.		
	a Inês conhece	(	) x
	a Inês vai	(	) x
	a Inês vai conhecer	(	) x
	a Inês vai chegar	(	) x
	a Inês vai dançar	(	) x
62.	Here is another name. Just	li	sten.
	Lúcia ( )	(	)
63.	Mimic the first syllable.		
	Lú- ( )x	(	) x

64.	Mimic the second syllable. It begins with an $\underline{s}$ sound.
	-cia ( )x ( )x
65.	Mimic the two syllables together. Notice that the first
	syllable has a stronger stress than the second.
	Lúcia ( )x ( )x
66.	Practice these phrases.
	a Lūcia conhece ( )x
	a Lúcia vai ( )x
	a Lúcia vai chegar ( )x
	a Lúcia vai estudar ( )x
	a Lúcia vai sair ( )x
67.	Practice saying these phrases containing the word não
07.	meaning 'not.'
	a Lúcia não conhece ()x
	a Lúcia não vai ( )x
	a Lúcia não vai ficar ( )x
	o José não conhece ( )x
	o José não vai ( )x
	o José não vai estudar ( )x
68.	Notice that $\underline{\tilde{nao}}$ precedes verbs and combinations of verbs.
	a Inês não vai ( )x
	a Inês não vai dançar ( )x
	a Raquel não está na festa ( )x
	a Raquel não está em Nova Iorque ( )x

	a Ângela não é casada	(	) x	
	a Ângela não é professora	(	) x	
	eu não vou	(	) x	
	eu não vou a Nova Iorque	(	) x	
69.	Here is the word for 'but.'			
	mas $()x$			
70.	Now you can make contrastive stat	eme	ents, such as 'Yara is	
	not going, but I am (going).'			
	A Yara não vai, mas eu vou	(	)x ( )x	
71.	Or 'Marcos is married, but Luís i	is n	ot.'	
	O Marcos é casado mas o Luís r	าลัด	é ()x ()x	

Exchange # 7
O senhor vai? Não, não vou. Mas a Raquel vai.
Are you going?  No, I'm not going. But  Raquel is.
Exchange ## 8
A Inês está em casa?
Não, não está. Mas a Lúcia está Is Inês at home? No, she's not. But Lúcia is
Exchange ≠ 9
O José é professor?  Não, não é. Mas o Paulo é.  Is José a teacher?
No, he's not. But Paulo is.

Exchange ## 10
A senhora conhece a Yara?  Não, não conheço. Mas a Raquel conhece.
Do you know Yara? No, I don't know her. But Raquel does.
Exchange ## 11
O Luís vai ficar? Não, não vai. Mas a Lúcia vai.
Is Luís going to stay? No, he's not. But Lúcia is.

72.	Observe this item. Do not repeat yet.
	pretende ( ) ( )
73.	The above item is a verb form meaning 'plan(s) to.' Mimic
	the first syllable. Notice the flapped $\underline{r}$ after the $\underline{p}$ .
	pre- ( )x ( )x
74.	Mimic the second syllable. You will hear a nasal vowel,
	but no $\underline{\mathbf{n}}$ sound.
	-ten- ( )x ( )x
75.	Mimic the third syllable. Notice the $\underline{j}$ sound of 'jeep.'
	-de ( )x ( )x
76.	Now mimic the three syllables together. The form means
	'plan(s) to.'
	pretende ( )x ( )x
77.	It is the form used with Marcos, Angela, o senhor, etc.
	Therefore, you can now express the thought 'Marcos plans
	to'
	O Marcos pretende ( )x ( )x
78.	And you can say 'Ângela plans to'
	A Ångela pretende ( )x ( )x
79.	And of course you can substitute other names and persons.
	A Lúcia pretende ( )x
	A professora pretende ( )x
	O rapaz pretende ( )x
	A Raquel pretende ( )x

80.	You can use the form <pre>pretende</pre> with 'you' to say 'you plan								
	to'								
	O senhor pretende ( )x								
	A senhora pretende ( )x								
81.	To complete the thought we need an infinitive, a neutral								
	form. For example, you might want to say 'José plans to								
	leave.'								
	O José pretende sair ( )x ( )x								
82.	Or you might want to say 'Angela plans to study.'								
	A $\hat{A}$ ngela pretende estudar ( )x ( )x								
83.	You might want to ask 'Do you plan to stay?'								
	O senhor pretende ficar? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$								
84.	Or 'Do you plan to dance?'								
	A senhora pretende dançar? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$								
85.	Now observe this item. Do not repeat yet.								
	pretendo ( ) ( )								
86.	This item is the verb form meaning 'I plan to.' Mimic the								
	first syllable.								
	pre- ( )x ( )x								
27.	And the second.								
	-ten- ( )x ( )x								
88.	And the third.								
	-do ( )x ( )x								
89.	The three syllables together mean 'I plan to.'								
	pretendo ( )x ( )x								

90.	At times you will use it with the pronoun $\underline{eu}$ .
	eu pretendo ( )x ( )x
91.	With this form you can say 'I plan to stay.'
	(eu) pretendo ficar ( )x ( )x
92.	You can say 'I plan to leave.'
	(eu) pretendo sair ( )x ( )x
93.	You can say 'I plan to study.'
	(eu) pretendo estudar ( )x ( )x
94.	And you can say 'I plan to dance.'
	(eu) pretendo dançar ( )x ( )x

Exchange ## 12
O senhor pretende ficar?  Não, não pretendo. Eu vou sair.
Do you plan to stay? No, I don't. I'm going to leave.
Exchange ## 13
O Luis pretende sair? Pretende.
Does Luis plan to leave?  He does.

Exchange ## 14
A Raquel pretende sair? Não, não pretende.
Does Raquel plan to leave? No, she doesn't.
Exchange ≠ 15
A senhora pretende estudar? Pretendo, sim.
Do you plan to study? Yes, I do.

95.	Here is the question-word 'When?' Do not mimic it yet.
	Quando ( ) ( )
96.	Now mimic the first syllable. Try to pronounce a nasal
	vowel, and not an $\underline{n}$ .
	Quan- ( )x ( )x
97.	Here is the second syllable.
	-do ( )x ( )x
98.	The two syllables together constitute the word 'When?'
	Quando ( )x ( )x
99.	In response to the question Quando? you will need the
	word 'today.' Here it is. Just listen.
	hoje ( ) ( )
100.	Mimic the first syllable. An $\underline{h}$ appears in print, but not
	in speech.
	ho- ( )x ( )x
101.	The second syllable begins with the $\underline{\mathbf{s}}$ sound of English
	'plea <u>s</u> ure' and 'lei <u>s</u> ure.' Mimic carefully.
	-je ( )x ( )x
102.	Together the two syllables constitute the word 'today.'
	hoje ( )x ( )x
103.	You will also need the word 'now.' Here it is. Just listen
	agora ( ) ( )
104.	Here is the first syllable.
	a- ( )x ( )x

105.	And the second. The $\underline{o}$ is like the $\underline{a}$ of 'paws.'
	-go- ( )x ( )x
106.	The third syllable has the flapped $\underline{r}$ .
	-ra ( )x ( )x
107.	Here they are together, forming the word 'now.'
	agora ( )x ( )x
108.	Now you can say 'He's at home now.'
	Está em casa agora ( )x ( )x
109.	You can say 'Sandra is going to New York today.'
	A Sandra vai a Nova Iorque hoje ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
110.	You already know the word for 'tomorrow.'
	amanhã ( )x ( )x
111.	So you can say 'Inês is going to leave tomorrow.'
	A Inês vai sair amanhã ( )x ( )x
112.	Here is the word for 'early.'
	cedo ( )x ( )x
113.	Practice <u>cedo</u> in these phrases.
	O Paulo vai estudar cedo ( )x
	Eu vou chegar cedo ( )x
	O senhor pretende sair cedo? ( )x
	O Santos pretende chegar cedo ( )x
114.	Here is a more specific time reference: 'at two o'clock.'
	ās duas ( )x ( )x

115.	For example	, you	mi	ght	want	to	say	'I'm	goi	ng to	arrive
	at two o'cl	ock.'									
	Eu vo	u che	gar	às	duas		(	) x	(	) x	
116.	Here is 'at	thre	ео	'clo	ck.'						
	às tr	ês	(	) x	(	) x					
117.	Here is 'at	four	0'	clo	ck.'						
	às quat	.ro	(	) x	(	) x					
118.	Repeat the	numbe	r '	foui	c' by	sy.	llab:	les.			
	ďл	ıa-	(	) x	(	) x					
	- t	ro	(	) x	(	) x					
119.	Again, here	is '	at	foui	c.'						
	às quat	ro	(	) x	(	) x					
120.	And here is	at 'at	fiv	e.'							
	às cir	CO	(	) x	(	) x					
121.	The first s	syllab	le	of g	cinco	rh	ymes	with	the	word	d <u>sim</u>
	'yes.'										
	\$	sim	(	) x	(	) x					
	Ci	n-	(	) x	(	) x					
	cir	co	(	) x	(	) x					
122.	Again, here	e is '	at	fiv	e.'						
	às cir	nco	(	) x	(	) x					
123.	Finally, he	ere is	'a	t t	en.'						
	às de:	z	(	) x	(	) x					

124. Practice	e these phr	ases co	ontai	ning	time	references
(	O Paulo vai	. chegar	r às	duas	(	) x
A	Ângela vai	chegar	r às	três	(	) x
O Marco	os pretende	sair à	ās qu	atro	(	) x
A II	nês pretend	le sair	às c	cinco	(	) x

Eu vou sair às dez ( )x

Ela vai sair às duas ( )x

	Exchange	<b>≠</b> 16
Qu	uando o senhor vai a Nova	Iorque?
Vc	ou hoje.	
		When are you going to New
		York?
	-	I'm going today.
	Exchange	<b>≠</b> 17
Qı	uando o Luís vai chegar?	
Va	ai chegar hoje.	
	_	When is Luis going to arrive?
	-	He's going to arrive today.
	Exchange	<b>≠</b> 18
0	Luís vai chegar hoje?	
Vā	ai sim. Vai chegar cedo, à	as duas.
	_	Is Luis going to arrive today?
	_	Yes, he is. He's going to
		arrive early, at two.

Exchange ##	19
A Ângela vai chegar às quatro?	
Não, não vai. Vai chegar às cir	nco.
	Is Ângela going to arrive
	at four?
	No, she's not. She's going
	to arrive at five.
Exchange ##	20
Quando a senhora pretende estud	dar?
Eu vou estudar agora.	
	When are you planning to
	study?
	I'm going to study now.
Exchange ##	21
Quando o senhor pretende sair?	
Eu vou sair agora.	
	When are you planning to leave?
	I'm going to leave now.

Exchange ##	22
O senhor vai a Nova Iorque?  Vou, sim.	
Quando?	
Hoje, às três.	
	Are you going to New York?
	Yes, I am.
	When?
	Today at three.
Exchange ≠≠	23
A senhora pretende estudar?	
Pretendo.	
Quando?	
Agora.	
	Do you plan to study?
	I do.
	When?
	Now.

Exchange	#	24
----------	---	----

O Marcos vai sair?	
Vai.	
Quando?	
Hoje, às quatro ou às cin	ico.
	Is Marcos going to leave?
	Yes, he is.
	When?
	Today, at four or five.
Exchange	e ≠≠ 25
A Raquel pretende sair?	
Pretende sim.	
Quando?	
Hoje cedo, às duas.	
	Does Raquel plan to leave?
	Yes, she does.
	When?
	Today, early, at two.
	Today, early, at two.

1.	Recall this word from a previous exchange.
	Qual ( )x ( )x
2.	When $\underline{\text{qual}}$ is said alone, the $\underline{1}$ , for many speakers, has a
	quality almost like a $\underline{w}$ sound.
	Qual ( )x ( )x
3.	We pointed out the same feature about the $\underline{1}$ in the name
	Raquel. For many speakers it sounds very much like a $\underline{w}$ .
	Raquel () $x$ () $x$
4.	This $\underline{\mathtt{w}}\text{-like}$ pronunciation of the $\underline{\mathtt{l}}$ is typical when the $\underline{\mathtt{l}}$
	is the last sound uttered in a word or phrase. Another
	example is the $\underline{1}$ in the word $\underline{\text{Brasil}}$ .
	Brasil ( )x ( )x
5.	You may also have noticed this kind of $\underline{1}$ in the word
	solteiro.
	solteiro ( )x ( )x
6.	In $\underline{\text{solteiro}}$ the $\underline{l}$ is not at the end of a word, but it is at
	the end of a syllable. In that location too it is likely
	to be pronounced with a $\underline{w}$ -like quality.
	sol- ( )x ( )x
	solteiro ( )x ( )x
7.	Listen for the $\underline{1}$ in the name $\underline{\text{Silva}}$ .
	Silva ( )x ( )x
8.	Here too the $\underline{1}$ is at the end of a syllable and is likely to
	resemble a $\underline{\mathbf{w}}$ .
	Silva ()x ()x

9.	Practice the $\underline{1}$ in the	ese additional v	words, whose meanings
	we can omit for now.		
	mal	falta	talco
	sal	calda	alvo
	sol	alma	selva
	mel	calmo	
	tal		
	vil		
10.	Also, practice it in	these names.	
	Nilza	Elza	Celso
	Vilma	Olga	Wilson
	Telma	Ilze	Nelson
	Silva	Alma	Gilson
11.	Now observe and repe	at this item.	
	dona	( )x ( )x	
12.	Do the same with the	se items.	
	dona Nilza	( )x	
	dona Telma	( )x	
	dona Āngela	( )x	
	dona Lúcia	( )x	
	dona Inês	( )x	
13.	The word <u>dona</u> is a t	itle of respect	commonly used with
	feminine names.		
	A dona Inês e	stá em casa	( )x
	A dona Nilz	a vai ficar	( )x

	A dona Ângela não vai sair ( )x
	Como vai, dona Raquel? ( )x
	Tudo bem, dona Lúcia? ( )x
14.	Now observe this item. Do not repeat yet.
	o senhor Silva ( ) ( )
15.	You know o senhor with the meaning 'you.' It can also
	serve as a title of repect for men. Its closest English
	equivalent is 'Mister.' Mimic.
	o senhor Silva ( )x ( )x
	o senhor Santos ( )x ( )x
	o senhor Paulo ( )x ( )x
	o senhor José ( )x ( )x
16.	Practice these phrases.
	O senhor Silva está em Brasília ( )x
	O senhor Santos é casado ( )x
	O senhor Paulo vai sair ( )x
	O senhor Luís não vai estudar ( )x
17.	Observe this item. Do not mimic yet.
	quero ( ) ( )
18.	This is the verb form 'I want.' Mimic the first syllable.
	que- ( )x ( )x
19.	Mimic the second syllable.
	-ro ( )x ( )x

20.	Now say the two syllables together. The $\underline{r}$ is the flapped
	<u>r</u> .
	quero ( )x ( )x
21.	The form means 'I want.' At times you will precede it
	with the pronoun $\underline{eu}$ .
	eu quero ( )x ( )x
22.	Now you can add the infinitive or neutral form $\underline{\mathtt{sair}}$ and
	say 'I want to leave.'
	eu quero sair ( )x ( )x
23.	Or you could add the neutral form <a href="ficar">ficar</a> and say 'I want
	to stay.'
	eu querc ficar ( )x ( )x
24.	Practice these additional combinations that say 'I want
	to'
	eu quero dançar ( )x ( )x
	eu quero conhecer ( )x ( )x
	eu quero estudar ( )x ( )x
	eu quero chegar ( )x ( )x
25.	Practice these combinations that say 'I don't want to'
	eu não quero ficar ( )x ( )x
	eu não quero sair ( )x ( )x
	eu não quero estudar ( )x ( )x
	eu não quero chegar ( )x ( )x
	eu não quero conhecer ( )x ( )x

26.	Now observe this form.
	quer ( ) ( )
27.	Notice the $\underline{h}$ -type quality of the $\underline{r}$ . Mimic.
	quer ( )x ( )x
28.	This is the verb form for 'want(s),' the form that goes
	with José, Nilza, o senhor, etc.
	o José quer ( )x
	a Nilza quer ( )x
	o senhor quer ( )x
	o senhor Silva quer ( )x
	a professora quer ( )x
	a dona Inês quer ( )x
29.	Now you can add the neutral form ficar and say 'José
	wants to stay.'
	o José quer ficar ( )x ( )x
30.	And you can add the neutral form dancar and say 'Nilza
	wants to dance.'
	a Nilza quer dançar ( )x ( )x
31.	Practice these combinations that say somebody 'wants to
	or 'doesn't want to'
	a dona Raquel quer sair ( )x
	o Marcos quer ficar ( )x
	a Āngela quer estudar ( )x

	a Lūcia não quer ficar ( )x
	o senhor Luís não quer sair ( )x
	o Paulo não quer conhecer a professora ( )x
32.	At this juncture we can supply several additional neutral
	forms. Here is the form for 'work.' Do not repeat it
	yet.
	trabalhar ( ) ( )
33.	Mimic the first syllable.
	tra- ( )x ( )x
34.	Mimic the second syllable.
	-ba- ( )x ( )x
35.	Mimic the third syllable. It begins with a sound similar
	to the <u>11</u> of William.
	-lhar ( )x ( )x
36.	Here is the infinitive again.
	trabalhar ( )x ( )x
37.	Practice these phrases.
	o Marcos vai trabalhar ( )x
	o Yara quer trabalhar ( )x
	o senhor pretende trabalhar? ( )x
	eu não quero trabalhar ( )x
	eu não vou trabalhar ( )x
38.	Here is the neutral form for the verb 'come.'
	vir ( )v ( )v

39.	It consists of the sound $\underline{\mathbf{v}}$ for	ollowed by the $-\underline{ir}$ ending
	vir ()x	( )x
40.	Practice these phrases which	contain the verb 'come.'
	o senhor quer vir?	( )x
	a senhora pretende vir?	( )x
	o Luis não quer vir hoje	( )x
	eu guero vir amanhã	( )x

Exch	nange ## 1
A Lúcia quer vir? Não, não quer.	Does Lúcia want to come?
	No, she doesn't.
Excl	nange ## 2
A dona Inês quer sair?	
Quer sim.	
	Does Inês want to leave?
	Yes, she does.
Excl	nange ## 3
O senhor quer trabalha:	r hoje?
Quero sim.	
	Do you want to work today?
	Yes, I do.

Exchan	ge # 4
O senhor Santos quer sair Quer sim. Quer sair agor	
	Does Santos want to leave today? Yes, he does. He wants to leave now.
Exchan	ge <del>77</del> 5
Quem quer ficar? Eu guero ficar.	Who wants to stay?
	I want to stay.
Exchan	ge # 6
Quem quer trabalhar? A Lūcia quer trabalhar.	
	Who wants to work? Lúcia wants to work.

Exchange ## 7
Quem quer conhecer o senhor Silva?
Eu quero.
Who wants to meet Mr. Silva?
$\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ I want to.
Exchange ## 8
O senhor pretende trabalhar hoje?
Pretendo.
Do you plan to work today?
I do.
Exchange ## 9
O José pretende vir?
Pretende.
Does José plan to come?
He does.

Exchange	<b>≠</b> 10
O Paulo vai trabalhar hoje? Vai, claro.	
	Is Paulo going to work today? Certainly he's going to.
Exchange	# 11
A senhora quer trabalhar em Não, não quero.	casa?
	Do you want to work at home?  No, I don't want to.

41.	Observe this item. Do not repeat it yet.
	posso ( ) ( )
42.	This is the verb form for 'I can.' Mimic the first
	syllable. The vowel is the $\underline{a}$ of 'paws.' There is no puff
	of air on the p.
	po- ( )x ( )x
43.	Mimic the second syllable.
	-sso ( )x ( )x
44.	Mimic the two together. The form means 'I can.'
	posso ( )x ( )x
45.	There will be times that you will want to use the pronoun
	eu.
	eu posso ( )x ( )x
46.	Now you can add the infinitive $\underline{\text{ficar}}$ and say 'I can stay.'
	eu posso ficar ( )x ( )x
47.	And you can add the infinitive $\underline{\mathtt{sair}}$ and say 'I can leave.'
	eu posso sair ( )x ( )x
48.	Practice these additional combinations in which you say
	that you can or cannot do something.
	eu posso chegar ( )x
	eu posso estudar ( )x
	eu não posso dançar ( )x
	eu não posso ficar ( )x

49.	Observe this item. Do not repeat it yet.
	pode ( ) ( )
50.	This is the verb form for 'can' that accompanies José,
	Maria, a senhora, etc. Mimic the first syllable. Notice
	the <u>a</u> of 'paws.'
	po- ( )x ( )x
51.	Mimic the second syllable. Notice the $\underline{j}$ sound of English
	'jeep.'
	-de ( )x ( )x
52.	Here is the complete form.
	pode ( )x ( )x
53.	Now you can say 'Maria can.'
	a Maria pode ( )x ( )x
54.	And 'José can.'
	o José pode ( )x ( )x
55.	And 'you can.'
	o senhor pode ( )x ( )x
56.	Now add the neutral form $\underline{\text{estudar}}$ to say 'Jose can study.'
	o José pode estudar ( )x ( )x
57.	And add the neutral form <a href="mailto:say">sair</a> to say 'Maria can leave.'
	a Maria pode sair ( )x ( )x
58.	Practice these additional combinations in which you say
	that somebody can or cannot do something.
	a dona Lúcia pode ficar ( )x
	a dona Lúcia não pode dancar ( )x

a Inês pode estudar ) x a Inês não pode sair ) x o senhor Silva não pode dançar ) x o senhor Silva pode ficar ) x a Ângela pode chegar ) x a Ângela não pode estudar ) x a senhora não pode ficar ) x a senhora pode sair ) x

	Exchange ## 12
	O senhor pode ficar? Posso sim.
•	Can you stay? Yes, I can.
	Exchange ## 13
	A senhora pode estudar?  Não, não posso.  Can you study?
	No, I can't.
	Exchange ## 14
	O senhor pode dançar? Não, não posso.
	Can you dance?  No, I can't.

	Exchange ## 15
 Quem pode ficar? Eu posso.	
	Who can stay?
	Exchange ## 16
 Quem pode estudar?	
 Eu não posso.	
	Who can study?
	T can't

Exchange ≠ 17	
 A Ângela pode sair?	
 Pode, claro.	
Can Ângela come out?	
Of course she can.	
Exchange ≠ 18	
 Quando ela pode sair?	
 Pode sair agora.	
When can she come out?	?
She can come out now.	

59.	You already know the question-words Quem?, Onde?, Quando?
	and Como?
	Quem? ( )x 'Who?'
	Onde? ( )x 'Where?'
	Quando? ( )x 'When?'
	Como? ( )x 'How?'
60.	Here is the question-word 'Why?' Just listen.
	Por que? ( ) ( )
61.	It is written as two words. Mimic the first portion.
	por ( )x ( )x
62.	Mimic the second portion.
	que ( )x ( )x
63.	Now mimic it in its entirety.
	Por que? ( )x ( )x
64.	Now you can ask, for example, 'Why are you going?'
	Por que o senhor vai? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
65.	Or 'Why are you going to study?'
	Por que o senhor vai estudar? ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
66.	Or 'Why does Ângela want to study?'
	Por que a $\hat{A}$ ngela quer estudar? ( )x ( )x
67.	Practice these additional questions, all asking 'Why?'
	Be sure you know what they mean.
	Por que a Lúcia está em casa? ( )x
	Por que o Marcos vai a Brasília? ( )x

	Por que o Paulo quer ficar?	(	) x			
	Por que a Maria pretende sair?	(	) x			
	Por que a Inês não quer dançar?	(	) x			
	Por que o Luís não pode chegar?	(	) x			
	Por que a senhora está aqui?	(	) x			
	Por que a senhora não vai hoje?	(	) x			
68.	The answer 'because' uses the same words,	sa	id wi	th a	a	
	slightly different intonation within the s	ent	tence	. 7	Гhе	
	words are written as one.					
	porque ( )x ( )x					
69.	Now you can answer 'Because I want to,' fo	r	examp	le.		
	porque eu quero ( )x ( )x					
70.	Or 'because I'm married.'					
	porque sou casado ( )x ( )x					
71.	Or 'because Marcos is in New York.'					
	porque o Marcos está em Nova Iorque	(	) x	(	) x	
72.	Practice these additional phrases beginning	g v	with	'be	cause	. '
	porque está chovendo	(	) x			
	porque o dia está lindo	(	) x			
	porque a minha filha não quer	(	) x			
	porque o meu filho não pode	(	) x			
	porque eu não posso	(	) x			
	porque a senhora não quer	(	) x			
	porque a dona Nilza vai sair	(	) x			
	porque o senhor Santos pretende ficar	(	) x			

	Exchange 拇	± 19
	Por que o senhor vai a Filad	délfia?
<del></del>	Porque não conheço.	
		Why are you going to
		Philadelphia?
	_	Because I don't know it.
	Exchange 弁	<b>∠</b> 20
	Por que o senhor vai ficar?	
	Porque está chovendo.	
	_	Why are you going to stay?
	_	Because it's raining.
	Exchange 🗲	± 21
	Por que a senhora quer sair	agora?
	Porque a tarde está linda.	
		Why do you want to go out
		now?
		Because the afternoon is
		beautiful.

Exchange ## 22
Por que o senhor vai a Nova Iorque?
Porque a Yara vai chegar.
Why are you going to New
York?
Because Yara is going to
arrive.
Exchange ## 23
Por que o Luís vai a São Paulo?
Porque vai estudar.
Why is Luis going to São
Paulo?
Because he's going to study.
Exchange ## 24
Por que a senhora vai à festa?
Porque eu quero dançar.
Why are you going to the party
Because I want to dance.
6.21

Exchange ##	25
Por que a Inês quer ficar em c	asa?
Porque quer ficar com a filha.	
	Why does Ines want to stay
	home?
	Because she wants to stay
	with her daughter.
Exchange ≠	26
Por que a senhora não pode sai	r?
Porque sou casada!	
	Why can't you go out?
	Because I'm married!
Exchange ##	27
Por que o senhor não vai?	
Porque não quero!	
	Why aren't you going?
	Because I don't want to!

73.	Here is the preposition 'with.'
	com ( )x ( )x
74.	It rhymes with $\underline{bom}$ . In other words, it has the same nasal
	vowel.
	bom ( )x ( )x
	com ( )x ( )x
75.	Practice these phrases that say 'with somebody.'
	com Santos ( )x
	com o Santos ( )x
	com Marcos ( )x
	com o Marcos ( )x
	com Yara ( )x
	com a Yara ( )x
	com Inês ( )x
	com a Inês ( )x
	com a senhora ( )x
	com o senhor ( )x
	com a minha filha ( )x
	com o meu filho ( ) $x$
76.	Notice this special form for 'with me.'
	comigo ()x ()x
77.	Here is the preposition 'without.'
	sem ( )x ( )x

78.	It rhymes with bem.						
	bem ( )x	(	) x				
	sem ( )x	(	) x				
79.	Practice these phrases co	nta	ining	'wit	hout	. '	
	sem Marcos	(	) x				
	sem o Marcos	(	) x				
	sem Yara	(	) x				
	sem a Yara	(	) x				
	sem Paulo	(	) x				
	sem o Paulo	(	) x				
	sem professor	(	) x				
	sem o professor	(	) x				
	sem o meu filho	(	) x				
	sem a minha filha	(	) x				
80.	Here are some longer phra	ses	with	com	and	<u>sem</u> .	
	A Inês está com	a	Āngela	(	) x		
	O Luís está com	a	Lúcia?	(	) x		
	Quem está com	a R	aquel?	(	) x		
	Quem vai a Brasilia com	o s	enhor?	(	) x		
	Quem vai ficar em casa	co	m essa	moç	a?	(	) x
	Quem vai sai	r c	omigo?	(	) x		
	O senhor quer estuda	r c	omigo?	(	) x		
	A senhora quer sair com	о М	larcos?	(	) x		
	O Santos quer vir com	o s	enhor?	(	) x		
	Eu não posso sair sem	a	Āngela	. (	) x		

) x	(	Eu não posso sair sem a minha filha
) x	(	Eu não quero ficar aqui sem o Marcos
) x	(	Eu não posso ficar aqui sem o Luís
) x	(	A Yara não quer dançar sem o José
) x	(	O Santos não vai trabalhar sem o Paulo
) x	(	A Raquel vai sair sem a Lúcia
) x	(	O senhor vai sair sem a Ângela?

Exchange # 28
A Ângela está com o senhor?
Não, ela está com a Sandra.  Is Ângela with you?  No, she's with Sandra.
Exchange ## 29
O senhor quer estudar comigo? Não, não quero.
Do you want to study with me? No, I don't.
Exchange ## 30
Quem vai com a Lúcia? A Nilza vai.
Who's going with Lūcia? Nilza's going.

Exchange ## 31
O Luís vai sair sem a Lúcia?  Vai sim.
Is Luís going to leave without Lúcia? Yes, he is.
Exchange ≠ 32
A Inês vai à festa?  Não, ela não vai sem o Paulo.
Is Ines going to the party?  No, she's not going without Paulo.

Exchange ## 33
Quem vai trabalhar com o Marcos?  Eu vou.
Who's going to work with  Marcos?  I am.
Exchange ≠ 34
O senhor vai trabalhar?  Não, eu não posso trabalhar sem ela.
Are you going to work? No, I can't work without her.

In		-

	1.	Review	these	verb	forms.
--	----	--------	-------	------	--------

posso ()x
pretendo ()x
quero ()x
conheço ()x

2. The above verb forms all say 'I' do something. We will call them 'I-forms.' Repeat them again, this time preceded by  $\underline{eu}$ .

eu posso ( )x
eu pretendo ( )x
eu quero ( )x
eu conheço ( )x

3. The unstressed <u>-o</u> ending is typical of I-forms. Listen for it in the additional examples below. The examples are new to you. You need not memorize their meanings. You will probably recognize them, though, because they are related to infinitive forms that you have already practiced.

chego ( )x 'I arrive'
fico ( )x 'I stay'
estudo ( )x 'I study'
trabalho ( )x 'I work'
saio ( )x 'I leave'

4.	You have had several other I-forms that do not have this
	typical ending and which therefore can be said to be
	irregular.
	vou ( )x
	sou ( )x
5.	Now review these verb forms.
	pode ( )x
	pretende ( )x
	conhece ( )x
	vai ( )x
	está ()x
	é ()x
6.	You have learned to use the above verb forms with Paulo,
	Ângela, o senhor, o professor, o dia, etc.
	o Paulo pode ( )x
	a Ângela pretende ( )x
	o senhor conhece ( )x
	o professor vai ( )x
	o dia está lindo ( )x
	o Paulo é casado ( )x
7.	We could call these forms 'He-forms,' 'You-forms,' 'third
	person singular forms, 'etc., etc. We will simplify matters
	and settle on just one designation. Henceforth, we will
	call all such forms 'He-forms.' Practice these he-forms
	again.

	a Inês pode ( )x
	o Paulo não pode ( )x
	a professora pretende ( )x
	o professor não pretende ( )x
	o Marcos está em Washington ( )x
	a Ângela não está aqui ( )x
	o senhor vai? ( )x
	a senhora não vai? ( )x
8.	He-forms, like I-forms, have typical endings, but these
	involve more patterns than we want to get into at this
	point. Instead, we want to introduce the concept of the
	'We-form,' the form of the verb that says 'we' do something.
	For example, here is the form for 'we know.'
	conhecemos ( )x ( )x
9.	Here is the form for 'we can.'
	podemos ()x ()x
10.	Here is 'we plan.'
	pretendemos ( )x ( )x
11.	And here is 'we want.'
	queremos ( )x ( )x
12.	The unstressed $-\underline{mos}$ ending always signals a we-form. Repeat
	again.
	conhecemos ( )x
	podemos ( )x
	pretendemos ( )x
	queremos ( )x

13.	The word for 'we' often precedes these forms. Here is
	the word for 'we.'
	nós ( )x ( )x
14.	Practice saying $\underline{nós}$ together with the we-form.
	nós conhecemos ( )x
	nós podemos ( )x
	nós pretendemos ( )x
	nós queremos ( )x
15.	Now you can say 'We know Yara,' for example.
	Nós conhecemos a Yara ( )x
16.	And you can say 'We know Lisbon.'
	Nós conhecemos Lisboa ( )x
17.	You can combine the last three of the above we-forms with
	infinitives. For example, here is 'We want to stay.'
	Nós queremos ficar ( )x ( )x
18.	And here is 'We want to leave.'
	Nós queremos sair ( )x ( )x
19.	Here is 'We plan to arrive.'
	Nós pretendemos chegar ( )x ( )x
20.	And here is 'We plan to work.'
	Nós pretendemos trabalhar ( )x ( )x
21.	Here is 'We are able to stay.'
	Nós podemos ficar ( )x ( )x

22.	And here is 'We are able to study.'
	Nós podemos estudar ( )x ( )x
23.	Practice the following combinations. They incorporate the
	negative element <u>não</u> .
	Nós não queremos sair ( )x
	Nós não pretendemos ficar ( )x
	Nos não podemos dançar ( )x
	Nós não podemos trabalhar ( )x
	Nós não queremos estudar ( )x
24.	Remember how you say 'the day.'
	o dia ( )x ( )x
25.	The word $\underline{\text{dia}}$ is preceded by the definite article $\underline{\text{o}}$ .
	o dia ( )x ( )x
26.	Now listen to how you say 'a day.' Do not mimic yet.
	um dia ( ) ( )
27.	The word $\underline{\text{dia}}$ is preceded by the indefinite article, $\underline{\text{um}}$ .
	Again, just listen to 'a day.'
	um dia ( ) ( )
28.	Listen to the contrast between $\underline{o}$ and $\underline{um}$ , i.e., the
	difference between 'the' and 'a.'
	o ( ) 'the'
	um ( ) ( ) 'a'
29.	The difference is a matter of nasalization. The ${f o}$ is not
	nasalized. The ${\color{red} { m um}}$ is nasalized. Mimic the contrast.
	o ()x ()x 'the'
	um ()x ()x 'a'

30.	Indeed, um	can be	pro	nounc	ed	by na	asalizing the $\underline{o}$ sound.
	Try it.						
		0	(	) x	(	) x	'the'
		um	(	) x	(	) x	'a'
31.	Now mimic	the cont	ras	t bet	wee	en 'th	ne day' and 'a day.'
	0	dia	(	) x	(	) x	
	um	dia	(	) x	(	) x	
32.	Mimic the	contrast	: be	tween	. <b>'</b> t	he yo	oung man' and 'a young
	man.'						
	o r	apaz	(	) x	(	) x	
	um r	apaz	(	) x	(	) x	
33.	Here is a	new word	l, t	he wo	rd	for '	car.' Just listen.
	C	arro	(	)	(	)	
34.	The <u>rr</u> rep	resents	the	<u>r</u> so	und	l whic	ch is similar to the
	strong Eng	lish <u>h</u> s	oun	ıd. M	imi	c.	
	C	arro	(	) x	(	) x	
35.	Now mimic	the cont	ras	t bet	wee	en 'th	ne car' and 'a car.'
	o c	arro	(	) x	(	) x	'the'
	um c	arro	(	) x	(	) x	'a'
36.	Here is the	e word f	or	'phon	e c	all.'	
	telefo	nema	(	) x	(	) x	
37.	Mimic the	contrast	be	tween	. <b>'</b> t	he ph	none call' and 'a phone
	call.'						
	o telefo	nema	(	) x	(	) x	'the'
	um telefo	nema	(	) x	(	) x	'a'

38.	Let us take another look at the so-called flapped $\underline{r}$ .	Ву
	this time you may feel rather comfortable saying this	r
	between vowels.	

Yara	(	) x
quero	(	) x
claro	(	) x
senhora	(	) x
Maria	(	) x
professora	(	) x
solteiro	(	) x

39. But when the  $\underline{r}$  is the second element of a consonant cluster, you may be experiencing a bit more trouble with it. Practice saying these isolated syllables, all of which have the flapped r clustered with another consonant.

bri	(	) x	(	) x
bre	(	) x	(	) x
pri	(	) x	(	) x
pre	(	) x	(	) x
dro	(	) x	(	) x
dru	(	) x	(	) x
tra	(	) x	(	) x
tre	(	) x	(	) x
gro	(	) x	(	) x
gri	(	) x	(	) x
cro	(	) x	(	) x

	cri ( )x ( )x
	fra ( )x ( )x
	fre ( )x ( )x
40.	Now practice the $\underline{r}$ clusters in these familiar words.
	pretendo ()x ()x
	<u>pr</u> ofessor ( )x ( )x
	<u>tr</u> abalhar ( )x ( )x
	o <u>br</u> igado ()x ()x
41.	Here is the <u>tr</u> cluster in a new word.
	outra ( )x ( )x 'other'
42.	Here it is in another new word.
	metro ( )x ( )x 'meter'
43.	Recall the question 'Where is?'
	Onde está? ( )x ( )x
44.	You have used this pattern in asking, for example, 'Where
	is Luís?'
	Onde está o Luís? ( )x ( )x
45.	Portuguese speakers commonly use a variation of this
	pattern to ask 'Where is?' They insert $\underline{\acute{e}}$ que between
	Onde and está. Just listen.
	Onde é que está? ( ) ( )
46.	The <u>é que</u> portion means 'it is that.' Repeat.
	é que ( )x ( )x

47.	Thus the question Onde é que está? asks 'Where is it that
	is?'
	Onde é que ( )x ( )x
	Onde é que está? ( )x ( )x
48.	You can use this new formula to ask 'Where is Luis?'
	Onde é que está o Luís? ( )x ( )x
49.	Or 'Where is Ines?', or anybody else, of course.
	Onde é que está a Inês? ( )x ( )x
	Onde é que está a professora? ( )x ( )x
50.	Compare the two patterns.
	Onde está o professor? ( )x ( )x
	Onde é que está o professor? ( )x ( )x
	Onde está a Yara? ( )x ( )x
	Onde é que está a Yara? ( )× ( )×
51.	It is time to introduce another way of addressing someone,
	another way of saying 'You.' Thus far you have seen o
	senhor and a senhora. Generally, these are the forms that
	are used when one is talking with persons that one does
	not know too well and with whom one does not feel
	particularly close. This will almost always be the case
	in your initial contacts with a Portuguese speaker. After
	a degree of familiarity or friendship has been established,
	the Portuguese speaker may feel that it is appropriate to
	switch to another form of address. He will suggest that
	both of you begin to use você.

Você ( )x ( )x

52.	<u>Voce</u> is the form for both	sexes.	
	Bom dia Paulo. Você vai	bem?	( )x
	Bom dia Yara. Você vai	bem?	( )x
53.	Practice these additional	phrases	with você.
	Você pode	( )x	
	Você pode sair	( )x	
	Você pretende?	( )x	
	Você pretende ficar?	( )x	
	Você quer?	( )x	
	Você quer trabalhar?	( )x	
	Você é solteiro	( )x	
	Você é professora	( )x	

This ends the programming section of this unit. You should now go to the dialog, which appears on the next page and which is also recorded on tape. Look over the English translation of the dialog so that you know what you are dealing with. Then go to the tape. The dialog is recorded in two steps, Pronunciation and Fluency. In the Pronunciation step the sentences of the dialog are broken down into smaller units to make it easier for you to mimic and repeat. In the Fluency step the entire sentence is voiced for you to repeat. In recording both steps we have carefully timed the presentation of material, so that you should be able to let the tape run while you are repeating. However,

if you need to stop or listen to something again, do so. Keep your book open and refer to the English or Portuguese as necessary. Your goal is to know the sentences well enough so that you can participate in the dialog with your instructor in the check-out session.

# Dialog

#### Paulo

fome

hunger

Estou com fome.

I'm hungry.

é que?

is it that?

onde é que está?

where (is it that) is?

a comida

the food

Onde é que está a comida?

Where's the food?

Sandra

na

in the

outra

other

a sala the room

em cima on top

da of the

a mesa the table

Na outra sala, em cima da mesa. In the other room, on the table.

Paulo

vai go (he-form)

comer eat (neutral form)

Você não vai comer? Aren't you going to eat?

Sandra

số only

tarde late

Số mais tarde. Not until later.

agora now

vou go (I-form)

dar give (neutral form)

vou dar I'm going to give

dar um telefonema to make a phone call

Agora vou dar um telefonema. Right now I'm going to make a

phone call.

### Paulo

falar speak, talk (neutral form)

nisso of that

por falar nisso speaking of that

Por falar nisso, Maria quer By the way, Maria wants to talk

falar com você. with you.

# Sandra

pretendemos plan (we-form)

visitar visit (neutral form)

o parque the park

Ah! Eu e ela pretendemos Oh! She and I plan to visit the

visitar o parque amanhã. park tomorrow.

#### Paulo

Ah, é?! Eu não conheço o Oh, really?! I'm not familiar with

parque. the park.

#### Sandra

quiser wish

se você quiser if you wish

ir qo (neutral form)

conosco with us

Se você quiser, você pode If you wish, you can go with us.

ir conosco.

# Supplementary Practice

A. Additional work with I-forms in combination with neutral forms.

Practice repeating the following combinations. Be sure you know what they mean.

1. Eu quero vir.

Eu quero visitar.

Eu quero ir.

Eu quero falar.

2. Eu pretendo dar.

Eu pretendo comer.

Eu pretendo visitar.

Eu pretendo ir.

3. Eu não posso falar.

Eu não posso ficar.

Eu não posso comer.

Eu não posso ir.

4. Eu não vou falar.

Eu não vou dar.

Eu não vou comer.

Eu não vou sair.

- Eu vou ficar até as três hoje.
   Eu não posso ficar aqui amanhã.
- Eu quero dar um telefonema.Eu quero falar com a Yara.
- Eu vou trabalhar até as cinco.
   Eu não vou sair às três.
- Eu não vou sair com o senhor.
   Eu vou sair com o Marcos.
- Eu pretendo sair cedo.
   Eu quero chegar às cinco.
- 10. Eu não posso trabalhar hoje.
  Eu vou ficar em casa.
- B. Additional work with we-forms in combination with neutral forms.

Practice repeating the following combinations.

Nós queremos visitar.
 Nós queremos sair.

Nós queremos ir. Nós queremos trabalhar.

- Nós não pretendemos ficar.
   Nós não pretendemos falar.
   Nós não pretendemos vir.
   Nós não pretendemos sair.
- Nós não podemos ficar.
   Nós não podemos ir.
   Nós não podemos vir.
   Nós não podemos dar.
- Nós não queremos trabalhar hoje.
   Nós pretendemos ficar em casa.
- Nós não pretendemos sair agora.
   Nós queremos sair mais tarde.
- Nós pretendemos visitar o parque.
   Nós queremos ir hoje.
- Nós não podemos vir cedo.
   Nós queremos vir às sete.

C. Additional work with he-forms in combination with neutral forms.

Practice repeating the following combinations.

- 1. A Inês pode falar.
  - A Inês pode ir.
  - A Inês pode visitar.
  - A Inês pode trabalhar.
- 2. Você pode vir.

Você pode ficar.

Você pode dar.

Você pode comer.

- 3. O senhor não quer ficar?
  - O senhor não quer trabalhar?
  - O senhor não quer sair?
  - O senhor não quer ir?
- 4. O José quer ir.
  - O José quer vir.
  - O José quer falar.
  - O José quer dar.

- 5. O Marcos pretende ir.
  - O Marcos pretende trabalhar.
  - O Marcos pretende sair.
  - O Marcos pretende ficar.
- A Nilza pretende ir hoje.
   E a Raquel quer ir amanhã.
- A Lúcia vai visitar o parque hoje.
   Mas a Ângela vai trabalhar.
- O Marcos pode sair às três.
   Mas o Luís vai ficar até as quatro.
- Você pode ir conosco.
   E o Paulo pode ir com a Yara.
- A Sandra vai trabalhar até as cinco.
   Mas a Inês só vai trabalhar até as duas.
- O Paulo vai sair às sete.
   Mas o José não quer ficar até tarde.

### D. Practice in Asking Questions.

Using the first sentence of each group as a model, how would you express these questions in Portuguese?

- I. l. Do you plan to stay? (Você pretende ficar?)
  - 2. Do you plan to eat?
  - 3. Do you plan to leave?
  - 4. Do you want to leave?
  - 5. Do you want to come?
  - 6. Do you want to stay?
- II. l. Does Yara want to talk? (Yara quer falar?)
  - 2. Does Yara want to eat?
  - 3. Does Yara want to stay?
  - 4. Does Yara plan to stay?
  - 5. Does Yara plan to visit?
  - 6. Does Yara want to visit?
- III. 1. Can Mr. Silva stay? (O senhor Silva pode ficar?)
  - 2. Can Mr. Silva leave?
  - 3. Can Mr. Silva speak?
  - 4. Is Mr. Silva able to speak?
  - 5. Is Mr. Silva able to eat?
  - 6. Is Mr. Silva able to leave?

### E. Practice in Answering Questions.

Follow along visually as you listen to and <u>repeat</u> these questions and answers on the tape. This will give you additional practice in answering questions <u>affirmatively</u>.

- Do you plan to leave?
   Yes, I do.
- Do you want to leave?Yes, I do.
- Do you want to make a phone call?Yes, I do.
- Do you want to speak with Yara?Yes, I do.
- 5. Does Yara want to leave? Yes, she does.
- Does Yara want to stay?Yes, she does.
- 7. Does Yara plan to leave?
  Yes, she does.
- 8. Does José plan to leave?
  Yes, he does.
- Does José want to eat?Yes, he does.
- 10. Does José want to speak?
  Yes, he does.

- 11. Is José able to speak?
   Yes, he is.
- 12. Is José able to stay?
   Yes, he is.
- 13. Can José stay?
  Yes, he can.

# F. Practice with so.

- Só a Lúcia
- Số a Inês
- Số o Afonso
- Só o Afonso e a Ângela
- Số ela
- Số nốs
- Số o José vai
- Só a Maria quer
- Só nós podemos
- Só ele conhece
- Só até as três
- Số até amanhã

```
So com o senhor
```

So com a Sandra

Eu vou ficar só até as quatro A Yara vai ficar só até amanhã

Eu quero ir só com o senhor Ele pode dançar só com a Maria

A Ângela só vai estudar

A Sandra só vai dar um telefonema

O Marcos só quer trabalhar

O Luís só quer ficar em casa

số translatable as 'only' or 'not...until.'

số mais tarde

số às cinco

só às quatro

số amanhã

só hoje

Eu vou comer só mais tarde O Paulo vai sair só às duas A Raquel vai chegar só às três A Nilza pode sair só amanhã

## G. Practice with the special form quiser

Se você quiser, você pode dar um telefonema
Se você quiser, você pode falar com a Inês
Se você quiser, você pode ir com a Yara
Se você quiser, você pode trabalhar amanhã
Se você quiser, você pode estudar aqui
Se você quiser, você pode ficar em casa

Se a Sandra quiser, ela pode sair hoje
Se a Sandra quiser, ela pode ficar até as três
Se a Sandra quiser, ela pode vir com você
Se a Sandra quiser, ela pode chegar amanhã cedo
Se a Sandra quiser, ela pode ir comigo

# H. Translation Practice

Practice putting the following questions, answers and commentaries into Portuguese.

- 1. A. Are you planning to leave tomorrow?
  - B. Yes, I am. At ten o'clock.
- 2. A. Are you planning to stay here?
  - B. Yes, I am. But only until five o'clock.
- 3. A. Are you planning to stay until tomorrow?
  - B. Yes, I am.
- 4. A. Are you planning to eat now?
  - B. Yes, I am. I'm hungry.
- 5. A. I'm planning to eat at five.
  - B. At five?
  - A. Certainly! I'm hungry.
- 6. A. I plan to visit the park.
  - B. When? Today?
  - A. No. Tomorrrow.

- 7. A. Yara and I plan to leave early today.
  - B. Why?
  - A. Because the party is tomorrow.
- 8. A. Yara and I want to leave early tomorrow.
  - B. Why?
  - A. Because the party is tomorrow.
- 9. A. If you want, you can visit the park today.
  - B. Can I?
  - A. Of course. You can leave early.
- 10. A. If you want, you can make a phone call now.
  - B. Thanks. I want to talk with Yara.
- 11. A. If you want, you can stay until later.
  - B. No, thanks. I want to leave now.
- 12. A. If you want, you can stay here with me.
  - B. Can I? Thanks. Can I make a phone call?
- 13. A. I'm hungry. I want to eat.
  - B. The food is on the table.

- 14. A. Mary is hungry. She wants to eat now.
  - B. The food is in the other room.
- 15. A. Aren't you going to eat?
  - B. Later. Right now I want to talk with Paulo.
- 16. A. Aren't you going to speak with Yara?
  - B. Later. Right now I want to eat.
- 17. A. Aren't you going to stay?
  - B. Of course. I'm hungry.
- 18. A. Aren't you going to make a phone call?
  - B. Of course. I want to talk with Joe.
- 19. A. The food is in the other room.
  - B. Where is Joe?
  - A. In the other room, with the food.
- 20. A. Where is Yara?
  - B. In the other room, with Joe.
- 21. A. Do you want to leave now?
  - B. Yes, I do.

- 22. A. Do you want to eat now?
  - B. Yes, I do. I'm hungry.
- 23. A. Do you want to make a phone call?
  - B. Yes, I do. Where's the phone?
     (phone = o telefone)
  - A. It's in the other room.
- 24. A. Do you want to talk with Yara?
  - B. Yes, I do. Where is she?
  - A. She's in the other room.
- 25. A. Do you want to go out (leave) with that girl?
  - B. Yes, I do. What's her name?
  - A. Her name is Maria.
- 26. A. I want to go out with that girl.
  - B. She's married.
  - A. Oh, really?! (Ah, é?!)
- 27. A. I'm hungry.
  - B. The food is on the table.
  - A. Oh, is that right?! (Ah, e?!)

- 28. A. By the way, can I go with you?
  - B. Yes you can.
- 29. A. By the way, you can go with us.
  - B. Thanks, but I'm going to stay here.
- 30. A. Aren't you going to stay?
  - B. No, I can't.

n		- 8

Ρ	r	0	g:	r	a	m:	m	i	n	g

1.	Listen to this new word.
	trāfego ( ) ( )
2.	Listen again. Its stressed syllable is the first one.
	tráfego ( ) ( )
3.	Now mimic the first syllable of the word, i.e., the stressed
	syllable.
	trá- ( )x ( )x
4.	Now mimic the whole word.
	tráfego ( )x ( )x
5.	Here is another word. It is stressed on the first of two
	syllables.
	vamos ( ) ( )
6.	If the word is stressed on the $\underline{last}$ syllable it sounds like
	an English slang word meaning 'scram.'
	( ) ( )
7.	But stressed on the first syllable it is standard Portuguese,
	and it means 'we are going.' Mimic.
	vamos ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$

# Comment

In the next few frames we are going to talk about 'diphthongs.'

The word 'diphthong' literally means 'two tones.' As applied to

Portuguese, however, the word is best interpreted as meaning 'two vowel sounds.'

The label 'diphthong' has been traditionally given to the combination of sounds that results when a <u>stressed</u> vowel sound and an <u>unstressed</u> <u>i</u> or <u>u</u> come together, in that order, in the same sentence.

senter	ice.						
8.	Here	are the diphtho	ngs y	ou hav	e ha	d thus far.	
	(1)	Stressed <u>a</u> + un	stres	sed <u>i</u>	(as	in <u>mais</u> , <u>vai</u> )	
		Repeat: ai	( )x	(	) x		
	(2)	Stressed <u>a</u> + un	stres	sed <u>u</u>	(as	in <u>Paulo</u> )	
		Repeat: au	( )x	(	) x		
	(3)	Stressed <u>e</u> + un	stres	sed <u>i</u>	(as	in <u>solteiro</u> )	
		Repeat: ei	( )x	(	) x		
	(4)	Stressed <u>e</u> + un	stres	sed <u>u</u>	(as	in <u>eu</u> )	
		Repeat: eu	( )x	(	) x		
	(5)	Stressed o + un	stres	sed <u>u</u>	(as	in <u>estou</u> , <u>outra</u> )	
		Repeat: ou	( )x	(	) x		
	(6)	Stressed o + un	stres	sed <u>i</u>	(as	in <u>noite</u> )	
		Repeat: oi	( )x	(	) x		
9.	Now,	repeat these it	ems.	Liste	n fo	r the unstressed $\underline{\mathrm{u}}$ sound	•
		Paulo	( )x	(	) x		
		eu	( )x	(	) x		
		estou	( )x	(	) x		
		outra	( )x	(	) x		

10.	Now try these. Listen for the unstressed $\underline{i}$ sound.
	<u>mais</u> ( )x ( )x
	<u>vai</u> ( )x ( )x
	<pre>solteiro ( )x ( )x</pre>
	<u>noite</u> ( )x ( )x
11.	Here is a diphthong that appears in the dialog of this
	unit.
	Stressed $\underline{o}$ + unstressed $\underline{i}$
	Repeat: <u>oi</u> ( )x ( )x
12.	Here is the word it appears in.
	<u>oito</u> ( )x ( )x ( )x
13.	Some diphthongs can be nasalized.
	(1) The combination of stressed $\underline{e}$ + unstressed $\underline{i}$ is
	nasalized in the word $\underline{\mathtt{bem}}$ . The spelling of the
	word tends to obscure this fact.
	Repeat: <u>bem</u> ( )x ( )x
	(2) The combination of the sound we have freely symbolized
	as stressed $\underline{\mathtt{uh}}$ , plus the unstressed $\underline{\mathtt{u}}$ , is nasalized
	in the word $\underline{ ilde{nao}}$ . Again, the spelling tends to
	obscure this fact.
	Repeat: $\underline{\tilde{nao}}$ ( )x ( )x

14.	In the dialog for this unit there is a word which has the
	same nasal diphthong as the one you hear in the word $\underline{\tilde{nao}}$ .
	Here is the word.
	<u>vão</u> ( )x ( )x
15.	Repeat $n\tilde{a}o$ and $v\tilde{a}o$ one after the other. They rhyme.
	1. <u>não</u> ( )x ( )x
	2. <u>vão</u> ( )x ( )x
16.	You will find this nasal diphthong in stressed syllables.
	salão ( )x ( )x
	portão ( )x ( )x
	grandão ( )x ( )x
17.	And you will find it in unstressed syllables (where,
	incidentally, it is written differently).
	chegam ( )x ( )x
	estudam ( )x ( )x
	ficam ( )x ( )x
18.	Here is a three syllable word. It is a new form of a
	familiar verb. Just listen.
	pretendem ( ) ( )
19.	The last syllable of this verb form has the same nasal
	diphthong as the word bem, but the syllable is not stressed
	Here is the syllable in isolation.
	-em ()x ()x ()x

20.	Here is the	whole f	orm a	gair	n. Re	epeat,	being	sure	not	to
	stress the -	em at t	he en	d of	it.					
	pretendem	ı (	) x	(	) x					
21.	Here are sev	eral mo	re ve	rb f	forms	that e	end wit	th the	sam	ıe
	unstressed r	asal di	phtho	ng.						
	comen	n (	) x	(	) x					
	querem	ı (	) x	(	) x					
	conhecem	ı (	) x	(	) x					
	podem	ı (	) x	(	) x					
22.	Let us leave	diphth	ongs	and	retur	n to a	a famil	liar v	owel	
	sound. Repe	at thes	e wor	ds;	then	go on	to the	9		
	Observation	immedia	tely :	foll	Lowing	<b>.</b>				
	a. festa	. (	) x	(	) x					
	b. até	(	) x	(	) x					
	c. ela	(	) x	(	) x					

( )x ( )x

e. José ()x ()x

## Observation

d. é

You recall that the words in frame 22 all have the 'e' of English <u>bed</u>. In order to simplify discussion of this vowel sound, we will use the standard traditional terminology and call it the 'open  $\underline{E}$  sound.'\* Similarly, we will refer to the 'e' of  $\underline{voce}$  as the 'closed  $\underline{e}$ .' The terms

'open' and 'closed' have to do with tongue position. In producing the open E the tongue is lower in the mouth, with the result that there is more of an 'opening' between the tongue and the roof of the mouth. In producing the closed e, the tongue is higher in the mouth; i.e., the space between the tongue and the roof of the mouth is more 'closed.' Whether or not you are conscious of actually feeling this variation in tongue position is not so important. What matters is that you are able to hear and mimic the two sounds. With the practice you have had thus far the chances are good that you can already do so with considerable accuracy. Still, the terms 'open' and 'closed' are convenient ones, and for many they are useful in their descriptiveness, so we shall use them henceforth.

23. Here is a new word containing the open  $\underline{E}$  sound, the word for 'seven.'

sete ( )x ( )x ( )x

24. The word may also be pronounced another way, with a  $\underline{ch}$  sound preceding the final  $\underline{i}$  sound.

sete ( )x ( )x ( )x

<sup>\*</sup>The capital  $\underline{E}$  will regularly be used in this text to symbolize this sound.

25.	Either way is correct. The $\underline{t}$ sound and the $\underline{ch}$ sound
	alternate with each other before an $\underline{\mathbf{i}}$ sound, the choice
	depending on the dialect of the native speaker.
	a. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	b. ( ) ( )x ( )x
26.	Recall that the pronoun 'she' has the open $\underline{E}$ .
	ela ( )x ( )x
27.	Listen to how 'she' contrasts with 'he.'
	(ela)x $(ele)x$ $(ela)x$ $(ele)x$
28.	The final vowels of the two words are different, and so
	are the initial vowels. The initial vowel of 'she' is
	the open $\underline{E}$ ; the initial vowel of 'he' is the closed $\underline{e}$ .
	(ela)x (ele)x (ela)x (ele)x
29.	If we pluralize $\underline{\text{ela}}$ and $\underline{\text{ele}}$ , we have $\underline{\text{elas}}$ and $\underline{\text{eles}}$ , which
	are the words for 'they.' There is an open $\underline{E}$ in $\underline{elas}$ , and
	a closed <u>e</u> in <u>eles</u> .
	elas ( )x ( )x
	eles ( )x ( )x
30.	The word $\underline{\text{elas}}$ refers to a group of females, the word $\underline{\text{eles}}$
	to a group of males.
	Ângelà e Lúcia: elas ( )x ( )x
	Marcos e Luís: eles ( )x ( )x

## Dialog

(Sandra has told Paulo that she and Maria are planning to visit the park tomorrow).

### Sandra

vamos go (we-form)

nos vamos sair we're going to leave

às sete at seven

a manhã the morning

as sete da manhã at seven in the morning

Nos vamos sair às sete da manhã. We're going to leave at seven

in the morning.

### Paulo

vocês you (plural)

pretendem plan (they-form)

chegar arrive (neutral form)

vocês pretendem chegar you plan to arrive

lá there

bem cedo real early

Vocês pretendem chegar lá Do you plan to get there

bem cedo? real early?

#### Sandra

isso that

mesmo exactly

Isso mesmo. That's right.

oito eight

meia half

As oito e meia, mais ou menos. At eight thirty, more or less.

#### Paulo

vão go (they-form)

evitar avoid (neutral form)

vão evitar you're going to avoid

o tráfego the traffic

todo all

todo o tráfego all the traffic

Vocês vão evitar todo o trafego. You're going to avoid all the

traffic.

#### Sandra

Vamos... We're going to... (Right!)

levantar get up (neutral form)

quer levantar you want to get up

você não quer levantar? don't you want to get up?

também also, too

Você não quer levantar cedo Don't you want to get up early

também? too?

#### A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

#### Practice Exercises

### Part I: The 'they-form'

There is one more shape of the verb that you must become familiar with. We call it the 'they-form'. It is the shape the verb takes when 'they' or 'you-plural' is the actor. The they-form would be used in the Portuguese equivalents of the following sentences:

They have five minutes left.

They don't know where to go from here.

The twins are sick.

You two are going with us.

The mechanics refuse to work.

All four cars ran off the road.

Opposites attract.

Did you (plural) work hard over the weekend?

# Practice 1: (Recorded)

Here is a group of ten they-forms. Listen to them while paying particular attention to their endings.

# Practice 2: (Recorded)

Now listen to the difference between the he-form and the they-form of the same verbs.

He-	form	<u>n</u>	They-	-form		<u>He-</u>	forr	<u>n</u>	They-	form
1.	(	)	(	)		6.	(	)	(	)
2.	(	)	(	)		7.	(	)	(	)
3.	(	)	(	)		8.	(	)	(	)
4.	(	)	(	)		9.	(	)	(	)
5.	(	)	(	)	1	.0.	(	)	(	)

The above they-forms all end with the same <u>unstressed</u> nasal diphthong -em.

# Practice 3: (Recorded)

Which of the following are he-forms and which are they-forms? Mark an x in the appropriate column. Answers are on last page.

1	He	They
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5•		

	не	They
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

# Practice 4: (Recorded)

Now practice saying several they-forms.

# Practice 5: (Recorded)

- a. Practice saying these noun and pronoun actors that might accompany they-forms.
  - o Paulo e a Yara
  - a Inês e a Ângela
  - o Marcos e o Luís
  - a Nilza e a Raquel

A Lúcia e você

os professores

as professoras

Vocês

Os senhores (plural of o senhor)

As senhoras (plural of a senhora)

Eles

Elas

- b. Now practice saying these noun and pronoun actors followed by they-forms.
  - O Paulo e a Yara querem. (want)
  - A Inês e a Ângela pretendem. (plan to)
  - O Marcos e o Luís podem. (can)
  - A Nilza e a Raquel vão. (are going)
  - O Paulo e a Yara não vão. (are not going)

Vocês vão?

Os senhores querem?

As senhoras não podem?

Eles pretendem?

Elas querem?

Os professores vão?

As professoras não querem?

	Practice	saying	the	followi	ng comb	oinations	of	they-form
plus	infinitiv	ze until	l vou	can sa	v them	easilv.		

They (masc.) want to eat. ( ) ( )x ( A. 1. ) x 2. They (masc.) want to leave. ( ) ( )x ( 3. They (masc.) want to get up. () () x ( ) x They (masc.) want to avoid the () ()x ( 4. ) x traffic. They (fem.) plan to eat. ( ) ( )x ( ) x В. 1. They (fem.) plan to leave. ( ) ( )x ( )x 2. They (fem.) plan to arrive. ( ) ( )x ( ) x 3. They (fem.) plan to avoid the ( ) ( )x ( ) x traffic. C. 1. Are you (pl.) planning to stay? ( ) ( )x ( 2. Are you (pl.) planning to leave? ( ) ( )x ( ) x Are you (pl.) planning to get up? ( ) ( )x ( ) x 3. Are you (pl.) planning to speak? ( ) ( )x ( ) x 1. You (pl.) can come. ( ) ( )x ( ) x D. 2. You (pl.) can get up. ( ) ( )x ( ) x ) x You (pl.) can leave. ( ) ( )x ( 3. 4. You (pl.) can eat. ( ) ( )x ( ) x

- E. 1. Paulo and Yara are planning to ( ) ( )x ( )x leave early.
  - 2. Paulo and Roberto are planning to ( ) ( )x ( )x arrive early.
  - 3. Paulo and Roberto are planning to ( ) ( )x ( )x come early.
  - 4. Yara and Maria are planning to get ( ) ( )x ( )x up early.

#### Practice 7: (Recorded)

How would you say the following in Portuguese? Check the tape for confirmation after you have made your response aloud.

- 1. Are you (plural) planning to stay?
- 2. Are you (plural) planning to leave?
- 3. Do you (plural) want to avoid the traffic?
- 4. Do you (plural) want to get up early?
- 5. They (masc.) want to stay.
- 6. They (masc.) want to eat.
- 7. They (fem.) want to visit the park also.
- 8. Paulo and Yara want to visit Washington too.
- 9. Yara and Maria can get up early.
- 10. Yara and Maria can arrive early.
- 11. Yara and Santos want to make a phone call.
- 12. Yara and Santos can avoid the traffic.

#### Part II. 'Going to' in Portuguese

In this section we expand upon another combination of verb plus neutral form. It is the equivalent of English 'going to' plus verb. ('He's going to retire.', 'She's going to faint.', etc.) In both English and Portuguese this construction is commonly used to talk about the future. Traditionally it is not labelled the future tense in either language, but it might well be called the 'substitute future' in both.

Here are several Portuguese examples you have had.

1. Nós <u>vamos</u> sair às sete.

(We are going to leave at seven.)

2. Vocês vão evitar todo o tráfego.

(You are going to avoid all the traffic.)

3. Você não vai comer?

(Aren't you going to eat?)

4. Agora vou dar um telefonema.

(I'm going to make a phone call now.)

#### Practice 8: We-forms and They-forms (Recorded)

Listen to the following short sentences, then repeat as indicated. Be sure you know what they mean.

- A. l. We're going to leave. ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 2. We're going to arrive. ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 3. We're going to stay. ( ) ( )x ( )x

	4.	We're going to speak.	(	)	(	) x (	) x
В.	1.	They're going to avoid the traffic.	(	)	(	) x (	) x
	2.	They're going to visit.	(	)	(	)x (	) x
	3.	They're going to get up.	(	)	(	) x (	) x
	4.	They're going to arrive.	(	)	(	)x (	) x
C.	1.	They (masc.) are going to visit	(	)	(	)x (	) x
	2.	the park.  They (fem.) are going to visit	,	)	(	\ v	١ ٠٠
	۷.	the park.	(	,	`	/ A (	<i>)</i> A
	3.	They (masc.) are going to avoid	(	)	(	) x (	) x
		all the traffic.					
	4.	They (fem.) are going to avoid	(	)	(	) x (	) x
		all the traffic.					
D.	1.	Are we going to make a phone call?	(	)	(	) x (	) x
	2.	Are we going to avoid the traffic?	(	)	(	) x (	) x
	3.	Are we going to get up late?	(	)	(	) x (	) x
	4.	Are we going to stay?	(	)	(	) x (	) x

# Practice 9: Comprehension exercises. (Recorded)

All of the following sentences on the tape say either 'We're going to do something,' or 'They're going to do something.'

Listen to the sentences, determine the meaning of each, and make

a check in the appropriate column in the chart below. Number 1 is done for you. The answers appear on the last page of this unit.

	We'	We're going to:				They're going to:					
	get up	<u>leave</u>	arrive	stay	get up	leave	arrive	stay			
1.		V									
2.											
3.											
4.											
5.											
6.											
7.											
8.											
9.											
10.											
11.											
12.											

#### Practice 10: (Recorded)

How would you say these thoughts in Portuguese? Check the tape for verification after you make your response.

- 1. We're going to leave.
- 2. We're going to leave tomorrow.
- 3. We're going to stay.
- 4. We're going to stay until ten.
- 5. They're going to visit the park too.

- 6. They're going to get up at eight thirty.
- 7. They're going to eat.
- 8. They're going to make a phone call.
- 9. We're going to avoid the traffic.
- 10. We're going to arrive there quite early.
- 11. We're going to arrive at seven.
- 12. They're going to arrive at eight-thirty.

In the preceding exercises you have practiced the we-form and the they-form. In the next several exercises you will practice the I-form and the he-form.

### Practice 11: (Recorded)

Α.	First,	recall	the	I-form	n in	these	excerpts	from	an
	earlie	c dialog	j. I	Listen	and	repeat	= <b>.</b>		

1.	vou	(	) x	(	) x

- 2. vou dar ( )x ( )x
- 3. Vou dar um telefonema. ( )x ( )x

B. Now, recall the he-form in these excerpts from an earlier dialog. Listen and repeat.

1.	vai	(	) x	(	) x

- 2. vai comer ( )x ( )x
- 3. Você não vai comer? ( )x ( )x

# Practice 12: (Recorded)

Listen to the following short sentences, then repeat as indicated. Be sure that you associate the corresponding English equivalent with each sentence.

Α.	1.	I am going to make a phone call.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	2.	I am going to leave early.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	3.	I am going to stay.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	4.	I am going to visit the park.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
в.	1.	He is going to talk.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	2.	He is going to eat.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	3.	He is going to get up.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	4.	He is going to visit the park.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
С.	1.	Yara is going to arrive tomorrow.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	2.	Yara is going to leave tomorrow.						) x
	3.	Yara is going to stay.		)				) x
	4.	Yara is going to make a phone call.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
D.	1.	Are you going to leave?	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	2.	Are you going to get up?	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	3.	Are you going to visit the park?	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
	4.	Are you going to make a phone call?	(	)	(	) x	(	) x

Ε.	1.	I am going to talk with Santos.	(	)	(	) x (	) x
	2.	I am going to leave with Yara.	(	)	(	)x (	) x
	3.	I am going to stay with you.	(	)	(	)x (	) x
	4.	I am going to avoid the traffic.	(	)	(	)x (	) x
F.	1.	Is Santos going to stay?	(	)	(	)x (	) x
	2.	Is Santos going to get up?	(	)	(	)x (	) x
	3.	Is Santos going to talk?	(	)	(	) x (	) x
	4.	Is Santos going to visit the park?	(	)	(	) x (	) x

# Practice 13: Comprehension exercise. (Recorded)

Listen to the following sentences, determine the meaning of each (either 'I' or 'he' is going to do something), then put a check mark in the appropriate column below. Verify at the end of this unit.

<u>I'</u> I	m going t	:		He's going to:				
get up	<u>leave</u>	<u>arrive</u>	stay	get up	<u>leave</u>	arrive	stay	

### Practice 14: (Recorded)

How would you say the following in Portuguese? Check the tape for verification after you make your response aloud. In this practice the voice on the tape omits the pronoun for 'I' but not for 'he' and 'you.'

- 1. I'm going to leave.
- 2. I'm going to leave now.
- 3. He's going to stay.
- 4. He's going to stay until 10.
- 5. He's going to arrive late.
- 6. I'm going to arrive early.
- 7. I'm going to make a phone call.
- 8. Paulo is going to avoid the traffic.
- 9. I'm going to speak with Yara, too.
- 10. Yara is going to speak with me.
- 11. You are going to speak with Paulo.
- 12. Are you going to speak with Paulo?
- 13. Maria is going to leave at 8:30 in the morning.
- 14. Maria is going to leave with Roberto.
- 15. Is Maria going to get up early?

#### Part III. 'Not' in Portuguese

The Portuguese word for 'not'  $(\underline{n\tilde{ao}})$  always comes immediately before verbs and verb combinations. Thus:

- É casada. (She's married)
   Não é casada. (She's not married)
- Posso. (I can)
   Não posso. (I can not)
- Eu pretendo ir. (I plan to go)
   Eu não pretendo ir. (I do not plan to go)

#### Practice 15: (Recorded)

Listen to these groups of sentences. In each case an affirmative utterance is followed by a negative one.

#### Practice 16: (Recorded)

1.

In this exercise <u>you</u> are to make the sentences negative. Listen first to the sentence in the affirmative, then during the silence on the tape, convert it orally to the negative by inserting 'não' in front of the verb. You will then hear your response confirmed.

7.

2.		8.	
		9.	
4.	-	10.	
5.		11.	
6.		12.	

#### Practice 17: (Recorded)

How would you say these short sentences in Portuguese? You should be able to do these rapidly. In this practice you should use the Portuguese pronouns. Check the tapes for confirmation.

1. He's not home.

- 9. She can't stay.
- She's not married.
- 10. She doesn't want to stay.
- She's not the oldest.
- 11. She doesn't plan to stay.
- 4. I'm not hungry.
- 12. She isn't going to stay.

5. I can't.

- 13. She isn't going to eat.
- 6. I can't leave.
- 14. He isn't going to arrive.
- 7. Paulo can't leave.
- 15. They aren't going to arrive.
- 8. Paulo can't get up.
- 16. They aren't going to talk.

#### Part IV: Answering questions in the negative

Listen to these groups of questions and answers as given by the instructors on the tape. In each case the second instructor will give a negative answer.

#### Practice 18: (Recorded)

In this group, Instructor A asks something about Instructor B, and Instructor B answers in the negative. Just listen.

#### Practice 19: (Recorded)

In this group, Instructor A will ask you something about yourself. Answer in the negative. Check the tape for confirmation.

## Practice 20: (Recorded)

In this group Instructor A will ask Instructor B something about somebody else, and Instructor B will answer in the negative. Just listen.

#### Practice 21: (Recorded)

Now Instructor A will ask you similar questions about somebody else. You should answer in the negative.

#### Comprehension (Recorded)

Listen to these sentences and write down the numbers of any that you do not understand. Your instructor will help you.

#### Translations

### I. Responding Affirmatively and Negatively

Follow along visually below as you listen to these questions and answers. Then see if you can participate in the exchanges just by looking at the English.

- 1. Are you going to get up early?
   Yes, I am.
- Are you going to get up at 7:00?No, I'm not.

- 3. Are you going to leave now?
  Yes, I am.
- Is Yara going to stay?
   Yes, she is.
- 5. Is Yara going to speak with José?
  Yes, she is.
- 6. Is Yara going to get up early?
  No, she's not.
- 7. Are we going to eat well?
  Yes, we are.
- 8. Are we going to avoid the traffic?
  No, we're not.
- 9. Are we going to arrive early?
  Yes, we are.
- 10. Are they going to visit the park?
  Yes, they are.
- 11. Are they going to talk with you?
   Yes, they are.
- 12. Are they going to stay?
   No, they are not.
- 13. Do they plan to stay?
  Yes, they do.

- 14. Do they plan to visit the park?
  No, they don't.
- 15. Do they want to leave?
  No, they don't.
- 16. Do they want to eat now? Yes, they do.
- 17. Are they able to get up early?
   No, they're not.
- 18. But do they want to get up early? Yes, they do.
- 19. Can they avoid the traffic? Yes, they can.
- 20. Do they want to? Yes, they do.
- II. Here are some more of the same sort, but expanded a bit. The same instructions apply. See if you can do these with another student.
  - 1. A. Are you planning to leave early?
    - B. No, I'm not. I'm planning to leave at 10:00.
  - 2. A. Are you going to leave now?
    - B. No, I'm not. I'm going to stay until 05:00.
  - 3. A. Is Yara going to get up early?
    - B. No, she's not. She's going to get up at 10:00.
  - 4. A. Do you want to visit the park?
    - B. No, I don't. I want to stay here.
  - 5. A. Do you want to speak with Paulo?
    - B. Yes, I do. And I want to speak with Yara, too.
  - 6. A. Do you want to speak with Yara?
    - B. Yes, I do. Does Yara want to speak with me?
  - 7. A. Is José going to leave with you?
    - B. No, he's not. He's going to leave with Yara.
  - 8. A. Is José going to avoid the traffic?
    - B. Yes, he is. He's planning to leave early.

- 9. A. Can José get up early?
  - B. No, he can't. He's going to arrive late.
- 10. A. Does José want to make a phone call?
  - B. Yes, he does. He wants to talk with Yara.
- 11. A. Are we going to eat now?
  - B. No, we're not. We're going to eat later.
  - A. But I'm hungry now.
- 12. A. Are we going to eat now?
  - B. Yes, we are. Why?
  - A. Because I'm hungry.
- 13. A. Are we going to get up at 05:30?
  - B. No, we're not. Why?
  - A. Because I'm not able to get up at 05:30.
- 14. A. Can we leave now?
  - B. No, we can't. We're going to eat now.
  - A. I don't want to eat. I'm not hungry.

#### ANSWERS:

Practice 3: 1. He

6. He

2. They

7. They

3. They

8. They

4. They

9. He

5. He

- 10. They
- Practice 9: 1. We're going to leave.
  - 2. We're going to get up.
  - 3. They're going to get up.
  - 4. They're going to leave.
  - 5. We're going to stay.

- 6. They're going to arrive.
- 7. We're going to get up.
- 8. They're going to stay.
- 9. They're going to leave.
- 10. We're going to arrive.
- 11. They're going to get up.
- 12. They're going to arrive.

## Practice 13: 1. I'm going to stay.

- 2. I'm going to arrive.
- 3. He's going to get up.
- 4. I'm going to get up.
- 5. He's going to leave.
- 6. He's going to stay.
- 7. I'm going to leave.
- 8. He's going to get up.
- 9. He's going to arrive.
- 10. I'm going to stay.
- 11. I'm going to arrive.
- 12. I'm going to get up.

Unit 9

_										
P	r	$\sim$	$\alpha$	r	а	m	m	٦	n	g
	_	v	4	_	u		111	_		~1

			Pr	onur	nciat	ion				
1.	Review th	nese wo	rds.							
		noite	(	) x	(	) x				
		sete	(	) x	(	) x				
2.	We have s	suggest	ed th	at y	you p	ronounc	e these	words	s wi	th a
	ch-type s	sound.								
		noite	(	) x	(	) x				
		sete	(	) x	(	) x				
3.	However,	you wi	ll he	ar n	many	Portugu	ese spe	akers	say	these
	words wit	th a <u>t</u>	sound	•						
		noite	(	) x	(	) x				
		sete	(	) x	(	) x				
4.	Here are	some a	dditi	ona:	l woı	ds that	can be	said	wit	h a <u>ch</u>
	or a $\underline{t}$ .	On the	tape	we	are	using t	he <u>ch</u> .	Do no	ot be	е
	concerned	d about	the	mea	ning	of thes	se words	. Ju	st f	ollow
	along and	d mimic	•							
	gaste	<b>e</b> (	) x	(	) x	dent	:е (	) x	(	) x
	goste	e (	) x	(	) x	sent	:е (	) x	(	) x
	bate	(	) x	(	) x	vint	:e (	) x	(	) x
	bote	(	) x	(	) x	ante	es (	) x	(	) x
	sorte	e (	) x	(	) x					
	forte	e (	) x	(	) x					

5.	Here is an examp	ole f	rom	the	upcor	ning	dial	og,	the	word	for
	'this.'										
	este	(	) :	х (	) x						
6.	Here is another	exam	ple	from	the	dial	log,	the	ехрі	essio	on
	'likewise.'										
	igualmente	(	) :	к (	) x						
7.	Now review the f	ollo	wing	g wor	ds.						
	dia	(	) :	ж (	) x						
	tarde	(	) :	k (	) x						
	onde	(	) 2	κ (	) x						
	pode	(	) 2	k (	) x						
	pretende	(	) 2	k (	) x						
8.	The above words	are	com	nonly	said	d wit	ha.	<u>j</u> -tչ	ne s	sound	
	the $j$ of 'jeep'	or t	he g	dg of	'fud	dge.'	ı				
	dia	(	) 2	K							
	tarde	(	) 2	K							
	onde	(	) :	ĸ							
	pode	(	) 2	K							
	pretende	(	) 2	ĸ							
9.	You will often h	ear	the	abov	e woı	rds s	said	with	n a g	<u>l</u> -type	)
	sound.										
	dia	(	) :	K							
	tarde	(	2 (	ĸ							
	onde	(	) :	x							
	pode	(	) :	ĸ							
	nretende	(	٠ ) ٠	×							

10.	Here are some additional words that can be said with
	either a $\underline{j}$ sound or a $\underline{d}$ sound. On the tape we are using
	the <u>j</u> sound.
	grande ( )x diga ( )x
	mande () $x$ diurno () $x$
	vende ( )x diálogo ( )x
	rende ( )x disso ( )x
	balde ( )x
	pede ( )x
11.	Here is an example from the dialog of this unit, the word
	'city.'
	cidade ( )x ( )x
12.	The word $\underline{de}$ , meaning 'from' or 'of,' also has the $\underline{j}$ -type
	sound, but normally only when it is part of a longer phrase
	You will hear it in the dialog in the question <a>De onde</a> ?,
	meaning 'From where?'.
	De onde? ( )x ( )x
13.	You will also hear it in the response <u>Sou de</u> , meaning
	'I am from'
	Sou de ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$

### DIALOG

Sandra

o amigo

the friend

meu

my

o meu amigo

my friend

este

this

Yara, este é o meu amigo

Yara, this is my friend

Bill.

<u>Bill</u>.

<u>Bill</u>

o prazer

the pleasure much pleasure

muito prazer

Glad to meet you.

Muito prazer.

Yara

igualmente

equally, likewise

americano

American

Igualmente. O senhor é americano?

Likewise. Are you an American?

Bill

sou

I am (I-form of 'being')

Sou, sim.

Yes, I am.

<u>Yara</u>

de

of, from

de onde

from where

De onde o senhor é?

Where are you from?

Bill

sou de I am from

Sou de Nova Iorque. <u>I am from New York</u>.

Yara

da from the

a cidade the city

Da cidade? From the city?

Bill

do from the

o estado the state

Não, do estado. No, from the state.

#### A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

#### Practice Exercises

### Classification of Nouns: Gender

All Portuguese nouns can be grouped into two categories. Traditionally these two categories have been labeled 'masculine' and 'feminine', and all nouns are said to have either 'masculine' gender or 'feminine' gender. We will use this traditional terminology, but we must quickly point out that other labels such as 'x' and 'y' or 'black' and 'white' might do just as well, since in the case of most nouns masculinity and femininity have nothing whatsoever to do with their classification. Such items as 'house', 'wheel', 'ear', 'motivation' and 'fame' are all classifiable together as feminine nouns, even though femininity, as we normally think of the term, is not a characteristic of any of them. Similarly, 'program', 'eye', 'car', 'shoe' and 'book' fall together in the 'masculine' category, although there is really nothing masculine about any of them.

In the case of nouns referring to people (and many animals) the classifications generally <u>do</u> correspond to the sex of the person (or animal) referred to. This is certainly reassuring, because it would seem strange indeed to us if 'brother', 'uncle', 'nephew' and 'bull' were not masculine, if 'sister', 'aunt', 'niece' and 'cow' were not feminine, and if 'student', 'teacher' and 'cat' could not be either one.

It is wise to keep in mind, nevertheless, that it is not the item or the person that is classified as masculine or feminine; it is the noun itself. Native speakers know what classification a noun falls in They don't struggle over the decision. Of course they have the advant age of having grown up with the language, so that for them gender selection is pretty much automatic. We English speakers must make a deliberate and conscious effort to sort out the nouns according to their gender.

Fortunately, it is often not nearly so difficult as it may seem to identify a noun as being masculine or feminine. The exercises that follow will show you some of the things to look for.

E	ractice	1	: (	Recorded)	

Listen to the following group of familiar nouns. They are all feminine.

1.	(	)	(	)	5.	(	)	(	)
2.	(	)	(	)	6.	(	)	(	)
3.	(	)	(	)	7.	(	)	(	)
4.	(	)	(	)	8,	(	)	(	)

Notice that all of these nouns end in an unstressed a sound.

# Practice 2: (Recorded)

Here are the same feminine nouns again. This time you should repeat them aloud.

It is helpful to know that  $\underline{most}$  nouns that end in an unstressed  $\underline{a}$  sound are  $\underline{feminine}$ .

# Practice 3: (Recorded)

Now listen to the following group of familiar nouns. All of these are masculine.

1.	(	)	(	)	5•	(	)	(	)
2.	(	)	(	)	6.	(	)	(	)
3.	(	)	(	)	7.	(	)	(	)
4.	(	)	(	)					

You have probably noticed that all of these nouns end in an unstressed  $\underline{\mathbf{u}}$  sound.

## Practice 4: (Recorded)

Here are the same masculine nouns again. This time you should repeat them aloud.

1.	(	)x	(	)x	5.	(	)x	(	$)\mathbf{x}$
2.	(	$)\mathbf{x}$	(	)x	6.	(	$)\mathbf{x}$	(	)x
3.	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>	7.	(	)x	(	)x
4.	(	)×	(	)x					

It is helpful to know that  $\underline{most}$  nouns that end in an unstressed  $\underline{u}$  sound are  $\underline{masculine}$ .

## Observation

Probably 80% of all nouns in Portuguese end either with an unstressed  $\underline{a}$  sound or an unstressed  $\underline{u}$  sound. Since most of those that end in an unstressed  $\underline{a}$  sound are feminine, and most of those that end in an unstressed  $\underline{u}$  sound are masculine, it will pay you to be extra alert to the presence of these two sounds at the ends of nouns.

You may notice that with some speakers the unstressed  $\underline{u}$  at times seems to be a bit more like an unstressed  $\underline{o}$ . Just accept this as one more of the many variations to be found in Portuguese.

# Practice 5: (Recorded)

Listen to the following group of nouns. Some of them you have heard before, and some are new to you. Indicate which are feminine and which are masculine by making a check in the appropriate column in the chart below. The answers are at the end of this unit.

	Mascul	ine	Femin	ine
1.	(	)	(	)
2.	(	)	(	)
3.	(	)	(	)
4.	(	)	(	)
5.	(	)	(	)
6.	(	)	(	)
7.	(	)	(	)
8.	(	)	(	)
9.	(	)	(	)
10.	(	)	(	)
11.	(	)	(	)
12.	(	)	(	)
13.	(	)	(	)
14.	(	)	(	)
15.	(	)	(	)
<b>1</b> 6.	(	)	(	)
17.	(	)	(	)
18.	(	)	(	)
19.	(	)	(	)
20.	(	)	(	)
21.	(	)	(	)
22.	(	)	(	)
23.	(	)	(	)
24.	(	)	(	)
25.	(	)	(	)
26.	(	)	(	)

#### Observation

The gender of the noun determines how we will say 'the (+ noun)'. That is, there is one way to say 'the' if the noun is masculine, another if the noun is feminine. We refer to this as gender agreement. The word for 'the' agrees in gender with the noun that it accompanies.

### Practice 6: (Recorded)

The following items on the tape all say 'the (something <u>feminine</u>)' Listen and repeat.

- 1. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 2. () ()x ()x
- 3. () ()x ()x
- 4. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 5. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 6. () ()x ()x
- 7. ( ) ( )x ( )x

# Practice 7: (Recorded)

The following items all say 'the (something  $\underline{\text{masculine}}$ )'. Listen and repeat. Several of the items are new to you.

- 1. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 2. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 3. () ()x ()x
- 4. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 5. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 6. () ()x ()x
- 7. () ()x ()x

# $\underline{\mathsf{Practice}\ 8} \colon \ (\mathtt{Recorded})$

You will hear a series of nouns on the tape. After each one decide quickly if it is masculine or feminine; then say, in Portuguese, 'the (noun)'. Be sure the gender of 'the' agrees with the noun. Your response will be confirmed.

**(1-**22)

### Practice 9: (Recorded)

Learn to say these items in Portuguese. Do them in order.

- 1. the car
- 2. He wants the car.
- 3. the house
- 4. He wants the house too.
- 5. He wants the car and the house.
- 6. the table
- 7. He wants the table too.
- 8. When is the party?
- 9. The party is tomorrow.
- 10. Where is the food?
- 11. The food is on the table.
- 12. We're going to avoid the traffic.
- 13. Do you know the girl?
- 14. Do you know the American?
- 15. Do you know Yara?\*
- 16. Do you know Paulo?\*
- 17. Yara\* wants to talk with me.
- 18. Paul\* wants to talk with me.
- 19. Santos\* is in New York.

#### Observation

English 'the' and its Portuguese counterparts are traditionally referred to as the <u>definite</u> <u>articles</u>. English 'a' or 'an' and their Portuguese equivalents are called the <u>indefinite</u> <u>articles</u>. This is useful terminology.

Just as the gender of a noun determines how we say the definite article, so does it determine how we say the indefinite article. That is, the indefinite article is said one way if the noun is masculine, and another way if the noun is feminine. This is another manifestation of <u>gender agreement</u>. Observe this in the following practices.

<sup>\*</sup>Portuguese frequently uses the word 'the' in front of names.

# Practice 10: (Recorded)

The following items on the tape all say 'a/an (something feminine)'. Listen and repeat.

- 1. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 2. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 3. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 4. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 5. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 6. ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 7. ( ) ( )x ( )x

## Practice 11: (Recorded)

The following items on the tape all say 'a/an (something masculine)'. Just listen this time. Do not repeat yet.

- 1. ( ) ( )
- 2. ( ) ( )
- 3. ( ) ( )
- 4. ( ) ( )
- 5. ( ) ( )
- 6. ( ) ( )

#### Observation

The masculine definite article 'the' and the masculine indefinite article 'a/an' sound somewhat similar. The difference is a matter of nasalization. 'A/an' is nasalized and 'the' is not nasalized. Listen to the difference in the next practice exercise.

### Practice 12: (Recorded)

Listen to these pairs. In each case the first member of the pair is the indefinite article ('a/an') plus a masculine noun and the second member of the pair is the definite article ('the') plus the same masculine noun.

1.	(a/an)	(the)
2.	(a/an)	(the)
3.	(a/an)	(the)
4.	(a/an)	(the)
5.	(a/an)	(the)
6.	(a/an)	(the)
7.	(a/an)	(the)

# Practice 13: (Recorded)

Listen carefully to these masculine nouns. Some of them you have not heard before. Decide in each case whether you hear the indefinite article ('a/an') or the definite article ('the') before the noun. Indicate which one you hear by making a mark in the appropriate column below. You can check your answers at the end of this unit. Remember, all of these nouns are masculine.

	<u>a/an</u>	the
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5•	-1	
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
11.		
<b>1</b> 2.	-	

# Practice 14: (Recorded)

Now repeat these masculine nouns. Numbers 1-6 say 'a/an' plus a noun, and numbers 7-12 say 'the' plus a noun.

1-6 'a/an' something masculine ( )x ( )x 7-12 'the' something masculine ( )x ( )x

### Practice 15: (Recorded)

This practice deals only with the indefinite articles, but it involves <u>both</u> genders, masculine and feminine. Practice these words and phrases until you can say them with relatively little effort.

- 1. a room
- 2. a friend
- 3. a daughter
- 4. a house
- 5. He wants a house.
- 6. a car
- 7. He wants a car.
- 8. He wants a car and a house.
- 9. a table
- 10. He wants a table too.
- 11. New York is a state.
- 12. New York is a city too.
- 13. a phone call
- 14. He's going to make a phone call.

#### Observation

Many nouns do not end in an unstressed  $\underline{u}$  sound or an unstressed  $\underline{a}$  sound. In these instances it is often possible to know the gender via other clues; at other times there is no pattern to guide you and you must find out what the gender is and simply memorize it. In  $\underline{all}$  cases it is highly desirable to train yourself to memorize the gender of a noun when you first begin to use it.

# Comprehension

Listen to these items on the tape and tell your instructor the number of any that you cannot understand.

#### Translations

- A. Follow along with these questions and answers as they are given on the tape. Then be sure that you can do them <u>live</u> with your instructor or a fellow student.
  - Where are you from?
     I'm from Minnesota.
  - Where is Paul from? He's from Minnesota also.
  - 3. Where is Alice from? She's from Utah.
  - 4. And Kathy, where is she from? She's from Maryland.
  - 5. And Bill, where is he from? He's from Vermont.
  - Are you from New York? Yes, I am.
  - 7. Is Bill from New York? Yes, he is.
  - 8. Is Frank from New York too? No, he's not.
  - 9. Is she from Boston?
    No, she's not. She's from Detroit.

- B. How would you say the following thoughts in Portuguese? Take them in order. Do not translate items in parentheses.
  - 1. I am (an) American.
  - 2. I am from New York.
  - 3. I am not from the city; I'm from the state.
  - 4. This is my friend, Bill.
  - 5. Bill is (an) American too.
  - 6. But he's not from New York.
  - 7. He's from Washington.
  - 8. He's not from the state; he's from the city.
  - 9. And you? Where are you from?
  - 10. I'm from \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 11. Oh, really? Mr. Jones is from there too.
  - 12. But Mr. Jones' daughter isn't from there.
  - 13. Which one? Linda?
  - 14. No, the other daughter. The oldest one. Betty.
  - 15. Where is she from?
  - 16. She's from Boston.
- C. Be prepared to engage in these dialogs with your instructor.
  - 1. A. Do you know Bill White?
    - B. The American? Yes, I know him.
    - A. Where is he from?
    - B. He's from New York. From the city!
    - A. Oh, really?! I know the city well.

- 2. A. Do you know Fred Marks?
  - B. Sure, he's my friend.
  - A. Is he an American?
  - B. Yes, he is. He's from Pittsburgh.
  - A. From where?
  - B. From Pittsburgh. A city in Pennsylvania.
- 3. A. I'm hungry. Let's go eat! (Vamos comer!)
  - B. So am I! (I, too). Do you want to leave now?
  - A. Sure!.....this is my car.
  - B. Let's go!

### Answers:

Practice 5.

1.	F	14.	F
2.	F	<b>1</b> 5.	M
3.	F	<b>1</b> 6.	F
4.	M	17.	F
5•	M	18.	M
6.	M	19.	F
7.	F	20.	F
8.	M	21.	F
9.	M	22.	M
10.	F	23.	M
11.	F	24.	M
12.	M	25.	F
13.	M	26.	F
Practice 13	•		
1.	a/an	7.	the
2.	a/an	8.	a/an
3.	the	9.	a/an
4.	the	10.	the
5.	the	11.	the
6.	a/an	12.	a/an

Unit 10

In this unit you will find a number of frames that require an oral response on your part. You might be asked, for example, 'How do you say ....?' You should give your answer aloud. Check the left hand margin and you will find there, in parentheses, a written verification of your response, of what it was that we intended you to say. You should then further verify, and strengthen, the correct response by listening to it as it is said by the voice on the tape, and by repeating it aloud as indicated.

#### Programming

Part	I.	The	Contractions	na	and	no.

1.	Recall	the	word	for	'room.	•	
			sala	(	( )x	(	) x

Recall also how you would say 'the room.'

Now notice how you say 'in the room.'

4. The word  $\underline{na}$  is a combination of the word  $\underline{em}$  (meaning 'in' and 'on') and the word  $\underline{a}$  (the definite article 'the'). That is,  $\underline{em} + \underline{a} = \underline{na}$ .

5. The word $\underline{na}$ is a contraction, an obligatory one, one that	
you must make every time $\underline{em}$ and $\underline{a}$ come together.	
na ()x ()x	
na sala ( )x ( )x	
6. Here is the phrase 'in the city.' Here again $\underline{em}$ and $\underline{a}$ come	:
together and contract to <u>na</u> .	
na cidade ( )x ( )x	
7. You should now be able to say 'in the house.' How would yo	·u
say it?	
(na casa)	
Verify and repeat: $()x$ $()x$	
8. How would you say 'in (at) the party'?	
(na festa)	
Verify and repeat: $()x$	
9. Here is a new word, the word for 'avenue.'	
avenida ( )x ( )x	
10. The word is feminine, so here is the way to say 'the	
avenue.'	
a avenida ( )x ( )x	
11. How would you say 'on the avenue'?	
(na avenida)	
Verify: ( )x ( )x	

12.	$\underline{\mathtt{Em}}$ + $\underline{\mathtt{a}}$ always contract to $\underline{\mathtt{na}}$ . Similarly, $\underline{\mathtt{em}}$ + the definite
	article $\underline{o}$ always contracts to $\underline{no}$ .
	no ( )x ( )x
13.	Here, for example, is 'in the park.'
	no parque ( )x ( )x
14.	Here is 'in the traffic.'
	no tráfego ( )x ( )x
15.	And here is 'in the state.'
	no estado ( )x ( )x
16.	Here is a new word, the word for 'center' or 'downtown.'
	centro ( )x ( )x
17.	How would you say 'in the downtown'?
(no	centro)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
18.	Portuguese speakers, when referring to Brazil, say 'the
	Brazil,' much as we say 'the United States.' Here is 'the
	Brazil.'
	o Brasil ( )x ( )x
19.	So how would you say 'in (the) Brazil'?
(no	Brasil)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x

20.	Similarly, when speaking of the city of Rio de Janeiro, a
	Portuguese speaker says 'the Rio.'
	o Rio ( )x ( )x
21.	How would you say 'in (the) Rio'?
(no F	Rio)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
22.	How would you say 'in the car'?
(no c	carro)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
23.	How about 'in the afternoon'? It's feminine.
(na t	tarde)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
24.	In an item like 'I'm at home,' there is no possibility of
	a contraction since the article 'the' is not present to
	contract with anything.
	estou <u>em</u> casa ( )x ( )x
25.	However, if you want to say 'I'm in the home of,' the
	article 'the' is present and must be contracted.
	estou <u>na</u> casa de ( )x ( )x

Part	II. Descriptive Adjectives
1.	Observe this phrase.
	casa linda ( )x ( )x
2.	The phrase says 'pretty house.' The word order is 'house
	pretty,' just the reverse of the normal English order.
	casa linda ( )x ( )x
3.	Generally, Portuguese descriptive adjectives, such as <a href="mailto:linda">linda</a> ,
	come after a noun.
	casa linda ( )x ( )x
4.	Here is 'pretty evening.'
	noite linda ( )x ( )x
5.	And here is 'pretty afternoon.'
	tarde linda ( )x ( )x
6.	If we wish to say 'pretty car' we have to change the ending
	of <u>linda</u> and say <u>lindo</u> , since <u>carro</u> is a masculine noun.
	This is a manifestation of gender agreement.
	carro lindo ( )x ( )x
7.	How would you say 'pretty park'?
(parc	que lindo)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
8.	How would you say 'pretty state'?
(esta	ado lindo)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x

9.	How about 'pretty city'?
(cida	ade linda)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
10.	Here is 'American city.'
	cidade americana ( )x ( )x
11.	How would you say 'American car'?
(carr	co americano)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
12.	How would you say 'American friend' if the friend is a male?
(amig	go americano)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
13.	And if the friend is female?
(amig	ga americana)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
14.	Here is the word 'consulate,' a new item in the dialog of
	this unit.
	consulado ( )x ( )x
15.	How would you say 'American Consulate'?
(Cons	sulado Americano)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
16.	And here is the word 'embassy,' also a new item in the dialog
	of this unit.
	embaixada ( )x ( )x
17.	So how would you say 'American Embassy'?
(Emba	aixada Americana)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x

10.6

18.	Here	is 'm	arri	.ed	daughter.'					
	fil	ha ca	sada	l	( )x (	) x				
19.	How wo	ould	you	say	'single d	aughte	r'	?		
(filha solteira)										
					Verif	у:	(	) x	(	) x
20.	How we	ould	you	say	'married	son'?				
(filho	casad	0)								
					Verif	у:	(	) x	(	) x

#### DIALOG

Yara

desde quando

o Brasil no Brasil since when

Brazil

in Brazil

Desde quando o senhor está

no Brasil?\*

Bill

estou aqui

a semana

I am

How long have you been in Brazil?

here the week

work (he-form)

work (I-form)

in Rio

Rio (de Janeiro)

há uma semana

for a week

Estou aqui há uma semana.

I have been here (I am here) for a week.

Yara

trabalha

o Rio no Rio

O senhor trabalha aqui no Rio? Do you work here in Rio?

Bill

trabalho o consulado

no consulado

Trabalho, sim. No Consulado Americano.

the consulate in the consulate

Yes, I do. In the American Consulate.

Yara

Onde é o Consulado?

Where is the Consulate?

<sup>\*</sup> Literally, 'Since when are you in Brazil?'

#### Bill

o centro

the center, downtown

no centro

in the center of town,

downtown

a avenida

the avenue

na avenida

on the avenue

Presidente Wilson

President Wilson

<u>E</u> <u>no</u> <u>centro</u>, <u>na</u> <u>avenida</u>

It's downtown, on President

Presidente Wilson.

Wilson Avenue.

Yara

embaixada

embassy

que

that

fica

is, stays (he-form)

Mas, não é a Embaixada que fica na avenida Presidente

But, isn't it the Embassy that

Wilson?

is on President Wilson Avenue?

Bill

Não, a Embaixada é em

No, the Embassy is in Brasilia.

Brasília.

#### A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

#### Practice Exercises

#### Part I. Contractions

#### Practice 1: (Recorded)

In this exercise you will hear a group of feminine nouns. In the pause after each noun you are to say <u>na</u> plus the noun. Thus if you hear <u>sala</u> you will respond with <u>na</u> <u>sala</u>, 'in the room'. You will hear your response confirmed.

### Practice 2. (Recorded)

In this exercise you will work with a group of masculine nouns. Respond to each with  $\underline{no}$  plus the noun. Confirm your response.

# Practice 3: (Recorded)

In this exercise the masculine and feminine nouns appear in mixed order. Respond with no or na plus the noun.

### Part II. 'Being'

#### Observation

By this time it is becoming more and more obvious to you that Portuguese is not a mirror image of English. The language handles a number of things much differently from the way we handle them in our own language. You can recall several instances where the Portuguese grammatical construction is not a direct 'reflection' of the English counterpart. For example, Portuguese often has endings on verb forms whose English equivalents have none. Also, you have learned that Portuguese groups its nouns into two categories, masculine and feminine. English, of course, has no such categorization for gender.

Frequently Portuguese does not record the events of the every-day world from the same point of view as English. For example, Portuguese has two ways of expressing the concept of 'being'. That is, Portuguese has two ways of saying 'I am', 'he is', 'she was', 'they were', etc. Portuguese does this by using two different verbs. In their neutral forms these verbs are:

#### ser and estar

They both translate into English as 'to be'.

The choice of <u>ser</u> or <u>estar</u> is very carefully dictated by circumstances. There are certain situations which require a form of <u>ser</u>, and there are others that require a form of <u>estar</u>. It is a rare situation which will allow either one indiscriminately.

You have already learned to use some of the forms of these two verbs, probably without knowing quite 'why'. In this and subsequent units we will explain some of the 'whys'.

The two forms of  $\underline{\text{ser}}$  that you know so far are  $\underline{\text{sou}}$  and  $\underline{\text{\'e}}$ . The two forms of  $\underline{\text{estar}}$  that you know are estou and  $\underline{\text{est\'a}}$ .

Recall the following examples:

er	estar	•

The above examples serve to illustrate several points:

 If you want to say or ask where somebody or something is <u>from</u>, use the proper form of <u>ser</u>.

Sou de Nova Iorque. (I am <u>from New York.)</u>
Ela <u>é</u> de Washington. (She is <u>from Washington.)</u>
De onde o senhor <u>é</u>? (Where are you <u>from</u>?)
O carro <u>é</u> do Brasil. (The car is <u>from Brazil.</u>)

2. If you want to say or ask where somebody or something <u>is</u> (i.e. its location, not its origin) then you will have to choose between <u>ser</u> and <u>estar</u>. If the item you are talking about is by its very nature permanently fixed in its location, you will use a form of <u>ser</u>. If the item (or person) you are talking about can be moved from its location, that is if it's not permanently fixed, you will use a form of <u>estar</u>.

## Examples with ser:

Onde é o Consulado?

É no centro.

(The Consulate building is immovable; it is fixed in its location.)

O Rio é no Brasil.

(Likewise, Rio cannot be removed from Brazil.)

#### Examples with estar:

Onde está o Santos?

Está em casa.

Estou aqui no Brasil.

(People are always movable; they are never fixed in their location, at least not in the sense that a building or a city is.)

A mesa está na sala.

O carro está no centro.

(Tables and cars are examples of things which are not normally fixed geographically.)

### Practice 4. (Recorded)

Listen to this exercise. Instructor A will ask Instructor B where he is, and the latter will respond with a variety of answers. Since Instructor B is movable, the forms <u>está</u> and <u>estou</u> (from <u>estar</u>) are used in these interchanges. These are recorded with <u>você</u>.

#### Practice 5: (Recorded)

This time Instructor A will ask you where <u>you</u> are. You are to reply using the cues suggested in brackets below. Start each answer with the form estou. You will hear your response confirmed.

1.	(?)	[in the living room]
2.	(?)	[in the Embassy]
3.	(?)	[in (the) downtown]
4.	(?)	[in (the) Brazil]
5•	(?)	[at the party]
6.	(?)	[in the park]
7.	(?)	[on (the) President Wilson Ave.]
8.	(?)	[in the city]
9.	(?)	[here]

### Practice 6: (Recorded)

In this exercise one instructor will ask the other where somebody or something is, and the latter will reply with a variety of answers. In each case the person or thing talked about is movable, so está is used. Just listen.

# Practice 7: (Recorded)

Now you will hear a similar set of questions and <u>you</u> are to provide the answers during the pause following each one. Use the locations suggested in the brackets.

1.	(?)	[in the park]
2.	(?)	[in the Embassy]
3.	(?)	[in the living room]
4.	(?)	[in the city]
5•	(?)	[downtown]
6.	(?)	[here]
7.	(?)	[in Rio]
8.	(?)	[in the living room]
9.	(?)	[at the party]
10.	(?)	[in Brazil]
		_

(.....?) [on President Wilson Ave.]

### Practice 8:

If you were to ask the location or whereabouts of the following, which verb form- $-\underline{\acute{e}}$  or  $\underline{est\acute{a}}$ -would you use? Remember, movability is the key. Indicate your choice by writing either  $\underline{\acute{e}}$  or  $\underline{est\acute{a}}$  in the blanks. You can check your answers below, preferably  $\underline{after}$  you have done them all.

1.	Onde	[the American Embassy]?
2.	Onde	[New York]?
3.	Onde	[President Wilson Avenue]?
4.	Onde	[my friend]?
5.	Onde	[Paulo]?
6.	Onde	[the car]?
7.	Onde	[the park]?
8.	Onde	[the museum]?
9.	Onde	[my hat]?
10.	Onde	[my sister]?
11.	Onde	[your sister]?
12.	Onde	[your office]?
13.	Onde	[the cafeteria]?
14.	Onde	[Yara]?
15.	Onde	[São Paulo]?
<b>1</b> 6.	Onde	[the president]?

Answers: 1.é 2.é 3.é 4.está 5.está 6.está 7.é 8.é 9.está 10.está 11.está 12.é 13.é 14.está 15.é 16.está

### Practice 9: (Recorded)

Now, ask these questions in Portuguese. Check the tape for verification.

- 1. Where is Paul?
- 2. Where is the car?
- 3. Where is José?
- 4. Where is the Embassy?
- 5. Where is President Wilson Avenue?
- 6. Where is Maria?
- 7. Where is my friend?
- 8. Where is Brazil?
- 9. Where is the living room?
- 10. Where is the traffic?
- 11. Where is the food? [Refer to practice 10 below.]

# Practice 10: (Recorded)

You originally learned to say No. 11 above by inserting the phrase <u>é</u> <u>que</u> after the question word <u>onde</u>. That is, you learned '<u>Onde é que está a comida?</u>' (Where is it that is the food?). Listen now as your tape instructor goes through all of the questions in Practice 9 and inserts <u>é</u> <u>que</u> in each one of them. This means that in addition to hearing the sequence <u>Onde é que está?</u>, as in No. 11, you will also hear the sequence <u>Onde é que é</u>?, as in No. 4 where the obviously fixed location of the living room requires the use of the form <u>é</u>. These two sequences, <u>Onde é que está</u>? and <u>Onde é que é</u>? are two longer, and very common, ways of asking 'Where is?' Listen carefully.

# Practice 11: (Recorded)

Now <u>you</u> do the same thing. Go through the questions of Practice 9 above and insert <u>é</u> <u>que</u> in each. Check the tape for confirmation.

#### Practice 12:

Prepare the following brief dialogs so that you can participate in them with your instructor or a fellow student.

- 1. A. Where is Paul today?
  - B. He's at the American Embassy.
  - A. And where's the American Embassy?
  - B. Tt's in Brasilia.
- 2. A. Where is Maria from?
  - B. She's from Washington.
  - A. Where is she now?
  - B. She's at home.
- 3. A. My friend is from New York.
  - B. Does he work in Rio?
  - A. Yes, he does. Downtown. But he's not in Rio now.
  - B. Where is he?
  - A. He's in Washington.
- 4. A. Where's the car?
  - B. It's on President Wilson Avenue.
  - A. Is President Wilson Avenue downtown?
  - B. It is.

# Practice 13: (Recorded)

Here are some questions that can be answered either 'yes' or 'no'. Answer them in the affirmative, using the appropriate verb form followed by  $\underline{\sin}$ . Sample answers:

Está, sim.

É, sim.

Your response will be confirmed.

### Practice 14: (Recorded)

Here are the same questions. This time answer them in the negative. Sample answers:

Não, não está.

Não, não é.

Part III: More contractions

#### Observation:

You have seen how the word  $\underline{em}$  combines with the definite articles  $\underline{o}$  and  $\underline{a}$  to form the contractions  $\underline{no}$  and  $\underline{na}$ .

The word em may also combine with the indefinite articles to form contractions. These contractions are not obligatory, however. They are optional. Sometimes they are made and sometimes they are not.

You may recall that the indefinite articles look like this:
um for masculine items

uma for feminine items

When em combines with them, this is what happens:

em + um = num

em + uma = numa

For example, the phrase 'in a house' brings em and uma together. If the Portuguese speaker contracts them, the resulting phrase is:

numa casa 'in a house'

Likewise, the phrase 'in a car' brings em and um together.

If the Portuguese speaker contracts them, the resulting phrase is:

num carro 'in a car'

# Practice 15: (Recorded)

Here are some examples of the contractions  $\underline{\text{num}}$  and  $\underline{\text{numa}}$ . Repeat after your instructor as indicated.

1.	'in a house'	(	)	(	)x	(	$)\mathbf{x}$
2.	'in a city'	(	)	(	)x	(	$)\mathbf{x}$
3.	'in a car'	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
4.	'in a state'	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
5.	'at a party'	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
6.	'on an avenue'	(	)	(	$)\mathbf{x}$	(	$)\mathbf{x}$
7.	'in an embassy'	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
8.	'in a park'	(	)	(	)x	(	)x

#### Comprehension

Listen to these items on the tape and make a note of those that you do not understand.

## Translations

- I. Practice putting these exchanges into Portuguese. They are recorded.
  - How long have you been in Washington?
     I've been here for a week.
  - 2. How long have you been in Brazil? I've been here for five weeks.
  - How long have you been in Rio?
     I've been here for eight days.
  - 4. Do you work in the American Embassy? Yes, I do.
  - 5. Do you work downtown?
    Yes, I do. The Embassy is downtown.
  - Do you work with José?
     No, I don't. I work with Paulo.
  - 7. Does Yara work in Washington?
    Yes, she does. She works downtown.
  - 8. Does Bill work in Washington?
    No, he works in New York.
  - 9. I work in Washington. Where do you work? I work in Washington too.
  - 10. Paulo works in the Embassy. Where does Yara work? She works in the Embassy too.
  - 11. Are you going to work in Brazil?
     Of course. I'm going to work in the Embassy.
  - 12. Where are you going to work?
     I'm going to work in the Embassy too.
  - 13. I'm going to work in São Paulo.
    Really?! You're not going to work in the Embassy?

- 14. Are you going to work in Brasilia too?
   No, I'm not. I'm going to work in Rio.
- 15. We are going to work in Rio, in the Consulate General. Really?! (Ah, é?!) I'm going to work there too.
- 16. They aren't going to stay in Rio?!
   No, they're not.
- 17. They aren't going to work today.
  Why not?
  They don't want [to].
- 18. Where's the American Embassy? It's in Brasilia.
- 19. Where's Joe?
  He's at home.
- 20. Where's Paul?
  He's at a party. (numa)
- 21. Maria isn't here. Where is she? She's going to stay at home today.
- 22. Is Bill going to arrive tomorrow? Yes, he is. Very early.
- 23. When is Sandra going to arrive?
  She's going to arrive today.

- II. Practice saying these groups of sentences in Portuguese.
  - A. l. We're not going to leave now.
    - 2. We're going to leave later.
    - 3. We're going to leave at ten o'clock.
    - 4. We're going to avoid the traffic.
  - B. 1. We're not going to arrive at eight.
    - 2. We're going to arrive early.
    - 3. We're going to arrive at seven thirty.
  - C. 1. I want to stay here.
    - 2. I'm going to stay here until tomorrow.
    - 3. I'm going to leave tomorrow.
    - 4. And I'm going to leave early, at 7:30.
  - D. 1. Yara wants to visit the park.
    - 2. But she does not want to visit the park today.
    - 3. She can not visit the park today.
    - 4. But she can visit the park tomorrow.
    - 5. And she is going to visit the park tomorrow.
  - E. 1. I don't want to get up early.
    - 2. I don't want to get up at seven.
    - 3. I can't get up at seven!
    - 4. I want to get up at ten.
    - 5. And I'm going to get up at ten!
  - F. 1. I want to avoid the traffic, of course.
    - 2. But I don't want to get up at seven.
    - 3. I'm going to get up at ten.
    - 4. I'm going to leave at 10:30.
    - 5. And I'm going to avoid the traffic!
  - G. 1. They want to leave now.
    - 2. They don't want to leave later.
    - 3. They are going to leave now.

#### UNIT 11

#### Part I. Pronunciation

1. Repeat these familiar words.

sō	(	) x	(	) x
posso	(	) x	(	) x
pode	(	) x	(	) x
agora	(	) x	(	) x
senhora	(	) x	(	) x

- 2. All of the above words have a vowel sound in common, the vowel sound of the word <u>só</u>. Henceforth we will use traditional terminology and refer to this sound as the 'open <u>O</u>'. The capital letter <u>O</u> is our choice of a convenient symbol to represent this sound; it is not standard spelling. Recall our choice of capital <u>E</u> to represent another open vowel.
- 3. The other kind of o sound, the kind heard in hoje, você and moça, is traditionally referred to as a 'closed o.'

  We have already discussed the terms 'open' and 'closed' as they apply to the E and e sounds. The application to the O and o sounds is similar. The tongue is farther away from the roof of the mouth for the open O than it is for the closed o. That is, for the O there is a relatively larger space or 'opening' between the tongue and the roof of the mouth. For the o there is a relatively smaller opening; the space is more 'closed'. Thus the terms 'open' and 'closed' have their origins in the physical realities of speech. You may not be able to actually feel the difference between the open O and the closed o. Many people cannot. But you should be able

to hear the difference, and through careful mimicry and practice you should be able to maintain it in your own speech.

4.	Listen to	these	pairs	of c	ontra	astir	ng won	ds.	In	ı eac	h case,
	the first	word o	of the	pair	has	the	open	<u>o</u> ,	and	the	second
	word has	the clo	osed o	•							

1.	(	)	(	)
2.	(	)	(	)
3.	(	)	(	)
4.	(	)	(	)
5•	(	)	(	)

5. Here are the same pairs again. Repeat each word right after you hear it. Do this frame several times until you are reasonably sure you are making the correct distinction.

1.	(	$)\mathbf{x}$	(	)x
2.	(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	)x
3.	(	$)\mathbf{x}$	(	)x
4.	(	)x	(	)x
5.	(	$)\mathbf{x}$	(	) <b>x</b>

6. Now here are the new words from this unit that contain the open O. Listen and repeat.

1.	(	)	(	) <b>x</b>	(	) <b>x</b>	(	) <b>x</b>
2.	(	)	(	)x	(	)x	(	) x
3.	(	)	(	١x	(	) <b>x</b>	(	)x

4. This five-syllable word is built up gradually on the tape.

7. Recall these two words, paying particular attention to the underlined consonant sound, the familiar <u>gn</u> of 'cognac.'

a.	co <u>nh</u> eço	(	)x	(	$)\mathbf{x}$
b.	senhor	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>

Likewise, recall these two words, each of which contains

8.

		this	same	e sound	ī.								
			a.	tenho	(	) <b>x</b>	(	)x					
				minha									
					,	,	,	,					
	9.	Reca	11 t	he nasa	al di	<b>io</b> hth	ong ·	em i	n this	item.			
				,tem	(	)×	(	)×					
Part	II.	Plur	als										
	10.	<u>s</u> s	ound time a. b.	Listes as a casa carro	cen t showr (	o th  . ): ):	ese e	exampl	e made ples, and ) ( ( )	l repear	at th	e las )x )x	st c
(fest		How	wou	ld you	say	the	plura	al of	'party	' in Po	ortug	uese?	<b>?</b>
•	•		Ve	rify:	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>					
(cida			wou	ld you	say	'cit	ies'	?					
`	,		Ve	rify:	(	) <b>x</b>	(	) <b>x</b>					
				ld you	·			,					
(sema	anas)	ı	Ve	rify:	(	) <b>x</b>	(	)×					

14.	In the speech of many people from the Rio area (and some
	other areas as well) this final $\underline{s}$ sound may closely
	resemble the English $\underline{\operatorname{sh}}$ sound. Listen closely to these
	examples spoken by a Rio speaker:

<u>casas</u> (		)	(	)
carros (		)	(	)
cidades	(	)	(	)
parques	(	)	(	)
semanas	(	)	(	)

- 15. The definite and indefinite articles also become plural when the noun that they accompany is plural. Observe these plural forms below and listen to them on the tape. Repeat where shown.
  - 1. o ( ): os ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 2. <u>a</u> ( ): <u>as</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 3.  $\underline{um}$  ( ):  $\underline{uns}$  ( ) ( )x ( )x ( The spelling changes from  $\underline{m}$  to  $\underline{n}$ )
  - 4. <u>uma</u> ( ): <u>umas</u> ( ) ( )x
- 16. Now, observe these examples with the definite articles. Follow along on the tape and repeat the last two times as shown.
  - 1. the cars os carros ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 2. the parties as festas ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 3. the cities as cidades ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 4. the parks os parques ( ) ( )x ( )x

    This illustrates the process known as number agreement.

    A singular noun requires a singular form of 'the'; a

    plural noun requires a plural form of 'the'. The noun

and the word 'the' thus agree in number.

	17.	Now observe these examples with the indefinite articles.							
		When the indefinite articles are pluralized the usual							
		English equivalent is 'some'. Observe the following							
		examples and follow along on the tape.							
		1. some cars - $\underline{uns}$ $\underline{carros}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x 2. some parties - $\underline{umas}$ $\underline{festas}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x							
		2. some parties - $\underline{\text{umas}}$ festas ( ) ( )x ( )x							
		3. some cities - $\underline{\text{umas}}$ $\underline{\text{cidades}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x							
		4. some parks - $\underline{uns}$ parques ( ) ( )x ( )x							
		Again, these examples illustrate <u>number agreement</u> .  Singular nouns are preceded by a singular form of the							
	indefinite article, and plural nouns are preceded by a								
plural form. The plural forms are translatable as									
		English 'some'.							
	18.	How would you say 'the weeks'?							
(as	seman	,							
		Verify: ( )x ( )x							
		How would you say 'some weeks'?							
(uma	s sem	,							
		Verify: ( )x ( )x							
		How would you say 'the rooms'?							
(as	salas	<i>,</i>							
		$\texttt{Verify:}  (  ) \mathbf{x}  (  ) \mathbf{x}$							
		How would you say 'some rooms'?							
(uma	s sal	,							
		Verify: $( )x ( )x$							
	22.	Many Rio speakers will pronounce the following plural							
		forms with the 'sh' - type sound we mentioned earlier							
		in frame No. 14. Listen to the Rio speaker on the tape.							
		You need not repeat.							

```
(frame 22 continued)
1. os ( ) as ( ) uns ( ) umas (
2. os carros ( ) as festas ( )
3. uns carros ( ) umas festas ( )
```

#### Comment

In order to continue with this examination of plurals it is necessary that you be familiar with the terms voiced and unvoiced.

Any speech sound which is produced with the vocal cords vibrating is said to be <u>voiced</u>. Any speech sound which is produced with the vocal cords at rest is said to be unvoiced.

Your first impression may be that the vocal cords are in operation for  $\underline{\text{all}}$  speech sounds and that therefore all speech sounds are voiced. Such is not the case, however.

English has several sounds that are unvoiced. The  $\underline{f}$  is a good example. The vocal cords do not vibrate as you produce the  $\underline{f}$  sound. You do not use your voice. You have to whisper the sound. There's simply no other way to say it. If you do force the vocal cords to vibrate, you are no longer producing the  $\underline{f}$ . You are producing the  $\underline{v}$ . The  $\underline{v}$  is a <u>voiced</u> sound. With a bit of careful self-examination you will realize that the principal phonetic difference between our words  $\underline{f}$  and  $\underline{v}$  is that the vocal cords are vibrating for the  $\underline{v}$  but not for the  $\underline{f}$ .

You can notice similar distinctions in the following pairs of English words. Read them aloud in pairs, and notice that the presence or the absence of voicing on the first consonant sound makes all the difference in the world.

bet	pet	veal	feel
ban	pan	van	fan
den	ten	zip	sip seal
dare	tear	zeal	
god	cod		
game	came		

Portuguese has voiced and unvoiced sounds too. It is not necessary for us to sort them all out, but it is helpful to realize that the presence or absence of voicing often affects the way

adjacent sounds are pronounced. We will show you how this works with regard to the pluralization of the definite and indefinite articles, which is, after all, what we are dealing with here.

In frames 10-21 above we pluralized the definite and indefinite articles by adding an  $\underline{s}$  sound. The  $\underline{s}$  is <u>unvoiced</u>. It is significant that the first sound of each of the nouns is also unvoiced (the  $\underline{p}$  of <u>parque</u>, the  $\underline{f}$  of <u>festa</u>, the  $\underline{s}$  sound of <u>cidade</u> and <u>sala</u>, and the  $\underline{k}$  sound of <u>carro</u>). It is because these sounds are unvoiced that the plural forms of the articles have the unvoiced  $\underline{s}$ . The two unvoiced elements form a kind of pair.

os parques
as festas
os carros
as cidades
as salas

By way of contrast, you will notice in the examples that follow that when the first sound of the noun is <u>voiced</u>, the definite and indefinite articles do not have the unvoiced <u>s</u> sound. They have the voiced <u>z</u> sound instead. For example, you will hear 'oz amigos' (the friends) and 'az mesas' (the tables), both with a <u>z</u> sound rather than the <u>s</u> sound you might have expected. The <u>a of amigos</u> and the <u>m of mesas</u> are both voiced and each of them colors the preceding sound (the pluralizing <u>s</u>) to the point where it too becomes voiced and changes from an <u>s</u> to a <u>z</u>. (All of this happens in <u>speech</u>. In the writing system this <u>z</u> sound is still written with an <u>s</u>.)

- 23. Listen for the  $\underline{z}$  sound in these examples where the noun begins with a voiced vowel sound. The  $\underline{z}$  is indicated here by an underlined  $\underline{s}$ .
  - 1. as avenidas ( )x ( )x
  - 2. as embaixadas ( )x ( )x
  - 3. os americanos ( )x ( )x
  - 4. os estados ( )x ( )x

		5. umas avenidas ( )x ( )x 6. umas embaixadas ( )x ( )x 7. uns americanos ( )x ( )x 8. uns estados ( )x ( )x
(o <u>s</u> :	24. amigos	How would you say 'the friends'?
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
(un <u>s</u>	25.	·
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
(o <u>s</u> :		How would you say 'the Americans'?
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
	27.	How would you say 'some Americans'?
(un <u>s</u>	amer	.canos)
		Verify: $( )x ( )x$
	28.	Listen for the $\underline{z}$ sound in these examples where the noun begins with a voiced consonant sound.
		1. $a\underline{s}$ mesas ( )x ( )x
		2. as moças ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
		3. as velhas ( )x ( )x
		4. a <u>s</u> vistas* ( )x ( )x
		5. os dias ( )x ( )x
		6. $umas mesas ( )x ( )x$
		7. $umas moças ( )x ( )x$
		8. $umas$ velhas ( )x ( )x
		9. $umas vistas ( )x ( )x$
		.O. un <u>s</u> dias ( )x ( )x

<sup>\*&#</sup>x27;The views'. New in this unit.

(a <u>s</u>	29. mesas	
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
(a <u>s</u>	30. moças	And how do you say 'the girls'?
		Verify: $( )x ( )x$
	31.	How would you say 'some girls'?
(uma	<u>s</u> moça	·
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
(o <u>s</u>	32. dias)	Finally, how do you say 'the days'?
		Verify: ( ) $\mathbf{x}$ ( ) $\mathbf{x}$
	33.	The Rio speaker is very likely to give the $\underline{z}$ sound before voiced consonants a slightly different treatment. You can expect him to pronounce it in a way that resembles our English $\underline{z}$ of $\underline{azure}$ or our $\underline{s}$ of $\underline{pleasure}$ . But note that he will do this only in front of voiced consonants, not in front of vowels. Listen to these samples spoken by a Rio speaker. You need not repeat. $(1-4)$
	34.	Now, recall these four contractions.  no ( )x ( )x na ( )x ( )x num ( )x ( )x num ( )x ( )x
	35•	These contractions are made plural when the noun they go with is plural. <pre>nos ( )x ( )x nas ( )x ( )x nuns ( )x ( )x numas ( )x ( )x</pre> 11.9

	36.	Не	re	are	some	exa	ample	es.	List	en	for t	he z	sour	nd in	n
		2	and	. 4 <b>v</b>	where	the	e nou	ın b	egins	iw a	ith a	voic	ed so	ound,	
				1.	nas	cida	ades	(	)x	(	)x	'in	the o	citi	es'
				2.	no <u>s</u>	esta	ados	(	)x	(	)×	'in	the s	stat	es'
				3.	nuns	ca	rros	(	)x	(	)×	'in	some	car	s'
				4.	numa	a <u>s</u> me	esas	(	)x	(	)x	on	some	tab	les'
	37.	Gi	.ve	the	Eng1	ish	equi	lval	ents	of	these	e ite	ems th	nat y	you
		he	ar	on t	ape.										
		1.	(		)	(	)								
(in	the	park	s)												
		2.	(		)	(	)								
(at	the	part	ies	)											
		3.	(		)	(	)								
(in	the	cars	;)												
		4.	(		)	(	)								
(in	some	e car	s)												
		5.	(		)	(	)								
(on	some	e tab	les	)											
		6.	(		)	(	)								
(on	some	e ave	nue	s)											
		7.	(		)	(	)								
(on	the	tabl	es)												
		8.	(		)	(	)								
(in	the	emba	ssi	es)											
		9.	(		)	(	)								
(in	some	e emb	ass	ies	)										
	38.	. Ir	un	it '	7 yoι	ı le	arned	d th	at th	ne j	hrase	e <u>é</u> <u>c</u>	<u>jue</u> ma	ay bo	е
		ir	ser	ted	afte	er a	ques	stio	n-woı	rd.	We n	noted	d that	th:	е
		qu	ıest	ion	'Whe	ere .	<b>i</b> s Sa	anto	s?' (	can	be as	sked	in tv	vo w	ays.
							Sant								

11.10

In this unit we will again insert  $\underline{\acute{e}}$  que after a question-

word. The question word in this case is 'What?'.

Onde é que está o Santos?

	Portug	uese it i	' <u>O que</u> ?'	List	en and	d re	peat	•			
	0	que? (	) (	) x	( ):	x	(	) x			
39.	By inse	erting <u>é</u>	que imedia	tely a	fterwa	ards	we	have	a lor	ıger	but
	equally	y common v	way of ask	ing 'W	hat?'	. I	tis	not	reall	y so	)
	much a	tongue t	wister as	it see	ms.						
	0	que é que	e? ( )	(	) x	(	) x	(	) x		
40.	'What	lo you war	nt?' (What	<u>is</u> <u>it</u>	that	you	wan	t?) i	ls sai	.d	
	like th	nis: <u>0 q</u> ı	ie <u>é que o</u>	senho	r que	<u>r</u> ?					
	(	) (	) x (	) x	(	) x					
Speci	ial Pre	-dialog Pi	ractice	(Recor	ded)						
	When a	Portugue	se speaker	feels	it is	s apj	prop	riate	e he w	7 <b>i</b> 11	
ask y	you to s	switch fro	om the for	mal <b>'</b> y	ou' to	o the	e in	forma	al 'yo	ou.'	
There	e is no	single l	inguistic	formul	a for	acc	omp1	ishir	ng thi	.s.	The
varia	ations a	are endle	ss. Howev	er, we	are	illu	stra	ting	two c	ommo	on
ways	in the	brief ex	changes pr	esente	d bel	ow.	We	sugge	est yo	ou	
pract	tice th	ese. The	y are reco	rded f	or yo	u on	tap	e.			
	The Am	erican's	question o	r stat	ement	is	pick	ed at	t rand	lom.	
It co	ould be	anything	. The Bra	zilian	's re	spon	se i	s wha	at we	are	
inte	rested	in.									
Excha	ange No	. 1									
			por favor				Ţ	leas	е		
Amer	ican:	A senhor	a trabalha	no Ri	0?	Do	you	work	in R	io?	
Braz	ilian:	'A senho por favo	ra, não. r.	Você,				senh você	ora.' .'	Pl	ease

Estā bem.

American:

Okay.

# Exchange No. 2

Me chame

Call me

American:

Eu quero falar com I want to talk with you.

o senhor.

Brazilian:

'O senhor', não. Me chame de 'você'.

Not 'o senhor'. Call me 'você'.

American: Está bem. Okay.

## DIALOG

Yara and Bill have switched to 'você'.

Yara

Você é casado? Are you married?

Bill

minha my

a esposa the wife a minha esposa my wife a criança the child

Sou. A minha esposa está em Yes, I am. My wife is in Washington com as crianças. Washington with the children.

Yara

quantos? how many? o filho the child tem

have (he-form)

Quantos filhos você tem? How many children do you have?

Bill

have (I-form) tenho

dois two três three nove nine

o menino the little boy a menina the little girl

Tenho dois. Um menino de I have two. A boy nine

nove e uma menina de três. and a girl three.

#### Yara

o que?

o que é que?

acha

what?

what is it that?

think (he-form)

O que é que você acha do Rio?

gosta

Você gosta?

What do you think of Rio?

like (he-form)

Do you like it?

### Bill

gosto

muito

like (I-form) much, a lot

Gosto muito.

a vista umas vistas

maravilhosa

I like it a lot.

the view some views marvelous

Tem umas vistas maravilhosas.

It has some marvelous views.

### SOME NUMBERS

- 1. um, uma
- 2. dois, duas
- 3. três
- 4. quatro
- 5. cinco
- 6. seis
- 7. sete

oito

8.

- 9. nove
- 10. dez
- 11. onze
- 12. doze
- 13. treze
- 14. catorze
- 15. quinze

#### A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

#### Practice Exercises

#### Part I. Plural Nouns

# Practice 1: (Recorded)

Listen to your tape instructor say this group of nouns in their plural forms. The word for 'the', which precedes each one, is pluralized by adding the s sound. Repeat each one after the instructor.

### Practice 2: (Recorded)

Now here are more nouns given in their plural forms. Again the word for 'the' precedes each one, but this time it is pluralized by adding the z sound since the nouns begin with a vowel or with a voiced consonant. Repeat each one.

## Practice 3: (Recorded)

In this exercise you are to make the nouns plural. Listen to the noun in its singular form, then say it in the plural. Be sure to pluralize the word for 'the'. (In 1-10 add the s sound; in 11-20, add the z sound). Check your response with the tape.

# Practice 4: (Recorded)

This is a group of plural nouns preceded by the appropriate word for 'some'. Repeat each one. Notice how 'some' is pluralized with an  $\underline{s}$  sound in Group 1, and with a  $\underline{z}$  sound in Group 2.

# Practice 5: (Recorded)

Listen to the following singular nouns and then make them plural by saying 'some' followed by the plural noun. 'Some' is pluralized with an s sound in 1-9, with a z sound in 10-18.

# Practice 6: (Recorded)

How would you say these items in Portuguese? You should be able to respond rapidly. Verify your responses with the tape.

1. the parks

6. the Americans

2. the states

7. the views

3. the houses

8. the cities

4. the tables

9. the phone calls

- 5. the friends
- 10. some parties

15. some parks

11. some cars

16. some states

12. some cities

- 17. some mornings
- 13. some young girls (meninas)
- 18. some friends

14. some wives

- 11.15

### Practice 7: (Recorded)

Listen to and repeat these plural contractions, all of them combinations of em plus the plural forms os, as, uns, umas.

- 1. in the states ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 2. in the embassies ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 3. in the cities ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 4. at the parties ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 5. in the cars ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 6. in the parks ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 7. on the tables ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 8. in some states ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 9. in some embassies ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 10. in some cities ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 11. at some parties ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 12. in some cars ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 13. in some parks ( ) ( )x ( )x
- 14. in some houses ( ) ( )x ( )x

# Practice 8: (Recorded)

This is an exercise in changing contractions from singular to plural. Listen to the <u>singular</u> contractions on the tape, then change the contraction and the accompanying noun to the plural forms. For example, <u>na festa</u> will become <u>nas festas</u>. Verify your response with the response given on the tape.

# Part II. More on gender agreement

### Observation

Recall the sentence: Quantos filhos você tem? ('How many children do you have?'). Notice what happens to the word Quantos if we ask 'How many houses do you have?'.

#### Quantas casas você tem?

The -os of Quantos changes to -as and the word becomes Quantas. This is because <u>casas</u> is feminine. The word for 'how many', since it is an adjective used in association with the feminine word <u>casas</u>, must itself be feminine. It must agree. Thus the masculine ending -o (unstressed <u>u</u> sound) of <u>Quantos</u> gives way to the feminine ending -a of <u>Quantas</u>, and we say that there is gender agreement between the noun <u>casas</u> and its accompanying adjective.

### Practice 9: (Recorded)

Instructor  $\underline{A}$  will ask Instructor  $\underline{B}$  'How many \_\_\_\_\_\_ do you have?', and Instructor  $\underline{B}$  will answer 'I have \_\_\_\_\_'. Just listen. Pay particular attention to whether you hear Quantos or Quantas. Notice also that here too the  $\underline{s}$  sound becomes a  $\underline{z}$  sound before a vowel or a voiced consonant.

# Practice 10: (Recorded)

Now the instructor will ask you the same questions. In your answer you may pick any number that you wish.

### Practice 11: (Recorded)

This time <u>you</u> ask the questions. Ask how many of the following items your friend has, following the same pattern used in the previous practice. The tape will not answer your question, but it will confirm how you should have asked the question.

1. filhas

- 5. salas
- 2. crianças
- 6. casas

3. carros

7. meninos

4. amigos

8. festas

#### Observation

Recall the sentence <u>Este é o meu amigo</u>, <u>Bill</u>. Notice in particular:

o meu amigo = my friend

In this unit you have learned this sentence: A minha esposa está em Washington com as crianças. Notice in particular:

# a minha esposa = my wife

This is another case of gender agreement. Since <u>amigo</u> is masculine, the expression for 'my', which is closely linked to it, assumes the masculine form <u>o meu</u>. Since <u>esposa</u> is feminine the expression for 'my' assumes the feminine form <u>a minha</u>. (The <u>o</u> and the <u>a</u> in these expressions are the words for 'the'. Thus we are literally saying 'the my friend, the my wife', etc.)

All three elements change for the plural.

O meu amigo becomes os meus amigos = my friends.

A minha esposa becomes as minhas esposas = my wives.

The os and as have the z sound in the above examples because they precede the voiced m sound.

### Practice 12: (Recorded)

Listen to your tape instructor say a series of 'my\_\_\_'.

The first part of the series, Group A, will be singular; the second part, Group B, will be plural. Repeat each item after the instructor.

### Practice 13: (Recorded)

How would you say these short phrases in Portuguese? Check the tape for verification.

-			
1.	my party	10.	my girl ( <u>menina</u> )
2.	my living room	11.	my girls
3.	my car	12.	my house
4.	my daughter ( <u>filha</u> )	13.	my cars
5•	my wife	14.	my state
6.	my friend	15.	my children ( <u>crianças</u> )
7.	my friends	16.	my view
8.	my boy (menino)	17.	my city
9.	my boys	18.	my phone call

#### Observation

The numbers 'one' and 'two' also show gender agreement. The masculine and feminine forms for 'one' are synonymous with the indefinite articles; that is,

um estado = 'a state', or 'one state'

uma casa = 'a house', or 'one house'

The masculine form for 'two' appears in the sentence <u>Tenho</u>
<u>dois</u>; it refers to the masculine word <u>filhos</u>. The feminine form is <u>duas</u>. It is used when one is referring to feminine words, as in the sentence <u>Tenho</u> <u>duas</u> <u>casas</u>.

## Practice 14: (Recorded)

Listen to your tape instructor saying this series of nouns preceded by the number 'two'. Notice the masculine and feminine forms. Repeat each one after him.

#### Part III. More contractions

### Observation

You have learned that  $\underline{em}$  combines with the definite and indefinite articles to form certain contractions.

The word <u>de</u> (meaning 'of', or 'from') also combines with the definite and indefinite articles to form another set of contractions. You have already learned a few of these.

da cidade, a contraction of de a cidade

da mesa, a contraction of de a mesa

do estado, a contraction of de o estado

do Sr. Silva, a contraction of de o Sr. Silva.

# Practice 15: (Recorded)

Listen to these contractions and repeat as indicated.

1. (of/from the embassy)

 $\underline{da}$  embaixada ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x

2. (of/from the daughter)

<u>da</u> <u>filha</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x

3.	(of/from the car)	
	<u>do carro</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	
4.	(of/from the friend)	
	$\underline{\text{do}}$ amigo ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	
5•	(of/from the week)	
	$\underline{da}$ semana ( ) ( )x ( )x	
6.	(of/from the American)	
	$\underline{\text{do}}$ americano ( ) ( )x ( )x	
Nu	mbers 7-12 show contractions used with plural nouns. Liste	n
particu	larly for the $z$ sound (starred*) in 9, 10 and 11.	
7.	(of/from the children)	
	$\underline{\mathtt{das}}$ crianças ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	
8.	(of/from the cities)	
	$\underline{\mathtt{das}}$ $\underline{\mathtt{cidades}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x	
9.	(os/from the states)	
	$\underline{\text{dos}}^* \underline{\text{estados}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	
10.	,	
	$\underline{\text{das}}^* \underline{\text{esposas}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	
11.	,	
	$\underline{\text{das}}^* \underline{\text{embaixadas}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x	
12.	,	
	$\underline{\text{dos parques}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x	
	next group consists of contractions of de with 'a/an'.	
13.	(of/from) a friend)	
_ 1.	$\underline{\text{dum amigo}}  ( )  ( ) \times  ( ) \times  ( ) \times$	
14.	(of/from) an embassy)	
	$\underline{\text{duma}} \ \underline{\text{embaixada}} \ ( \ ) \ ( \ ) x \ ( \ ) x$	
15.		
	$\frac{\text{duma esposa}}{\text{duma esposa}} ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x$	
16.	(of/from a child)	
	$\underline{\text{dum menino}}  ( )  ( ) \times  ( ) \times  ( ) \times$	
17.	<del>-</del> ,	
<b>1</b> 0	$\frac{\text{duma cidade}}{\text{duma cidade}} ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x$	
18.	- ,	
	$\underline{\mathtt{duma}} \ \underline{\mathtt{filha}} \ ( \ ) \ ( \ ) \mathbf{x} \ ( \ ) \mathbf{x}$	

The following are all contractions of de with 'some'. 19. (of/from some girls) ) ( )x (  $\mathbf{x}$ dumas moças ( (of/from some wives) 20. ( ) ( )x ( )x dumas esposas 21. (of/from some friends) ( )x (  $\mathbf{x}$ duns amigos ( ) 22. (of/from some Americans) ) ( )x (  $\mathbf{x}$ duns americanos ( 23. (of/from some states) ( ) ( )x ( )x ( duns estados 24. (of/from some children) ( ) ( ) x ( ) xdumas crianças

## Practice 16: (Recorded)

The following two questions will be repeated several times on the tape. Be sure you can say each one effortlessly before going on to Practice 17.

O que é que você acha do Rio? What do you think of Rio?
O que é que você acha da sala? What do you think of the living room?

# Practice 17: (Recorded)

Ask these questions in Portuguese, checking the tape for verification after each one. The emphasis at this point is once again on the contractions formed with  $\underline{de}$ .

- 1. What do you think of (the) Rio?
- 2. What do you think of (the) car?
- 3. What do you think of (the) living room?
- 4. What do you think of (the) city?
- 5. What do you think of (the) embassy?
- 6. What do you think of (the) downtown?
- 7. What do you think of (the) park?
- 8. What do you think of (the) children? (crianças)
- 9. What do you think of (the) Americans?

- 10. What do you think of (the) girls? (moças)
- 11. What do you think of (the) views?
- 12. What do you think of (the) cities?
- 13. What do you think of (the) boys? (meninos)
- 14. What do you think of (the) parties?

### Comprehension

Listen to these utterances recorded on the tape and make a note of any that you do not understand.

### Translations

#### Part I.

How would you say these thoughts in Portuguese? In numbers 1-13 you might assume that you are talking about a letter.

- It's from a friend.
- It's from some friends.
- 3. It's from an American.
- 4. It's from the American.
- 5. It's from the American Embassy.
- 6. It's from some Americans.
- 7. It's from a girl.
- 8. It's from some girls.
- 9. It's from Mr. Silva.
- 10. It's from my wife.
- 11. It's from my friend.
- 12. It's from the children.
- 13. It's from Rio.
- 14. Paul is from Rio.
- 15. Yara is from Brazil too, but she's from (do) Recife.
- 16. Mr. Clayton is from the American Embassy.

### Part II.

- 1. My wife is in New York.
- 2. My wife is not in Washington.
- 3. My wife is with the children.
- 4. My wife wants to stay with the children.
- 5. The children can stay with my wife.
- 6. The children don't want to leave now.
- 7. I have two children.
- 8. A boy six and a girl four.
- 9. I have two houses, one in New York and one in Washington.
- 10. The house in New York is old.
- 11. Paul has two cars.
- 12. How many cars does Yara have?
- 13. How many friends does Yara have?
- 14. What do you think of the view?
- 15. What do you think of the cars?
- 16. What do you think of the two cars?
- 17. What do you think of the two houses?
- 18. The girls are going to stay.
- 19. The children plan to get up early.
- 20. I'm going to get up early with the children.
- 21. My little boy is downtown.
- 22. My daughter is at home.
- 23. My car is in Rio.
- 24. My house is in New York.
- 25. My party is tomorrow.
- 26. My house has a marvelous view.
- 27. I have a marvelous view from the living room.
- 28. I have a marvelous view from my house.
- 29. I have a marvelous view of the city.
- 30. I have a marvelous view of Rio.
- 31. But Yara only has a view of President Wilson Avenue.

## Part III.

Prepare these brief dialogs in Portuguese.

- 1. A. How long has Susanna been here?
  - B. She has been here 3 weeks, more or less.
  - A. Does she like [it]?
  - B. Yes, she does. A lot.
  - A. Does she work?
  - B. Yes. In the downtown [section].
- 2. A. How many children do you have?
  - B. I have one. A boy twelve. And you?
  - A. I have one also. A girl six.
  - B. Is she here in Brasilia with you?
  - A. Yes, she is. She's at home with my wife.
- 3. A. What do you think of the food?
  - B. I don't like it.
  - A. Aren't you going to eat?
  - B. I can't. I'm not hungry. I'm going to eat at home.

#### UNIT 12

### Preliminary Note

You will need to have your pencil or pen in hand to work several of the frames in this unit.

#### Observation

Cognates are words which are easily recognizable across language boundaries because of the close resemblance they bear to each other. The Portuguese word <u>presidente</u> and the English word <u>president</u> are cognates. The two words sound (and look) so much alike that a speaker of one language does not normally have any trouble recognizing and understanding the counter-word in the other language. The Portuguese word <u>americano</u> is an obvious cognate of the English word <u>American</u>. Chances are that it was very easy for you to learn to recognize this word and what it meant.

Although recognition of cognates is a relatively simple matter accurate mimicry of them may present problems. The deeply ingrained speech habits of one's own native tongue are very comfortable and resist change. They interfere with the attempt to pronounce the cognate word in the target language as it should be pronounced. Almost invariably vowel and consonant qualities are different and must be reckoned with. Many times stress patterns are different too.

To illustrate the significance of the difference in stress patterns we call your attention once again to the two pairs of cognates cited above. Notice that the strong stress falls on different vowels in the two languages. We are indicating strong stress here by underlining.

English	Portuguese
Am <u>e</u> rican	americ <u>a</u> no
president	presidente

This unit contains additional cognates which illustrate the difference in stress patterns.

1.	Listen to this word.	Is it stressed on the first, s	second
	or last vowel?		

()()()

(last)

2. This was the word for 'Portuguese'. In English, is the word 'Portuguese' stressed on the first, second or last vowel?

(first)

3. Let's divide the Portuguese word for 'Portuguese' into syllables and practice it. Repeat.

- a. ()x ()x
- b. ( )x ( )x
- c. ()x ()x
- d. ()x ()x ()x

4. Which of these two renditions is the correct one?

(1) (2) (1) (2)

(2)

Now listen to these next two renditions. Although both are stressed correctly, one is still mispronounced. Which one is mispronounced?

(1) (2) (1) (2)

(2)

The mispronunciation you just heard is quite common among English speakers learning Portuguese. All of us who are native speakers of English will invariably pronounce the word in <u>English</u> like this:

Pór-chu-guese

Notice the <u>ch</u> sound. That <u>ch</u> sound is very comfortable for us, and if we are not careful we will carry it over into Portuguese, where it definitely does not belong.

7. Here is the word pronounced correctly. Repeat as indicated.

	( )x ( )x
	( )x ( )x ( )x
8.	Now we will examine another set of cognates. First, say the English word 'opportunity' aloud and notice which vowel the strong stress is on.
(opport <u>u</u>	nity)
9.	Now listen to the Portuguese cognate.
	( ) ( ) ( )
10.	Listen again; then with your pencil underline the vowel which has the strong stress.
	oportunidade ( ) ( ) ( )
(oportun	id <u>a</u> de)
11.	Now practice saying the word by repeating the sequence you hear next on the tape.
	(Follow tape)
12.	Here is the Portuguese word for 'grammar'. Just listen.
	( ) ( ) ( )
13.	Here it is again. Underline the vowel of the syllable that has the strong stress.
	gramática ( ) ( ) ( )
(gram <u>á</u> ti	ca)
14.	Now practice saying the word by repeating the sequence given on the tape.
	(Follow tape)
<b>1</b> 5.	Here is the word for 'English'.
	( ) ( )

,	16.	Here it is again. Underline the vowel that has the strong stress.
		inglês ( ) ( ) ( )
(ingl	<u>ê</u> s)	
	17.	Now practice the word as you hear it presented on the tape.
		(Follow tape)
	18.	Here is the Portuguese word for 'Spanish'.
		( ) ( ) ( )
	19.	Here it is again. As before, take your pencil and underline the stressed vowel.
		espanhol () () ()
(espa	nh <u>o</u> l)	
;	20.	Now practice saying it. Follow the sequence on the tape and repeat. Observe that the final $\underline{1}$ sound is the type that closely resembles our English $\underline{w}$ ; also that the $\underline{o}$ is 'open'.
		(Follow tape)
:	21.	The very first vowel sound of <u>espanhol</u> is often <u>whispered</u> by many Portuguese speakers. It may sound to you as if it is not there at all, but it is.
		( ) ( )x ( )x
	22.	Another cognate appears in the dialog for this unit. It is the neutral form of 'practice'. Just listen.
		( ) ( ) ( )
	23.	Now listen again, and underline the stressed vowel.
		praticar ( ) ( )
(prat	ic <u>a</u> r)	

	24,	now practice saying it. Repeat everything that you hear on the tape.
		(Follow tape)
	25.	The noun <u>oportunidade</u> is feminine. Therefore how would you say 'the opportunity'?
(a o	portu	nidade)
	26.	The plural form is as opertunidades. Will the word as have an s sound or a z sound in this case?
( <u>z</u>	soun	d)
	27.	Listen and repeat.
		as oportunidades ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
	28.	If we want to say 'much opportunity', the word for 'much' will have a feminine ending because it must reflect its close association with 'opportunity'. This is one more example of gender agreement.
		a. muita ( ) ( )x ( )x b. muita oportunidade ( ) ( )x ( )x
	29.	The word for 'day', you may remember, is masculine in spite of the fact that it ends in an unstressed <u>a</u> sound. Therefore 'the day' is said like this:
		o dia ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
	30.	The plural form is $os$ $dias$ . Will the word $os$ have an $s$ sound or a $s$ sound in this case?
( <u>z</u>	soun	ad)
	31.	Listen and repeat.
		os dias ( ) ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	32.	Recall this he-form of a verb you learned in the last unit.
		gosta ( ) ( )
	33.	And this I-form of the same verb.
		gosto ( ) ( )

34.	Here is the he-form of a new verb.
	fala ( ) ( )× ( )x
35.	And here is the I-form of that verb.
	falo ( ) ( )
36.	Here is another new verb. Is it the he-form or the I-form?
	( ) ( )
(he-form)	
37.	Which form is this?
	( ) ( )
(I-form)	
38.	Here is still another new verb. Which form is it?
	( ) ( )
(he-form)	
39.	Recall the I-form of the verb 'have'.
	tenho ( ) ( ) ( ) x ( ) x
40.	It is possible to combine this I-form with various neutral forms as we do in English in order to express such thoughts as the following:
	I have to leave
	I have to eat
	I have to study
41.	In Portuguese, combinations of this sort require the insertion of the small word <u>que</u> between the I-form and the neutral form. Listen to the word <u>que</u> , and repeat.
	que ( ) ( ) ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$

42.	Therefore 'I have to leave	' would be sa	id a	as fo	11ov	vs:
	Tenho que sair	( ) ( )				
	The <u>que</u> is untranslatable <u>present</u> in Portuguese.	into English,	but	it	must	<u>be</u>
43.	Repeat again.					
	Tenho que sair	( ) ( )x (	) <b>x</b>	( )	x	
44.	'I have to eat' would be	said like this	:			
	Tenho que comer	( ) ( )x	( )>	<b>«</b> (	)×	
45.	How would you say 'I have	to stay'?				
(Tenho qu	e ficar)	Verify:	(	) x	(	) x
46.	How would you say 'I have	to speak'?				
(Tenho qu	e falar)	Verify:	(	) x	(	) x
47.	And 'I have to visit'?					
(Tenho qu	e visitar)	Verify:	(	) x	(	) x
48.	The he-form (tem) is also neutral form. Again, que has to leave' consists of	must link the	two	ion w	ith hus	the 'He
	<u>tem</u> + <u>que</u> +	<u>sair</u>				
49.	Now listen to and repeat	He has to lea	ve'	•		
	( ) ( )x ( )x	( )x				
50.	Here is 'He has to stay'.					
	( ) ( )x ( )x	( )x				
51.	How would you say 'He has	to eat'?				
(Tem que	comer)	Verify:	(	) x	(	) x
52.	How about 'He has to make	a phone call'	?			
(Tem que	dar um telefonema)	Verify:	(	) x	(	) x
	(Go on now to the dialog).					

### DIALOG

Yara

fala

speak (he-form)

o português

Portuguese

Você fala português muito bem.

You speak Portuguese very well.

Bill

nota

notice (he-form)

o sotaque espanhol

accent Spanish

<u>Você não nota um sotaque</u> espanhol?

Don't you notice a Spanish

accent?

Yara

pouco

little (in quantity)

Um pouco. Por quê? Você fala espanhol também?

A little. Why? Do you speak Spanish too?

Bill

falo

speak (I-form)

atrapalha

(it) causes confusion

(he-form)

a palavra

a gramática

etcetera

grammar

word

etcetera

Falo. E atrapalha muito.
As palavras, a gramática, etc.

<u>I</u> <u>do</u>. <u>And it</u> <u>causes</u> <u>lots</u> <u>of confusion</u>. <u>The words</u>, <u>the grammar</u>, <u>etc</u>.

<u>Yara</u>

a oportunidade

praticar

opportunity

practice (neutral form)

<u>Você tem muita oportunidade</u> de praticar português? Do you have much chance to practice Portuguese?

<u>Bill</u>

tenho que falar o escritório

todos

todos os dias

Tenho que falar no escritório todos os dias.

que tal?
o seu

o inglês

E que tal o seu inglês?

I have to speak

office

all, every every day

<u>I</u> <u>have</u> <u>to</u> <u>speak</u> <u>it</u> <u>in</u> <u>the</u> office every day.

how?, how about?

your

English

And how's your English?

Yara

Péssimo!

Terrible!

Portuguese has a word to express the direct object 'it' but frequently does not use the word.

#### A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

#### Practice Exercises

### Part I. Verbs of the -ar type

### Practice 1. Review (Recorded)

Let us review some of the I-forms that you have learned thus far. Repeat after the voice on the tape while following along on this page.

All of these end in an unstressed  $\underline{u}$  sound (written as  $\underline{o}$ ). With a few important exceptions, the I-forms of every verb in the language end in this unstressed u sound.

# Practice 2. Review (Recorded)

Now let us re-examine some of the he-forms that you have learned. Repeat them from the tape and follow along on this page.

The he-forms of Group A all end in an unstressed  $\underline{a}$  sound. Those in Group B end in an unstressed  $\underline{i}$  sound (written as  $\underline{e}$ ).

It is important to be able to associate these forms with their respective neutral forms. You may recall that earlier we talked about three types or categories of neutral forms: those that end in -ar, those that end in -er, and those that end in -ir. We called them the -ar type, the -er type and the -ir type.

The he-forms <u>fala</u>, <u>gosta</u>, <u>trabalha</u>, <u>nota</u>, <u>acha</u>, and <u>atrapalha</u>, all ending in unstressed <u>a</u>, are of the <u>-ar</u> type. That is their neutral forms end in <u>-ar</u>. We will postpone actively practicing these neutral forms until a later time, but we are listing them below.

he-form	neutral form
fala	falar
gosta	gostar
trabalha	trabalhar
nota	notar
acha	achar
atrapalha	atrapalhar

The he-forms <u>pode</u> and <u>pretende</u>, which end in an unstressed -i sound, are of the -er type. Their neutral forms end in -er.

he-form	neutral form
pode	poder
pretende	pretender

Many times you will have to work this association in reverse. You will learn the neutral form first and from that you will be able to determine the shape of the he-form. That is what you will do in the practices that immediately follow.

# Practice 3. Review (Recorded)

The following are all neutral forms of the  $-\underline{ar}$  type. You have learned them in previous dialogs. Repeat them now to refresh your memory.

ficar (		)х	:	(	) x	:
falar (		) х	:	(	) x	
levantar		(	)	x	(	) <b>x</b>
visitar		(	) х		(	)x
chegar	(	)	x	(	)	x
evitar	(	)	x	(	)	x
praticar		(	•	x	(	) <b>x</b>

## Practice 4. (Recorded)

Listen to this group of I-forms of the  $-\underline{ar}$  verbs listed in Practice 3.

### Practice 5. (Recorded)

Now listen to this group of he-forms of the same verbs.

## Practice 6. (Recorded)

Now listen to the neutral form, the I-form, and the he-form of these verbs side by side.

# Practice 7. (Recorded)

Listen to the items presented on the tape and indicate which form you hear by putting a check mark in the appropriate column in the chart below. The answers are given at the end of this unit.

,	Neutral form	<u>I-form</u>	He-form
1.			
2. 3. 4.			
4. 5. 6.			
7. 8.			
9. <b>1</b> 0.			
11. 12.			
13. 14.			

# Practice 8. (Recorded)

Now practice these I-forms. Be sure that you can associate them with their respective neutral forms, which are shown in brackets.

[falar]	1.	( )	(	)x	(	)x
[ficar]	2.	( )	(	)x	(	)x
[levantar]	3.	( )	(	)x	(	)x
[chegar]	4.	( )	(	)x	(	)x
[visitar]	5.	( )	(	)x	(	)x
[evitar]	6.	( )	(	)x	(	)x
[praticar]	7.	( )	(	)x	(	)x
[trabalhar]	8.	( )	(	)x	(	)x

# Practice 9. (Recorded)

Now practice the he-forms, once again associating them with the neutral forms given in brackets.

[falar]	1.	( )	( )x	( )x
[ficar]	2.	( )	( )x	( )x
[levantar]	3.	( )	( )x	( )x
[chegar]	4.	( )	( )x	( )x
[visitar]	5.	( )	( )x	( )x
[evitar]	6.	( )	( )x	( )x
[praticar]	7.	( )	( )x	( )x
[trabalhar]	8.	( )	( )x	( )x

# Practice 10 • (Recorded)

Here are some he-forms and I-forms in print. Listen to them on tape and underline the vowel that has the strong stress.

1.	fala	falo
2.	fica	fico
3.	pratica	pratico
4.	levanta	levanto

5.	visita	visito
6.	gosta	gosto
7.	trabalha	trabalho
8.	<b>evi</b> ta	evito
9.	nota	noto
10.	acha	acho

(If you marked those correctly, you underlined the next-to-the-last vowel).

### Practice 11. (Recorded)

Paying particular attention to the strong stress, practice the above cited he-forms and I-forms as they are given now on the tape.

### Practice 12. (Recorded)

One of the instructors will ask the other if he does something, and the latter will answer either that he does or that he does not. Listen, and repeat the answer that the second instructor gives.

## Practice 13. (Recorded)

Now the first instructor will ask the second instructor if a third party does something, and the second instructor will answer either that the third party does or that he does not. Repeat just the answer.

### Practice 14. (Recorded)

These questions are directed at you. Answer them affirmatively.

## <u>Practice 15</u>. (Recorded)

Listen to the tape and, following the model of the example given, ask the questions which are suggested there.

## Practice 16. (Recorded)

You have not yet had an opportunity to say the neutral form of several verbs that you have been working with. We will give you that opportunity in this practice.

### Practice 17. (Recorded)

#### Observation

You also have not yet had an opportunity to say the neutral forms of 'notice' and 'like'. They both have the closed o, in contrast to the he- and I-forms which, as you know, have the open o. Later you will learn more verbs in which this kind of vowel shift occurs.

1.	nota	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
	noto	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
	notar	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
2.	gosta	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
	gosto	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
	gostar	-	( )	1	( )x	(	( )x

# Part II. Gostar plus de

#### Observation

Forms of the verb <u>gostar</u> must be followed by <u>de</u> if what is liked is actually stated in the sentence. In Portuguese you like 'of' somebody or something.

I like Mary = Gosto de Maria.

Mary likes Paul = Maria gosta de Paulo.

Sometimes it is not necessary to actually say what is liked because the item has already been mentioned in the context. In that case there is no de. Recall these lines from the previous dialog.

- Q. Você gosta? (Referring back to Rio)
- A. Gosto, sim.

When the definite article 'the' accompanies the liked object the  $\underline{de}$  enters into the appropriate contraction.

```
I like the city. = Gosto da cidade. [de + a cidade]
I like the car. = Gosto do carro. [de + o carro]
```

```
I like the cities. = Gosto das cidades. [de + as cidades]
I like the cars. = Gosto dos carros. [de + os carros]
```

Remember that the definite article 'the' may also accompany proper names. Thus the first two examples cited above might also be said with the appropriate contractions.

The liked object may be the neutral form of a verb, as is often the case in English. In such instances there are no contractions.

# Practice 18. (Recorded)

Listen to your instructor say what he likes, then repeat after him. The items he likes are listed on the left below.

#### a. (Without contractions)

1.	Maria	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
2.	to talk	(	)	(	)x	(	)×
3.	Yara	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
4.	Paulo	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
5.	to practice	(	)	(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	)x
6.	to eat	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
7.	to get up early	(	)	(	)x	(	$)\mathbf{x}$
8.	English	(	)	(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	)x
9.	Washington	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
10.	you	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
11.	Bill	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
12.	Portuguese	(	)	(	)x	(	)x
13.	to work	(	)	(	)x	(	)x

b. (W	ith contractions	)						
1.	Maria		( )	(	)x	(	)x	
2.	Paulo		( )	(	)×	(	)x	
3.	Yara		( )	(	)x	(	)x	
4.	the president		( )	(	)x	(	)×	
5.	the city		( )	(	)x	(	)×	
6.	the views		( )	(	)x	(	)x	
7.	the children		( )	(	)x	(	)x	
8.	(the) Rio		( )	(	)x	(	)×	
9.	the Embassy		( )	(	)x	(	)x	
10.	the parks		( )	(	)x	(	)x	
11.	the living-room	m	( )	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>	
12.	the words		( )	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>	
13.	the accent		( )	(	)x	(	)x	
14.	the party		( )	(	)x	(	)x	
15.	the food		( )	(	)×	(	)x	
Practice 19. (R	ecorded)							
In this exe	rcise your instr	uctor wi	.11 ask	' D	о уо	u ]	like	?¹
Repeat the quest	ions after him.	Do not	answer	th	em.	A]	ll of the	
questions contai	n contractions.	Again,	the it	ems	are	1 i	isted for	you.
1.	o Rio		9.	0 1	meu	ami	igo	
2.	a cidade		10.	os	meu	s a	amigos	
3.	o carro		11.	a :	minh	a e	espôsa	
4.	o parque		12.	as	min	has	s festas	
5•	os meninos		13.	0	tráf	ego	<b>o</b>	
6.	a comida		14.	a `	Yara			
7.	os americanos		15.	0	Paul	0		
8.	o escritório							

# Practice 20. (Recorded)

Say that you like the following things. Check the tape for confirmation. Do this exercise several times, if necessary, until you can do it smoothly.

- 1. to talk
- 2. to eat
- 3. to leave early
- 4. to stay until late
- 5. to speak Portuguese
- 6. to avoid the traffic
- 7. to arrive early
- 8. to visit Washington
- 9. to practice Portuguese
- 10. to work here

# Practice 21. (Recorded)

Say that you  $\underline{\text{don't}}$  like the following. Check the tape for confirmation. Do these several times, if necessary, to assure a smooth performance.

- 1. to get up early
- 2. to speak Spanish
- 3. to practice English
- 4. to arrive at seven
- 5. to visit Paul
- 6. to leave early
- 7. to speak with a Spanish accent
- 8. to work in Washington
- 9. to stay in New York
- 10. to confuse you

# Practice 22. (Recorded)

Now say that Paul likes the following items. Check the tape for confirmation.

- 1. the embassy
- 2. the city
- 3. the downtown
- 4. Maria
- 5. Carlos
- 6. Rio
- 7. Brazil
- 8. my friends
- 9. my view
- 10. my house
- 11. the car
- 12. my daughter
- 13. the little boy

## Practice 23. (Recorded)

Now say that Maria does not like the following items.

- 1. Bill
- 2. Yara
- 3. the traffic
- 4. the party
- 5. my car
- 6. my wife
- 7. the food
- 8. the park
- 9. the living room
- 10. the view
- 11. my son (filho)
- 12. my parties
- 13. the little girl

## Practice 24. (Recorded)

Ask your friend if he likes the following items.

- 1. Brazil
- 2. the city
- 3. to speak Portuguese
- 4. to arrive early
- 5. to get up early
- 6. the view
- 7. the children
- 8. the car
- 9. to work here
- 10. the food

# Part III. 'have to'

Reminder: In phrases like 'I have to leave', 'he has to leave', and the like, Portuguese inserts the word que between 'have (has)' and the neutral form. Practices 25 through 28 deal with this pattern.

## Practice 25. (Recorded)

In this practice you will hear your instructor say that he has to do certain things. Listen to him, and repeat after him where indicated by the  $\underline{\mathbf{x}}$ . The things he has to do are indicated to the left below.

1.	to talk	( )	(	)x	( )x
2.	to practice	( )	(	$\mathbf{x}$	( )x
3.	to get up	( )	(	)x	( )x
4.	to stay	( )	(	)x	( )x
5•	to work	( )	(	)x	( )x
6.	to leave	( )	(	)x	( )x
7.	to visit	( )	(	)x	<b>(</b> )x
8.	to eat	( )	(	)x	( )x
9.	make a phone	call	(	)	( )x ( )x

## Practice 26. (Recorded)

Now listen to him say that someone else has to do certain things, and repeat after him.

()x()x1. to get up 2. to practice 3. to speak Portuguese 4. to stay )x ()x( ) 5. to leave early )x ()x6. ( ) to work ( )x 7. to eat ( )x 8. to avoid the traffic ( ) )x ()x

## Practice 27. (Recorded)

9. to arrive early

In this exercise you will hear your instructor ask 'Do you have to \_\_\_\_\_?'. Repeat after him.

( )

()x ()x

1.	to leave	(	)	(	)x	( )x
2.	to work	(	)	(	)x	( )x
3.	to practice	(	)	(	)x	( )x
4.	to stay	(	)	(	)x	( )x
5.	to get up	(	)	(	)x	( )x
6.	to speak English	(	)	(	)x	( )x
7.	to make a phone call	(	)	(	)x	( )x
8.	to come	(	)	(	)x	( )x
9.	to arrive early	(	)	(	) x	( )x

## <u>Practice 28</u>. (Recorded)

How would you say these brief thoughts in Portuguese? Again, check the tape for verification.

- 1. I have to work more.
- 2. I have to practice more.
- I have to get up at six o'clock.

- 4. She has to get up at seven o'clock.
- 5. She has to leave early.
- 6. I have to leave early too.
- 7. I have to eat less.
- 8. Paul has to eat more.
- 9. Paul has to practice Spanish.
- 10. Yara has to work today.
- 11. Do you have to work tomorrow?
- 12. I have to arrive early tomorrow.
- 13. I have to speak Portuguese in the Embassy.
- 14. Carlos has to come at 5 o'clock.
- 15. But he has to stay until 10.

#### Part IV. Negative questions

Negative questions are questions that have the negative element 'not'  $(n\tilde{a}o)$  in them. Here are some examples.

Mas ela não é casada?

Você não vai comer?

Você não quer levantar cedo também?

Você <u>não</u> nota um sotaque espanhol?

#### Practice 29. (Recorded)

- A. Listen to your instructor ask these negative questions in Portuguese.
  - 1. Isn't she marrieu?
  - 2. Isn't he American?
  - 3. Aren't you the oldest?
- B. Now how would you say these? Check the tape for confirmation
  - 1. Isn't she single?
  - 2. Isn't he from New York?
  - 3. Isn't he Portuguese?

- 4. Isn't he English?
- 5. Aren't you married?
- 6. Aren't you single?
- 7. Isn't he [está] at home?
- 8. Isn't she in the Embassy?

### Practice 30: (Recorded)

- A. Now listen to these questions.
  - 1. Aren't you going to eat?
  - 2. Aren't you going to work?
  - 3. Aren't you planning to leave?
  - 4. Isn't he planning to arrive early?
  - 5. Doesn't he want to arrive early?
  - 6. Doesn't he have to arrive tomorrow?
- B. How would you say these? Check the tape after each one.
  - 1. Aren't you going to leave?
  - 2. Aren't you going to get up?
  - 3. Aren't you going to make a phone call?
  - 4. Isn't he going to work?
  - 5. Doesn't he want to work?
  - 6. Doesn't she want to stay?
  - 7. Doesn't she have to stay?
  - 8. Doesn't Yara have to work?
  - 9. Isn't Yara planning to work?

### Practice 31: (Recorded)

- A. Listen to these questions.
  - 1. Don't you notice a Spanish accent?
  - 2. Don't you work in Washington?
  - 3. Don't you speak Spanish?

- 4. Doesn't he speak Portuguese?
- 5. Doesn't she practice a lot?
- B. How would you say these? Check the tape.
  - 1. Don't you arrive early?
  - 2. Doesn't Bill arrive early?
  - 3. Doesn't Paul stay until 5:00?
  - 4. Doesn't Paul like Rio?
  - 5. Don't you like Yara?
  - 6. Doesn't Yara like you?
  - 7. Doesn't Spanish get in the way?
  - 8. Don't you notice an English accent?

## Comprehension (Recorded)

Listen to these sentences on the tape and write down the numbers of any that are not clear to you.

#### Translations

#### Part I.

How would you say the following in Portuguese? These sentences are numbered separately, but they constitute a running narrative. You should practice them until you can go through them smoothly. Feel free to make alterations to fit your own personal situation.

- 1. I get up early every day.
- 2. I have to get up early because I have to leave early.
- 3. I get up at six.
- 4. I arrive at the office at eight, and I work until five.
- I don't like to get up early.
- 6. Mv wife stays at home with the children.
- My office is in Washington; my home is in Bethesda.
- 8. Tomorrow I have to arrive at seven.
- 9. When I arrive at seven I avoid the traffic.
- 10. Tomorrow I'm going to work only until four.
- 11. But Paulo has to work until six.
- 12. Paulo speaks English very well.
- 13. But I note a Portuguese accent.
- 14. I don't have much opportunity to practice my Portuguese.
- 15. I like my office very much.
- 16. It has a marvelous view of the city.
- 17. Also it has a view of the river.
- 18. And how is my Portuguese?

- 19. It's not terrible, nor is it [também não é] very good.
- 20. I have been here only two weeks.
- 21. I like to speak Portuguese.
- 22. I practice every day with my friends.
- 23. My friend Tom speaks Portuguese very well.
- 24. He's not married and he has more opportunity to practice.

#### Part II.

Prepare these dialogs.

- 1. A. How is Betty?
  - B. Fine. She works in Washington now.
  - A. Every day?
  - B. No, only three days a (por) week.
  - A. Where does she work?
  - B. In an office downtown. She has to leave home  $(\underline{de} \ \underline{casa})$  at seven. She arrives more or less at eight.
  - A. Does she like to get up early?
  - B. Yes, she does, but <u>I</u> don't.
- 2. A. Do you speak Portuguese?
  - B. A little. Why?
  - A. I want to talk with Yara but I don't speak Portuguese very well.
  - B. Doesn't Yara speak English?
  - A. No, she doesn't.
  - B. Why don't you speak Portuguese to her? It's an opportunity to practice your Portuguese.
- 3. A. How's your Portuguese?
  - B. Terrible!
  - A. Terrible? Why?
  - B. I don't have the opportunity to practice. I have to stay in the office until eight o'clock every day.
  - A. But can't you practice with Carla?
  - B. She speaks Spanish, and Spanish gets in the way.

Answers to Practice 7: Neutral form: 4, 5, 14
I-form: 1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 12
He-form: 2, 3, 8, 11, 13

# UNIT 13

Pronunciation Review	

nunci	ation Review
1.	These words from previous units all contain the same nasal vowel. Just listen.
	a. ( ) ( ) b. ( ) ( ) c. ( ) ( ) d. ( ) ( )
2.	Here they are again, with the nasal vowel underlined. Repeat as indicated.
	a. centro ()x ()x b. pretende ()x ()x c. igualmente ()x ()x d. embaixada ()x ()x
3.	The sight of the printed $\underline{n}$ or $\underline{m}$ may lead you to think that you hear an $\underline{n}$ or $\underline{m}$ in these words, but what you are really hearing (and should be saying) is a nasalized vowel sound. Here are some new examples from this unit.
	e. ( ) ( )x ( )x f. ( ) ( )x ( )x
4.	Here they are again with the nasal vowel underlined.
	e. sente ()x ()x f. chovendo ()x ()x
5.	Here are familiar examples of another nasal vowel.
	g. ( ) ( ) h. ( ) ( ) i. ( ) ( ) j. ( ) ( )
	J• \

6.	Now repeat them.
	<ul> <li>g. levanto ()x ()x</li> <li>h. quando ()x ()x</li> <li>i. quanto ()x ()x</li> <li>j. amanhã ()x ()x</li> </ul>
7.	Here are new examples. Just listen.
	k. ( ) ( ) 1. ( ) ( ) m. ( ) ( )
8.	Now repeat.
	k. m <u>a</u> ndo ( )x ( )x 1. b <u>a</u> nda ( )x ( )x m. c <u>a</u> nso ( )x ( )x
9.	The following are familiar examples of still $\underline{\text{another}}$ nasal vowel.
	n. ( ) ( ) o. ( ) ( ) p. ( )
10.	Now repeat them.
	n. $b\underline{o}m$ ()x ()x o. $c\underline{o}m$ ()x ()x p. $\underline{o}nde$ ()x ()x
11.	Here are several new examples, one of which appears in this unit. Just listen.
	q. ( ) ( ) r. ( ) ( ) s. ( ) ( )
12.	Now look, listen and repeat.
	<pre>q. onça ( )x ( )x r. longe ( )x ( )x s. onda ( )x ( )x 13.2</pre>
	13.2

13. Here are familiar examples of a fourth nasal vowel.

	t. ( ) ( ) u. ( ) ( ) v. ( ) ( )
<b>1</b> 4.	Now repeat.
	t. s <u>im</u> ( )x ( )x u. c <u>i</u> nco ( )x ( )x v. <u>i</u> nglês ( )x ( )x
<b>1</b> 5.	Here are two new examples. Just listen.
	w. ( ) ( ) x. ( ) ( )
16.	Now repeat.
	w. m <u>i</u> m ( )x ( )x x. v <u>i</u> m ( )x ( )x
17.	Here is another example, taken from this unit, and said a little slower then normal.
	y. ( ) ( )
18.	Now, here it is said at normal speed. Repeat.
	y. ( )x ( )x ( )x
19.	This is what the last word looks like: ainda.
20.	Say it again. Pronounce the nasal vowel but don't pronounce the $\underline{\mathbf{n}}$ .
	$a\underline{i}$ nda ( )x ( )x ( )x
21.	Now let's move on to a nasal diphthong. Recall these words, repeating as indicated.
	não ()x ()x vão ()x ()x

22.	Now repeat just the nasal diphthong.
	ão: ( )x ( )x
23.	This nasal diphthong appears in the second syllable of the following word, but it is <u>not stressed</u> . Just listen.
	( ) ( )
24.	Since it is not stressed, it may not sound quite like the same diphthong, but it is.
	( ) ( )× ( )× ( )×
25.	The following is the $\underline{\text{wrong}}$ way to say the word; it is wrong because the speaker has stressed the diphthong.
	(w) (w)
26.	This time he says it <u>right</u> , by stressing the first syllable and not the diphthong.
	( ) ( )× ( )×
27.	The word you have just practiced in No. 26 is the they-form of 'speaking'; that is, it is the way you say 'they speak' or 'they talk'. The <u>unstressed</u> nasal diphthong <u>ão</u> is the marker or indicator which signals the they-form.
28.	Here are several additional they-forms of familiar verbs. Note the <u>unstressed</u> diphthong.
	1. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	2. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	3. ( ) ( )x ( )x 4. ( ) ( )x ( )x
29.	In Unit 8 you learned several they-forms that ended with a different kind of unstressed nasal diphthong. They were all they-forms of -er type verbs. Recall them below.
	1. pretendem ( ) ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	2. podem () () $x$ () $x$
	3. querem ( ) ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$

30.	In this unit we are dealing with $-\underline{ar}$ type verbs, whose they-forms end with the unstressed $\underline{\tilde{ao}}$ diphthong. Here are several more examples:
	1. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	2. ( ) ( )x ( )x 3. ( ) ( )x ( )x
31.	And here, finally, is the they-form of a new $-ar$ verb that appears in this unit. It means 'they live'. Notice the open $\underline{O}$ .
	( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
32.	In this unit you are also going to work with $\underline{\text{we-forms}}$ of $\underline{\text{-ar}}$ verbs. Remember that you have already learned the we-forms of several $\underline{\text{-er}}$ verbs.
	1. pretendemos ( )x ( )x
	2. podemos ()x ()x $3$ . queremos ()x ()x
33.	And you know the we-form of 'going'.
	vamos () $x$ () $x$
34.	But here we will be working with $-\underline{ar}$ verbs. Practice these we-forms. Notice the $-\underline{mos}$ ending.
	1. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	2. () ()x ()x
	3. ( ) ( )x ( )x 4. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	5. ( ) ( )x ( )x
35.	This is what they look like in print. Repeat again.
	1. chegamos ()x ()x
	2. falamos ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$ 3. trabalhamos ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	4. visitamos () $x$ () $x$
	5. evitamos () $x$ () $x$

	36.	Here is the we-form of a new $-\underline{ar}$ very Notice the closed $\underline{o}$ .	rb. It mear	ns 'we live'.
		( ) ( ) ( )x ( )x		
	37.	Here it is in print.		
		moramos ()x ()x		
	38.	How would you say 'we talk'?		
(fala	amos)		ify: ( )	1 y ( ) y
(	,	How would you say 'we arrive'?	rry. ( )	/X ( /X
(aho	gamos			
CHE	_	,	ify: ( )	( ) x
		How about 'we avoid'?		
(evit	tamos	Ver:	ify: ( )	х () х
	41.	And 'we work'?		
(tra)	oalhar	nmos) Ver	ify: ( )	x ( )x
	42.	A number of <u>-ar</u> verbs that have the he-form and they-form have the clos and the neutral form. Listen to th with the examples shown below. Rep	ed $o$ in the e tape and f	we-form follow along
		<u>I-form</u> <u>He-form</u> <u>They-form</u>	We-form	Neutral form
		1. gOsto gOsta gOstam	gostamos	gostar
		2. nOto nOta nOtam	notamos	notar
		3. mOro mOra mOram	moramos	morar
	43.	Repeat the following pairs. Be sur between $\underline{O}$ and $\underline{o}$ .	e you are d:	istinguishing
		1. gOstam ( )x gosta	mos ()x	
		2. nOtam ()x notam	os ( )x	
		3. mOram ()x moram	os ( )x	

44.	In an earlier unit you learned that <u>ficar</u> means 'to sta' to remain'. It can have other meanings too. Frequent it takes the place of <u>ser</u> in sentences which give the permanent location of objects. Thus the sentence
	O consulado é no centro
	could also be said
	O consulado fica no centro.
	Repeat: ( ) ( )x ( )x
45.	Using a form of $\underline{\text{ficar}}$ , how would you say 'Recife is in Brazil'?
(Recife f	ica no Brasil.)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
46.	Again, using <u>ficar</u> , how would you ask 'Where is the American Consulate?'
(Onde fic	a o Consulado Americano?)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
47.	And how would you answer that question?

## DIALOG

### Yara

é que

como é que? se sente

<u>Como é que o senhor se sente</u> <u>hoje</u>?

Mr. Clayton

cansado Um pouco cansado.

ainda

resfriado

Ainda estou resfriado.

tired

A little tired.

still, yet

it is that

how is it that?

feel (he-form)

How do you feel today?

cold

I still have a cold.

#### Yara

lógico

É lógico!

chovendo a vez

outra vez

Está chovendo outra vez.

logical

No wonder! (It's logical)

raining

time

again (another time)

It's raining again.

### Mr. Clayton

parece(1)

appears, looks (he-form)

parece que

it appears that, it looks like

chover

rain (neutral form)

o dia todo (2)

all day

E parece que vai chover o dia todo.

And it looks like it's going to rain all day.

horrível

horrible

O tráfego está horrível hoje.

The traffic is terrible today.

## Yara

os senhores

you (masculine plural)

moram

live (they-form)
Where do you live?

Onde os senhores moram?

Mr. Clayton

nós

we

moramos

live (we-form)

Leme

Leme (section of Rio)

Nós moramos no Leme.

We live in Leme.

Yara

longe

far

£ longe?

Is it far?

Mr. Clayton

perto

near

o túnel

tunnel

Não, fica perto do túnel.

No, it's near the tunnel.

<sup>(1)</sup> Notice the open  $\underline{\underline{\mathbf{E}}}$  sound in this verb: par $\underline{\underline{\mathbf{E}}}$ ce.

<sup>(2)</sup> Note that the adjective todo appears after o dia. It is also possible to say todo o dia.

#### A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

#### Practice Exercises

### Part I. They-forms of -ar verbs

## Practice 1. (Recorded)

In the following series you will hear the he-form of a verb, a pause for repetition, then the they-form of the same verb, and again a pause for repetition.

### Practice 2. (Recorded)

Indicate with a check mark in the appropriate column whether you hear a he-form or a they-form.

	He-form	They-form
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.	-	

Answers are at the end of this unit.

## Practice 3. (Recorded)

Listen to these questions and answers containing they-forms. The word for 'they' accompanies the they-form in the questions. In the first four 'they' is feminine; in the second four 'they' is masculine.

**(1-8)** 

## Practice 4. (Recorded)

Answer these questions affirmatively. If you have any doubt as to what the questions are, check below.

- 1. Do they like the view?
- 2. Do they work in the city?
- 3. Do they live in Washington?
- 4. Do they practice a lot?
- 5. Do they get up at seven?
- 6. Do they speak English at home?
- 7. Do they stay here?

## Practice 5. (Recorded)

Ask these questions in Portuguese. Check the tape for confirmation of your response, <u>not</u> for the answers. Let 'they' be masculine in all cases.

- 1. Do they live in Rio?
- 2. Do they like Rio?
- 3. Do they work in Rio?
- 4. Do they speak Portuguese?
- 5. Do they get up late?
- 6. Do they arrive early?
- 7. Do they practice at home?
- 8. Do they stay at the office?

### Part II. We-forms of -ar verbs

## Practice 6: (Recorded)

In this exercise the questionner is asking for information about os senhores (you all), so the answers will be given in the we-form. Listen to the we-form, then repeat it.

(1-8)

## Practice 7: (Recorded)

In this exercise the questionner will ask you and your friend if you do one thing or if you do another. Answer for yourself and your friend in the we-form. Then check the response on the tape.

Example:

- Q. Do you work in Rio or in Recife?
- A. We work in Recife.

On the tape the second choice (the one after 'or') is always given as the response.

(1-8)

## Practice 8:

How would you say the following?

- 1. We get up early every day.
- 2. We live in Leme.
- 3. We like to live there.
- 4. We work in the American Embassy.
- 5. We practice Portuguese in the office.
- 6. We don't notice an accent.
- 7. We don't live far from the city.
- 8. We don't like grammar.
- 9. We don't like to get up early.
- 10. We don't work well together.

## Part III. The conjunction que

### Observation

Notice the word <u>que</u> (meaning 'that') in the sentence <u>Parece</u> <u>que vai chover</u>. Literally the sentence says 'It appears <u>that</u> it's going to rain'. The word <u>que</u> is frequently used to join two clauses together. Another example: <u>Acho que Paulo vai ficar</u> 'I think <u>that</u> Paul is going to stay'. American students sometimes forget to use the <u>que</u> in sentences of this sort since in English we can easily dispense with the word 'that'. We can say with equal facility either

I think that Paul is going to stay

or

I think Paul is going to stay.

In Portuguese, however, the que must be said.

## Practice 9: (Recorded)

Listen to your instructor say a series of sentences, each one of which begins with 'I think that...'. After each number below, write the letter of the sentence on the right which correctly translates what it is that the instructor is thinking. The answers are at the end of the unit.

<ul> <li>b. It's raining again</li> <li>c. They live in Leme.</li> <li>d. They work in Leme.</li> <li>e. I'm going to leave</li> <li>f. I'm going to like</li> <li>g. He's tired.</li> <li>h. He has a cold.</li> </ul>	1.		a.	It's going to rain.
d. They work in Leme.  5 e. I'm going to leave  6 f. I'm going to like  7 g. He's tired.	2.		b.	It's raining again.
5 e. I'm going to leave 6 f. I'm going to like 7 g. He's tired.	3.		c.	They live in Leme.
<ul><li>f. I'm going to like</li><li>g. He's tired.</li></ul>	4.		d.	They work in Leme.
7 g. He's tired.	5.		e.	I'm going to leave.
-	6.	***************************************	f.	I'm going to like her
8 h. He has a cold.	7.		g.	He's tired.
	8.		h.	He has a cold.

## Practice 10: (Recorded)

How would you say the following? Don't forget to put que in each one. Check the tape for confirmation.

- 1. I think she's hungry.
- 2. I think he's married.
- 3. I think he's an American.
- 4. I think he knows Maria.
- 5. I think he works in Washington.
- 6. Do you (o senhor)think she speaks Portuguese?
- 7. Do you think she is married?
- Do you think she has an accent?
- 9. Do you think she has to practice?
- 10. Do you think she plans to stay?
- 11. We think they live near.
- **1**2. We think they speak English.
- **1**3. We think she's married.
- 14. We think she's from Texas.
- 15. We think it's going to rain.

# Practice 11: (Recorded)

The following should all begin with parece que. Check the tape for confirmation.

- It looks like the party is tomorrow.
- It looks like Yara is hungry. 2.
- It looks like Yara knows the city well.
- 4. It looks like Yara speaks well.
- 5. It looks like Yara cannot arrive carry 6. It looks like it is not going to rain today.

#### Part IV. Review

A. Asking questions with <u>é que</u>

## Practice 12: (Recorded)

Practice asking the following questions by inserting  $\underline{e}$   $\underline{que}$  after the interrogative word. Start the questions as indicated. Use o senhor in each.

## a. (Onde é que...?)

- 1. Where do you live?
- 2. Where do you work?
- 3. Where do you practice?
- 4. Where do you stay?
- 5. Where do you plan to stay?
- 6. Where do you plan to be (estar)?
- 7. Where do you want to be?

## b. (Por que é que...?)

- Why do you work in Washington?
- 2. Why do you live in Leme?
- 3. Why do you practice all day?
- 4. Why do you avoid the tunnel?
- 5. Why do you arrive early?
- 6. Why do you want to arrive early?
- 7. Why are you going to arrive early?

## c. (<u>Quando é que</u>...?)

- 1. When do you practice?
- 2. When do you get up?
- 3. When do you arrive?
- 4. When do you plan to arrive?
- 5. When do you want to arrive?
- 6. When do you want to leave?
- 7. When do you have to leave?

## d. (<u>O que é que</u>...?)

- 1. What do you think?
- 2. What do you think of the food?
- 3. What do you think of Rio?
- 4. What do you want?
- 5. What do you want to be (ser)?
- 6. What do you have?
- 7. What do you have to practice?
- 8. What do you like?
- 9. What do you like to eat?

#### B. Contractions with de

The words <u>longe</u> and <u>perto</u> are frequently followed by the preposition <u>de</u>. <u>Longe</u> <u>de</u> is the equivalent of 'far from' and <u>perto</u> <u>de</u> is the equivalent of 'near to'. The <u>de</u> will always form a contraction with definite articles which follow immediately after, and it may form a contraction with indefinite articles.

perto da cidade = near (to) the city

perto <u>dum</u> parque = near (to) a park

longe <u>duma</u> embaixada = far from an embassy

### Practice 13: (Recorded)

Practice saying these short phrases after your tape instructor.

- 1. near the car ()x ()x
- 2. near the avenue ()x ()x
- 3. near the embassies ()x ()x
- 4. near the tunnel ()x ()x
- 5. near a tunnel ()x ()x
- 6. near a city ()x ()x
- 7. near the cities ( )x ( )x
- 8. near some cities ()x ()x
- 9. near Rio ()x ()x

- 10. far from Rio ()x ()x
- 11. far from Brazil ()x ()x
- 12. far from the city ()x ()x
- 13. far from my wife ()x ()x
- 14. far from the children ()x ()x
- 15. far from the Americans ()x ()x
- 16. far from my car ()x ()x
- 17. far from my friends ()x ()x
- 18. far from the embassy ()x ()x

### Comprehension

Listen to the sentences on the tape and make a note of any that are not clear to you.

#### Translations

- A. Prepare these brief exchanges for your instructor.
  - Where do you live? (os senhores)
     We live in Brasilia, near the Embassy.
  - Where do you live?We live in Washington, near the river.
  - 3. Where do they live?
    They live in Rio, near the Consulate.
  - 4. How do you feel now? (o senhor)
    I'm still tired.
  - 5. How do you feel today? Very well. But I'm still a little tired.
  - 6. How do you feel? Not very well. I have a cold.

- 7. How does Bill feel today?

  He's still a little tired.
- 8. Doesn't Bill feel well?
  No, he has a cold.
- 9. Don't you feel well today? No, I have a cold.
- 10. Aren't you going to eat?
   No, I'm not hungry. I'm tired.
- 11. Is it going to rain today?
  Yes, it is.
- 12. Is it going to rain all day today?
  Yes, it is. The traffic is going to be (estar) terrible.
- 13. How long have you lived here?
  I have lived here for six weeks.
- 14. How long have you worked in the Embassy? I have worked here for only five days.
- 15. Do you still live in Brasilia? (os senhores)
  Yes, we do.
- 16. Do you still work in São Paulo? (os senhores)
  Yes, we do.
- 17. Do you still speak Spanish? (você)
  Yes, I do. And it still gets in the way.
- 18. Is the Embassy near? (use <u>fica</u>) No, it's far.

- 19. We can talk in my office.
   Is it near? (use <u>fica</u>)
   Yes, it is.
- 20. She lives in Leme.
   Is it far from the Consulate? (use <u>fica</u>)
   Yes, it is.
- 21. He lives far from the office. Really? Where does he live? In Copacabana.
- 22. I'm very tired today.

  Really? Why don't you stay home? (use <u>é que</u>)
- 23. I'm real hungry. When are we going to eat? (use <u>é que</u>)
  We can eat now, if you want to.
- 24. I like Rio very much.

  Why don't you stay here? (use <u>é que</u>)

  I can't. I work in Brasilia.

- B. Prepare these brief dialogs for display to your instructor.
  - 1. A. How do you feel today?
    - B. I'm still a little tired.
    - A. Are you going to work all day?
    - B. No, I'm not (going to). I'm going to leave early.
    - A. Do you still have a cold?
    - B. Yes, I do. (estou)
      [I've had it] for a week.
  - 2. A. Do you (pl.) live in Washington?
    - B. No, we live in Virginia.
    - A. Near the river?
    - B. No, near the city of Falls Church.
    - A. Do you like to live there?
    - B. Yes, we do. But it's (fica) far from the office.
  - 3. A. How's the traffic today? (Use que tal)
    - B. Terrible! It's raining again.
    - A. And it looks like it's going to rain tomorrow, too.
    - B. Of course! The party is tomorrow!

Answers to Practice 2: He-form: 1, 4, 7, 8
They-form: 2, 3, 5, 6, 9, 10
Answers to Practice 9: 1-e, 2-g, 3-f, 4-b, 5-a, 6-h, 7-c, 8-d

# UNIT 14

1.	Here again	is .	a familiar nasal diphthong.
			( )x ( )x
2.	It appears	in '	two new words in this unit.
		1.	( ) ( )x ( )x
		2.	( ) ( )x ( )x
3.	Recall the	non	-nasal diphthong in solteiro.
		1.	<u>ei</u> ( )x ( )x
		2.	solt <u>ei</u> ro ()x ()x
		3.	(again) <u>ei</u> ( )x ( )x
4.	Now try the diphthong.	ese He	words, all of which end with the same <u>ei</u> re, however, it is stressed.
		1.	( ) ( )x ( )x
		2.	( ) ( )x ( )x
		3.	( ) ( )x ( )x
5•	<pre>-ar verbs, transformed this stress</pre>	as d in sed	sed <u>ei</u> diphthong is added to the stem of in the examples just given, the verb is to the <u>PAST TENSE</u> of the I-form. That is, <u>ei</u> diphthong signals to the listener that <u>d</u> something in the <u>PAST</u> .
	Thus:	1.	$()x ()x = I \text{ talked } (\underline{past})$
		2.	()x ()x = I worked $(\underline{past})$
		3.	()x ()x = I visited ( $\underline{past}$ )
6.	This is what listen and		he last three words look like. Look, eat.
		1.	<pre>falei ( )x ( )x</pre>
		2.	<u>trabalhei</u> ()x ()x
		3.	<u>visitei</u> ( )x ( )x
			14 1

7.	This is the way you say 'I got up'.	
	( ) ( )x ( )x	
8.	Write it in this space. [ ]	
(levante:	i)	
9.	How do you say 'I lived'?	
	Verify: ( )x ( )x	
10.	How do you say 'I liked'?	
	Verify: ( )x ( )x	
11.	'I avoided' would be?	
	Verify: ( )x ( )x	
12.	What does this word mean?	
	( ) ( )	
(I arrived)		
13.	What does this word mean?	
	( ) ( )	
(I staye	d)	
14.	And this one?	
	( ) ( )	
15.	Here is the neutral form of the verb 'study': estudar.	
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	
<b>1</b> 6.	How would you say 'I studied'?	
	Verify: ( )x ( )x	
17.	And here is the neutral form of the verb 'pass': passar.	
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	

18. So, how would you say 'I passed'?

	Verify: $()x ()x$
19	Repeat 'I studied' and 'I passed'.
	1. ( )x ( )x 2. ( )x ( )x
20.	What does this word mean? Be careful!
	( ) ( )
(I stud	dy: present tense)
21	The distinction between present tense and past tense is just as essential in Portuguese as it is in English. In the case of most Portuguese verbs this distinction is maintained by means of the verb endings.
22	Which of these verbs is present tense, No. 1 or No. 2?
	(1) (2) (1) (2)
(1)	
23	Which two of these verbs are past tense?
	(1) (2) (3) (4) (1) (2) (3) (4)
(2,4)	
24.	The present and past endings have different vowel sounds, and they have different stresses, too. The $\underline{ei}$ of $\underline{falei}$ is stressed; the $\underline{o}$ of $\underline{falo}$ is not stressed.
	(falei) (falo) (falei) (falo)
25.	The past tense of the he-form of an $-ar$ verb is signalled by another diphthong: $\underline{ou}$ . Recall this diphthong in these familiar words.
	1. <u>sou</u> ()x ()x 2. <u>pouco</u> ()x ()x
26.	Try the diphthong by itself this time.
	<u>ou</u> ( )x ( )x ( )x

	<i>ح</i> ۱•	stress it.
		1. <u>falou</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x
		2. $\underline{\text{chegou}}$ () ()x ()x
		3. $\underline{\text{trabalhou}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x
		4. $\underline{achou}$ () ()x ()x
	28.	This stressed ou signals that 'he (she, you) did something', in the past. Thus chegou would be the form you would use to express 'he arrived', 'she arrived' and 'you arrived'. As always the native speaker will use a noun or pronoun if the identity of the actor is not already clear. He may say ele chegou, Yara chegou, etc.
	29.	What does this mean in English?
		( ) ( )
(he	got	up)
	30.	What does this mean?
		( ) ( )
(you lived)		
	31.	And this?
		( ) ( )
(she	e avo	ided)
	32.	How would you say 'she visited'? Use the pronoun.
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
	33.	How would you say 'she talked'?
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
	34.	How about 'he stayed'? Use the pronoun.
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
	35.	And 'he practiced?
		Verify: ()x ()x

	30.	Here is you noticed;
		( )x ( )x
	37.	How would you say 'you studied'? Use the pronoun.
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
	38.	How would you say 'you passed'?
		Verify: ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	39.	Here is another new $-\underline{ar}$ verb: the neutral form of 'prepare'.
		( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
	40.	Here is 'he prepared'
		( )x ( )x
	41.	What does this mean?
		( ) ( )
(I	prepar	ed)
	42.	The past tense verb forms that you have just been practicing all fall into regular, predictable patterns. In the dialog of this unit you will find several past tense forms that do not seem to follow a pattern. They are said to be <u>irregular</u> .

43. For example, here is the past tense of the I-form of 'going', that is, 'I went'.

44. And here is the past tense of the he-form of 'going', that is, 'he went'.

45. Listen to them side by side.

(I went) (he went) (I went) (he went)

46. Now repeat.

(I went)x (he went)x (I went)x (he went)x

	47.	Which one is this?
		( ) ( )
(he	went	)
	48.	Which one is 'I went'?
		(1) (2) (1) (2)
(2)		
	49.	The past tense of the verb 'have' is also irregular in the past. Here is the I-form ('I had').
		( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
	50.	Now listen to the he-form ('he had'). Do not repeat yet.
		( ) ( ) ( )
	51.	Here are the he-form and the I-form, one after the other. Observe that it is the first vowel, not the final one, that distinguishes them.
		(I had) (he had) (I had) (he had)
	52.	Now repeat the he-form.
		he had ( ) $\mathbf{x}$ ( ) $\mathbf{x}$
	53.	Now repeat the he-form and the I-form.
		he had ( )x I had ( )x he had ( )x I had ( )x
	54.	You will remember that in the present tense you must insert the word <u>que</u> between a form of 'having' and a neutral form. Thus you have learned to say, for example, <u>Tenho que ficar</u> 'I have to stay'. This same <u>que</u> must again be inserted when you are dealing with the past tense. Therefore, 'I had to stay' is said as follows:
		a. ( ) ( )
		Likewise, 'He had to stay' is said as follows:
		b. ( ) ( )
	55.	Repeat 'I had to stay'.
		( ) ( )x ( )x

56. Now repeat 'He had to stay'.	
( ) ( )x ( )x	
57. What does this sentence mean in English?	
( ) ( )	
(He had to leave)	
58. What does this sentence mean?	
( ) ( )	
(I had to leave)	
59. What does this one mean?	
( ) ( )	
(I had to work)	
60. And this one?	
( ) ( )	
(He had to work)	
(For items $61-64$ check the tape for confirmation <u>a</u> making your response aloud).	<u>fter</u>
61. How would you say 'I had to work'?	
( ) ( )	
62. How would you say 'I had to practice'?	
( ) ( )	
63. How would you say 'He had to practice'?	
( ) ( )	
64. And finally how would you say 'He had to talk'?	
( ) ( )	

65.	In this unit you will meet two more obligatory contractions. When the preposition $\underline{a}$ ('to', 'at') is followed by a definite article ('the'), the two items always combine to form a contraction. Thus, for example:
	$\underline{a} + \underline{o}$ contracts to $\underline{ao}$ .
66.	Listen to <u>ao</u> , then repeat.
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
67.	Here is the way to say 'to the tunnel'.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
68.	Here is 'to the office'.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
69.	This is 'to the downtown'.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
70.	How would you say 'to the park'?
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
71.	How would you say 'to (the) Rio'?
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
72.	When $\underline{a}$ is followed by the feminine definite article $\underline{a}$ , the resulting contraction is simply a slight lengthening of the $\underline{a}$ sound. In normal speech this is sometimes very difficult to hear. The contraction is written with just one $\underline{a}$ , over which is placed a grave accent ( ). Thus:
	$\underline{a}$ ('to') + $\underline{a}$ ('the') = $\underline{a}$ ('to the')
73.	Here is the way to say 'to the city'. (Lengthen the $\underline{a}$ sound just a bit.)
	( ) ( )× ( )× ( )×
74.	Here is 'to the party'.
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
75.	This is 'to my wife'.
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x

76. How would you say 'to the room'?

Verify: ()x()x

77. How would you say 'to the Embassy'?

Verify: ()x()x

78. Here is 'in the afternoon', Literally, 'at the afternoon'.

( ) ( )x ( )x

#### Observation

We are coming to another contraction, one which occurs much less frequently than the others you already know. It is the sequence 'in it', or 'on it'. First of all, let us explain that after a preposition ('in', 'at', 'for', 'to', etc.) the word 'it' assumes either a masculine form  $(\underline{ele})$  or a feminine form  $(\underline{ela})$ , thereby reflecting the gender of the item being talked about. When the preposition is  $\underline{em}$ , a contraction always results.

$$\underline{\text{Em}}$$
 +  $\underline{\text{ele}}$  =  $\underline{\text{nele}}$  on it (masc.)  
 $\underline{\text{Em}}$  +  $\underline{\text{ela}}$  =  $\underline{\text{nela}}$  on it (fem.)

79. Here, then, is <u>nela</u>. (Notice the open  $\underline{\mathbf{E}}$  sound.)

( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x

80. And here is  $\underline{\text{nele}}$ . (There is no open  $\underline{\text{E}}$  sound.)

( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x

81. Is this item referring to something masculine or something feminine?

()()

(masc.)

82. Which of these items refers to something feminine?

**(1) (2) (3) (1) (2) (3)** 

(1)

83.	And here, on paper only, are two English words, the Portuguese counterparts of which appear for the first time in this unit. We want to remind you of where these English words are stressed, and we have done so by writing a stress mark over the stressed vowels. Say these words to yourself.
	<ol> <li>díalog</li> <li>dífficult.</li> </ol>
84.	Now listen to the Portuguese counterparts.
	1. () () 2. () ()
85•	Here they are again. Listen, then with your pencil write a stress mark over the stressed vowel of each. Don't repeat yet.
	l. ( ) ( ) dialogo
	2. ( ) ( ) dificil
(diálogo) (difícil)	
86.	Now continuing to be mindful of the stress, repeat these two words as indicated.
	1. ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
	2. ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x

# Dialog

o professor, a professora teacher o aluno student

# O professor

fazer do, make (neutral form) a tarde afternoon

à tarde in the afternoon hoje à tarde this afternoon

O que é que o senhor vai

Mhat are you going to do
this afternoon?

estudar study (neutral form)
a lição lesson
treze thirteen

#### O aluno

<u>Vou estudar a lição treze.</u>

<u>I'm going to study lesson thirteen.</u>

estudou studied (he-form: past)
ontem yesterday

# O professor

O senhor não estudou ontem?

Didn't you study [it]
yesterday?

studied (I-form: past) estudei twelve doze a doze the [lesson] twelve O aluno Não. Estudei a doze. No. I studied number twelve. tão so difícil difficult E é tão difícil! And it's so difficult! spent (I-form: past) passei a hora hour nela on it [i.e., the lesson Passei três horas nela. I spent three hours on it. Nossa! Gosh! \* então then foi went (He-form: past) ao to the ao cinema to the movies 0 professor Gosh! Then you didn't go Nossa! Então o senhor não foi ao cinema com os outros. to the movies with the others. fui went (I-form: past) stayed (I-form: past) fiquei

<sup>\*</sup>Literally, short for Nossa Senhora! (Our Lady!), a mild oath.

### O aluno

Não, não fui. Fiquei em casa.

•

tive preparar

tive que preparar

o diálogo

Tive que preparar os diálogos.

No, I didn't go. I stayed at home.

had (I-form: past)
prepare (neutral form)
I had to prepare
dialog

<u>I had to prepare the dialogs</u>.

#### A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

#### Practice Exercises

#### Part I. Past tense of -ar verbs

## Practice 1: (Recorded)

Listen to these I-forms of -ar verbs in the past. In each case the instructor is saying 'I did something.' Repeat after him. The pronoun for 'I' is deliberately omitted.

1.	studied	7.	avoided
2.	spoke	8.	visited
3.	practiced	9.	arrived
4.	noticed	10.	worked
5.	liked	11.	passed
6.	got up	12.	prepared

# Practice 2: (Recorded)

Now listen to these he-forms of <u>-ar</u> verbs in the past. In each case the instructor is saying that 'somebody else' did something. However, 'somebody else' remains nameless for the sake of this practice. Repeat each one.

1.	studied	7.	avoided
2.	spoke	8.	visited
3.	practiced	9.	arrived
4.	noticed	10.	worked
5.	liked	11.	passed
6.	got up	12.	prepared

# Practice 3: (Recorded)

In this practice you are to determine whether the instructor is saying 'I did something' or 'he did something'. You have only the verb endings to guide you. Mark your choice in the appropriate column in the chart below. Answers are at the end of this unit.

	' <u>I</u> did'	' <u>He</u> did'
1		
2	1	
3_		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		
12		
13		
14		

## Practice 4: (Recorded)

Determine which of these forms say 'he <u>did</u> something' (past) and which ones say 'I <u>do</u> something' (present). Mark the chart accordingly.

	He <u>did</u>	'I <u>do</u> '
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		
11		
12		
13		
14		

### Practice 5: (Recorded)

In this practice you will again hear your instructor mix I-forms and he-forms at random, but this time he is putting them all in the <u>past</u>. Furthermore, he is preceding each one with a noun or pronoun. Listen, and repeat each one.

(1-24)x

### Practice 6: (Recorded)

The English voice on the tape will ask you to give certain information about yourself, and you are to give it immediately afterwards in the pause provided. For example, in No. 1. the English voice will say, 'Tell me that you arrived', and you will answer in Portuguese, 'I arrived'. Use the pronoun eu in your response. The correct response appears on the tape.

(1-12)

### Practice 7: (Recorded)

This time the English voice will ask you to tell what <u>others</u> did, and you are to respond as directed, using nouns and pronouns as appropriate. For example, if the English voice says, 'Tell me that Yara arrived', you will respond in Portuguese, 'Yara arrived'. The correct response appears on the tape.

(1-14)

# Practice 8: (Recorded)

Instructor A will ask Instructor B if he (Instructor B) did something, and Instructor B will answer either that he did or that he did not. Just listen; do not repeat.

**(1-**8)

# Practice 9: (Recorded)

This time instructor A will ask <u>you</u> if <u>you</u> did something. Answer affirmatively in numbers 1-6; answer negatively in numbers 7-12. You will then hear your response confirmed. (Note: instructor A is using <u>o senhor</u> in his questions. If you are female, you should mentally convert this to <u>a senhora</u>.)

#### Practice 10: (Recorded)

In this exercise instructor A will ask instructor B if somebody else did something, and instructor B will answer either affirmatively or negatively. Just listen; do not repeat.

(1-8)

### Practice 11: (Recorded)

In this exercise the instructor will ask you if somebody else did something, and you should reply, affirmatively in 1-6, and negatively in 7-12. You will hear your answer confirmed.

### Practice 12: (Recorded)

In this exercise you are to ask the questions, rather than give the answers. Using O senhor, practice asking the following questions. (The questions, not the answers, are recorded on the tape. Check them to confirm your response.)

- Did you study? 1.
- 2. Did you work?
- 3. Did you practice?
- 4. Did you get up?
- 5. Did you like [it]?\*
  6. Did you notice [it]?\*
- 7. Did you speak Portuguese?
- 8. Did you avoid the traffic?
- 9. Did you visit Paul?
- 10. Did you arrive yesterday?
- 11. Did you prepare the dialog?
- 12. Did you spend three hours?

#### Practice 13: (Recorded)

In this exercise you are to ask the questions about another person, either Yara or Paulo, as indicated. Again, you should confirm your question by checking with the tape.

- Did Yara get up?
- 2. Did Yara get up at seven?
- 3. Did Yara practice?
- $\overline{4}$ . Did Yara practice the dialog?
- Did Paul study?
- Did Paul study (the) lesson thirteen?

<sup>\*</sup>Do not try to put 'it' into Portuguese.

7. Did Paul work?

8. Did Paul work yesterday?

9. Did Paul work this afternoon?

10. Did Yara prepare?

11. Did Yara prepare well?

12. Did Yara arrive?

13. Did Yara arrive early?

14. Did Yara speak English?

15. Did Yara speak English with you?
16. Did Yara spend (pass) the day with you?

## Practice 14: (Recorded)

This exercise contrasts the past tense with the future construction that you have learned. Below you will find a list of 'actions'. In each case you are to say that Paulo didn't do the action yesterday but that he is going to do it today. Number 1, for example, would be as follows:

O Paulo não estudou ontem, mas ele vai estudar hoje. (Paul didn't study yesterday, but he's going to study today.)

Check your answer with the tape.

study 1.

5. prepare the dialog

2. work

6. get up early

practice

7. speak Portuguese

arrive

Part II: Past tense of 'having'

## Practice 15: (Recorded)

On the tape you will hear your instructor say 'I had to work', then 'I had to practice', then a number of other actions that he had to perform and indeed did perform. Repeat each short phrase after him, imagining that you yourself had to perform the action and did so. Observe the word que preceding the neutral form.

(1-9)x

# <u>Practice 16</u>: (Recorded)

This time you will hear your instructor say that somebody else (whose name is omitted here) had to perform a number of actions. As before, repeat each short phrase.

$$(1-9)x$$

### Practice 17: (Recorded)

In this practice Instructor A will ask Instructor B if he (Instructor B) had to do something, and B will answer either that he had to or that he did not have to. Notice that Instructor B does not need to repeat the neutral form in his answer. Just listen.

**(1-8)** 

### Practice 18: (Recorded)

This time Instructor A's questions are directed at <u>you</u>, (and he is using the familiar <u>você!</u>) Answer affirmatively, then check your response with the tape.

**(1-8)** 

# Practice 19: (Recorded)

Listen to the tape. An English voice will instruct you to say that you had to do such-and-such. Make your response, then check with the tape for confirmation.

(1-7)

# Practice 20: (Recorded)

This time the English voice will instruct you to say that somebody else had to do something. Again, make your response and confirm with the tape.

(1-7)

# Practice 21: (Recorded)

Now <u>ask the questions</u> which are requested by the voice on the tape. After responding, check the tape for confirmation. (Use você in numbers 1-5).

(1-9)

#### Part III: More obligatory contractions with a

#### Practice 22: (Recorded)

Practice repeating these contractions.

- A.  $\underline{a} + \underline{o} = \underline{ao}$  Usual English equivalent is 'to the, at the'.
  - 1. ao Rio: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 2. ao centro: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 3. ao parque: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 4. ao túnel: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 5. ao Brasil: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 6. ao Carlos: () ()x ()x
  - 7. ao cinema: () ()x ()x
- B.  $\underline{a} + \underline{a} = \underline{a}$  Usual equivalent is 'to the, at the'.
  - 1. à avenida: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 2. à festa: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 3. **à** embaixada: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 4. a mesa: () ()x ()x
  - 5. à cidade: ( ) ( )x ( )x
  - 6. a = ( ) ( ) x ( ) x

# Practice 23: (Recorded)

Listen to these brief questions and answers as spoken by two instructors on the tape. Do not repeat.

(1-7)

# Practice 24: (Recorded)

How would you say these short utterances?

- 1. I'm going to the party.
- 2. I'm going to the movies.
- 3. I'm going to (the) Rio.
- 4. He's going to the embassy.

- 5. He's going to (the) Brazil.
- 6. He's going to the park.
  7. He's going to the city.
- 8. Are you going to the other room? (Use o senhor.)
- 9. Are you going to the city?
- 10. Are you going to the office?

Part IV: Past tense of 'going'

#### Practice 25: (Recorded)

Your tape instructor will say a series of sentences beginning with 'I went'. Repeat each one after him.

$$(1-10)x$$

## Practice 26: (Recorded)

In this series the instructor tells you that 'somebody else went'. Repeat after him.

$$(1-10)x$$

# Practice 27: (Recorded)

Listen to these brief questions and answers. Do not repeat.

# Practice 28: (Recorded)

In this exercise the voice on the tape requests that you ask him a number of questions. Do so, then check the tape for confirmation of your questions. Use <u>você</u> for 'you'.

### Practice 29: (Recorded)

In this exercise you are to answer the questions you hear on the tape. Answer 1-5 affirmatively, 6-10 negatively. The answers are recorded for you.

Part V: More on the conjunction que.

In the last unit you practiced using the conjunction  $\underline{que}$  ('that') in such sentences as these:

Acho <u>que</u> vai chover.

(I think that it's going to rain.)

Parece que vai chover.

(It seems that it's going to rain.)

Now, you will see that you will also have frequent occasions to use the  $\underline{que}$  after various forms of the verb  $\underline{falar}$ .

Ele fala que vai chover.

(He says that it's going to rain.)

Ele falou <u>que</u> estudou muito.

(He said that he studied a lot.)

In such instances it is best to think of <u>falar</u> as meaning 'to say', rather than 'to speak' or 'to talk'.

### Practice 30: (Recorded)

Listen to these short sentences, all of which begin with <u>Elefala que</u> (He says that). Repeat each one.

(1-11)x

#### Practice 31: (Recorded)

All of these sentences begin with <u>Ele falou que</u> (He said that). Repeat each one.

(1-11)x

#### Practice 32: (Recorded)

All of these sentences begin with <u>Eu falei que</u> (I said that). Repeat each one.

(1-10)x

#### Practice 33: (Recorded)

In this practice you will hear instructor A ask instructor B, 'Did you say that you did such-and-such?' Instructor B will answer either, 'I said so', or 'I didn't say so'. Listen to both the questions and the answers, and repeat only the answers.

$$(1-7)$$

#### Comprehension

Listen to these sentences on the tape and make a note of any that you do not fully understand.

#### Translations

- A. Say these thoughts in Portuguese. They form a simple narrative.
  - 1. Yesterday I prepared lesson twelve.
  - 2. I also had to prepare lesson eleven.
  - 3. I had to work all day; I didn't go to the movies.
  - 4. Today I'm going to prepare lesson thirteen.
  - 5. It looks like (parece que) I'm going to work all day today, too.
  - 6. I had to spend two hours on the dialog yesterday.
  - But the dialog of lesson thirteen doesn't seem so difficult.
  - 8. Gosh! It's raining again!
  - 9. And it looks like it's going to rain this afternoon too.
  - 10. I like to study when it's raining.
  - 11. I intend to study a lot.
  - 12. I'm going to Brazil, and in Brazil I have to speak Portuguese.
  - 13. I never (nunca) lived in Brazil.
  - 14. But my teacher lived in Brazil.
  - 15. She is from Rio; she knows the city well.
  - 16. She says (fala) that Rio is a marvelous city.
  - 17. And it really is!
  - 18. She says that she likes to live in Rio.
  - 19. I am going to like [it] too.
  - 20. I'm tired! I practiced Portuguese all morning (toda a manhã).
  - 21. But what am I going to do?
  - 22. I'm going to stay until 4:00.
  - 23. The teacher is tired too. She worked all morning, too.
  - 24. And what is she going to do?
  - 25. She's going to work until 5:00.
  - 26. She speaks English very well, without [an] accent.

- B. Now relate this little story about your classmate, Bill, in Portuguese.
  - 1. Bill had a good day today.
  - 2. He got up early—at 5:00.
  - 3. He arrived here at 7:00 and studied until 9:00.
  - 4. The teacher worked with him from nine until ten.
  - 5. He prepared another (outra) lesson and the teacher worked with him again at 2:00.
  - 6. He had to leave at 3:00.
  - 7. He went to visit some friends in Baltimore.
  - 8. He's going to stay in Baltimore three days.
- C. Prepare these two brief dialogs with one of your classmates for presentation to your instructor. One of them is given to you in Portuguese.
  - 1. A. Aren't you going to study this afternoon?
    - 3. No. I'm tired. I'm going to the movies.
    - A. When are you going to prepare the lesson?
    - B. I prepared [it] yesterday.
    - A. Is it difficult?
    - B. A little. I had to spend an hour on the dialog.
  - 2. A. O senhor está resfriado?
    - B. Não, não estou. Estou cansado só.
    - A. Tem que trabalhar hoje?
    - B. Tenho. E ontem trabalhei dez horas.
    - A. Dez horas!? Nossa! Quando chegou em casa?
    - B. As oito.

Practice 3: He: 1, 3, 4, 7, 8, 9, 12, 14 I: 2, 5, 6, 10, 11, 13

Practice 4: He did: 1, 3, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14 I do: 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 11, 13

1. Recall the  $\underline{R}$  sound in these words from past units.

# UNIT 15

	a. $senho\underline{R}$ ()x ()x
	b. $faze \underline{R}$ ( )x ( )x
	c. $po\underline{R}que$ ()x ()x
	d. $peRto$ ( )x ( )x
	e. $ta\underline{R}de$ ()x ()x
2.	Now here are several words from this unit which have the $\underline{R}$ sound. Listen, then repeat.
	a. $poRta$ ( ) ( ) ( )x ( )x
	b. $calo R$ ( ) ( ) ( )x ( )x
	c. $veR$ ( ) ( ) x ( )x
	d. inte $\underline{R}$ valo ( ) ( ) x ( )x
3.	Now, recall these words, all of which have a $\underline{t}$ sound followed by an $\underline{i}$ sound.
	a. presiden <u>te</u> ( )x ( )x
	b. $sen\underline{te}$ ( )x ( )x
	c. igualmen <u>te</u> ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
4.	These three words can also be pronounced differently, by giving the $\underline{t}$ a $\underline{ch}$ -type quality.
	a. presiden <u>te</u> ( )x ( )x
	b. sente ()x()x
	c. igualmen <u>te</u> ( )x ( )x
5.	Here are two new words from the present unit which have this same feature of pronunciation. First, practice pronouncing them this way:
	a. frente ( ) ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	b. restauran <u>te</u> ( ) ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$

6.	Now, practice pronouncing them this way:
	a. fren <u>te</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x
	b. restaurante ( ) ( )x ( )x
7.	The second word above ( <u>restaurante</u> ) is sometimes difficult for English speakers. Try practicing it syllable by syllable.
	a. res ( )x ( )x
	b. tau ( ) $\mathbf{x}$ ( ) $\mathbf{x}$
	c. restau ( )x ( )x
	d. ran ( )x ( )x
	e. restauran ( )x ( )x
	f. restaurante ( )x ( )x
	Which vowel is the stressed vowel? Underline it. restaurante ( ) ( )
(restaur <u>s</u>	ante)
9.	Notice the diphthong <u>au</u> in the syllable <u>tau</u> .
	restau- ( )x ( )x
10.	Now do the whole word again.
	restaurante: ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
11.	Here is a familiar <u>nasal</u> diphthong.
	ão: ( )x ( )x
12.	Recall it in these words:
	a. Stressed,  1. <u>não</u> ( )x ( )x  2. <u>vão</u> ( )x ( )x  3. <u>então</u> ( )x ( )x  4. <u>lição</u> ( )x ( )x

Unstressed (spelled <u>am</u>)

b.

	1. <u>moram</u> ( )x 2. <u>trabalham</u> ( 3. <u>ficam</u> ( )x	)x ( )x
13.	(spelled <u>am</u> ) signals	, the unstressed $\underline{\tilde{a}o}$ diphthong the they-form of $-\underline{ar}$ verbs in ther familiar examples of this
	<pre>praticam ( )x</pre>	
	$\frac{\text{estudam}}{\text{preparam}}  (\ )x$	( )x ( )x
<b>1</b> 4.	This same unstressed the ending which sign	<u>ão</u> diphthong is also part of als the they-form of <u>-ar</u> verbs ompare these present and past
	Present	<u>Past</u>
	a. <u>estudam</u> ( )	<u>estudaram</u> ( )
	b. <u>falam</u> ( )	falaram ( )
	c. <u>ficam</u> ( )	ficaram ( )
	d. <u>trabalham</u> ( )	<u>trabalharam</u> ( )
15.	they-form of -ar verb syllable (-a-) is str	ar, the ending which signals the s in the past is -aram. The first essed; the second syllable (-ram) familiar unstressed ao diphthong f the second syllable. Now, repeating.
	- <u>aram</u> ( ) ( )x	( )x ( )x
16.	The $\underline{r}$ in the ending i etc. Repeat this sec	s the single-flap <u>r</u> of <u>Yara, Maria</u> , uence:
	a. <u>Yara</u> ( )x ( )x b. <u>-aram</u> ( )x ( )x	( )×
	1	5 3

17. Now try this sequence.

	a. $-\underline{aram}$ ( )x ( )x b. $\underline{falaram}$ ( )x ( )x : they spoke
18.	And this sequence.  aaram ()x ()x  b. estudaram ()x ()x : they studied  c. ficaram ()x ()x : they stayed  d. trabalharam ()x ()x : they worked
19.	Here is 'they practiced'.  ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
20.	Here is 'they prepared'.  ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
21.	How would you say 'they lived'?  Verify: ()x ()x
22.	How would you say 'they passed'?  Verify: ( )x ( )x
23.	Remember that the they-form is also used when 'you' (plural) is the actor. Therefore, what is the form for 'you (all) arrived'?  Verify: ()x ()x
24.	How would you say 'you (all) got up'?  Verify: ()x ()x
25.	This unit also deals with the we-form of -ar verbs in the past. Fortunately, it is the same as the present tense form, which you already know. Listen to these we-forms of -ar verbs in the present and past tenses. You will not hear any difference between present and past.

1. a. (<u>chegamos</u>): we arrive b. (<u>chegamos</u>): we arrived

3. a. (<u>trabalhamos</u>): we work b. (<u>trabalhamos</u>): we worked

2. a. (<u>falamos</u>): we speak b. (<u>falamos</u>): we spoke

	4. a. $(\underline{moramos})$ : we live b. $(\underline{moramos})$ : we lived
26.	They sound the same. How do Portuguese speakers (and <u>you</u> ) know which one has been said? The total context in which an utterance is said usually makes it clear which meaning is intended. Accompanying words such as <u>ontem</u> (yesterday) and <u>hoje</u> (today) will often provide unmistakeable clues as to which one the speaker has in mind.
27.	Repeat these we-forms in the past tense.
	$\underline{\mathtt{chegamos}}$ ()x ()x
	<pre>praticamos ( )x ( )x</pre>
	$\underline{\text{ficamos}}$ ()x ()x
	$\underline{\text{moramos}}$ ()x ()x
	<u>preparamos</u> ()x ()x
28.	Here is the we-form (past tense) of a new -ar verb in this unit. It means 'we took'.
	<u>tomamos</u> ( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
29.	How would you say 'we take'?
	Verify: $()x ()x$
30.	How would you say the neutral form?
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
31.	Here is the <u>present</u> tense, we-form, of another new <u>-ar</u> verb. It means 'we eat lunch'.
	$\underline{almoçamos}$ ( ) ( ) ( )x ( )x
32.	Since you know how to say 'we <u>eat</u> lunch', you also know how to say 'we <u>ate</u> lunch'. What is the form?
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
	15.5

33.	What is the neutral form?
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
34.	'We ate dinner', or 'we dined', is:
	<u>jantamos</u> ( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
35.	The present tense form, i. e., 'we $\underline{\text{eat}}$ dinner', is therefore:
	<u>jantamos</u> ( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
36.	What is the neutral form?
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
37.	Recall from the previous unit the I-form and the he-form of 'go', in the past tense. Repeat.
	I went: $\underline{fui}$ ( )x ( )x he went: $\underline{foi}$ ( )x ( )x
38.	Here is the they-form; i.e., 'they went'.
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
39.	Again, notice the presence of the $\underline{\tilde{a}o}$ diphthong in the ending.
	( )x ( )x
40.	Here is the we-form; i.e., 'we went'.
	( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
41.	Now, here are all four forms together.
	I went: $\underline{\text{fui}}$ ( )x ( )x
	he went: <u>foi</u> ()x ()x
	we went: fomos ()x ()x
	they went: <u>foram</u> ()x ()x

42.	You will also recall from the last unit the irregular forms for 'I had' and 'he had'. Repeat.
	I had: $\underline{\text{tive}}$ ( )x ( )x he had: $\underline{\text{teve}}$ ( )x ( )x
43.	In this unit you will work with the forms for 'they had and 'we had'. Here is 'they had'.
	( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
44.	Again, notice the unstressed $\underline{\tilde{ao}}$ diphthong in the ending ( )x ( )x ( )x
45.	Here, now, is the we-form; i.e., 'we had'.
	( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
46.	Now review all four forms together.
	I had: <u>tive</u> ( )x ( )x he had: <u>teve</u> ( )x ( )x we had: <u>tivemos</u> ( )x ( )x they had: <u>tiveram</u> ( )x ( )x
47.	Here is the neutral form of the verb 'open'. It is an - <u>ir</u> verb. Listen and repeat.  ( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
48.	Here is the we-form, present tense.
	( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
49.	Notice the $\underline{i}$ sound in the ending. It is a sure clue that the verb form is an $-\underline{ir}$ type verb.
	abrinos ( )x ( )x ( )x
50.	You have had the neutral form of 'leaving' $\cdot$ i.e., sair. Now listen to 'we leave', and repeat.
	( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x

51.

else.

In another unit we will deal with  $-\underline{\text{ir}}$  type verbs in more detail. Right now, let us turn our attention to something

52. You remember how you say the 'good' of the greeting, 'good

	day'.
	a. <u>bom</u> ()x ()x b. <u>bom</u> <u>dia</u> ()x ()x
53.	Bom is the masculine form of 'good'. Since the word for 'day' is masculine, the accompanying adjective 'good' must also be masculine. This is another example of gender agreement.
54.	Recall also the greeting 'good afternoon.'
	<u>boa</u> <u>tarde</u> ( )x ( )x
55.	Repeat just 'good'.
	$\underline{boa}$ ( )x ( )x
56.	This is the feminine form. Since <u>tarde</u> is feminine, the accompanying adjective 'good' must also be feminine. Observe and repeat.
	$\underline{boa} \ \underline{tarde} \ (\ ) \ (\ ) x \ (\ ) x$
57.	Recall also the word for 'night' or 'evening.'
	$\underline{\text{noite}}$ ( )x ( )x ( )x
58.	It is feminine too. Thus, 'good evening' or 'good night' is said like this, you will recall.
	<pre>boa noite ( )x ( )x</pre>
59.	Repeat again.
	$\underline{\text{boa}} \ \underline{\text{noite}} \ \ (\ )x \ \ (\ )x$
60.	Listen to this diphthong.
	(Ei) (Ei)
	15.8

61.	It is different from this diphthong.
	(ei) (ei)
62.	It is different because it has the open $\underline{E}$ sound, not the closed $\underline{e}$ sound which you hear in $\underline{ei}$ . Listen and mimic as accurately as you can.
	<u>Ei</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
63.	Here is the word for 'idea'. Listen for the $\underline{\text{Ei}}$ diphthong.
	id <u>Éi</u> a ( ) ( ) ( )
64.	Now repeat.
	id <u>Éi</u> a ( )x ( )x ( )x
65.	You already know the I-form and the he-form of the neutral form $\underline{\text{ser}}.$
	a. <u>sou</u> ()x ()x b. <u>é</u> ()x ()x
66.	In this unit you will practice the we-form and the they-form. Here is the they-form (i.e., 'they are').
	$\underline{sao}$ ( ) ( ) x ( )x
67.	Here is the we-form (i.e., 'we are')
	$\underline{somos}$ ( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
68.	The form <u>são</u> appears in the expression which leads off the dialog for this unit, namely: <u>Que horas são</u> ?. This is the equivalent of 'What time is it?' Literally, the translation is, 'What hours are (they)?' Listen and repeat.
	Que horas são ( ) ( ) ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
69.	It also appears in the response: São dez horas. 'It's ten o'clock' (they are ten hours).
	$\underline{\mathtt{São}}\ \underline{\mathtt{dez}}\ \underline{\mathtt{horas}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x

70.	they-form of the other verb which represents 'being':  estar. You already know the I-form and the he-form.
	I am: $estou$ ( )x ( )x he is: $est\acute{a}$ ( )x ( )x
71.	Here are the two new forms.
	We are: $estamos$ ( )x ( )x They are: $estão$ ( )x ( )x
72.	Here are the I-form and the he-form of 'having' in the present tense. You already know both of these forms.
	I have: $\underline{\text{tenho}}$ ( )x ( )x he has: $\underline{\text{tem}}$ ( )x ( )x
73.	Now here are the we-form and the they-form.
	we have: $\underline{\text{temos}}$ ( )x ( )x they have: $\underline{\text{têm}}$ ( )x ( )x
74.	For Brazilians the he-form and the they-form sound the same. The circumflex accent (^) differentiates the two in standard spelling.  a. tem ()x ()x b. têm ()x ()x
75.	Here, finally, is the neutral form.
	<u>ter</u> ( )x ( )x ( )x
76.	Recall the form conheco 'I know' from a previous dialog.
	<pre>conheço ( )x ( )x</pre>
77.	The neutral form of this verb is conhecer.
	$\underline{\mathtt{conhecer}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x

78. Conhecer refers to 'knowing' in the sense of 'being acquainted with'. This usually means people, but it can also mean cities, books, buildings, and indeed anything else that we might be acquainted with.

Conheço a Yara. I know (am acquainted with) Yara Conheço o Rio. I know (am acquainted with) Rio.

Conheço o livro. I know (am acquainted with) the book.

Conheço a Embaixada. I know (am acquainted with) the Embass

79. Portuguese has another verb that covers our concept of 'knowing'. The neutral form of this verb is <u>saber</u>. The I-form of <u>saber</u>, in the present tense, is <u>sei</u>.

<u>sei</u> ( )x ( )x ( )x

- 80. When one wishes to say that he possesses facts or information, he uses a form of saber.
  - a. <u>Ele é casado</u>. He's married. <u>Eu sei</u>. I know.
  - b. <u>Vai chover?</u>Não sei.Is it going to rain?I don't know.
- 81. Which verb, <u>sei</u> or <u>conheço</u>, would you use in this sentence?

  Não <u>os dois meninos</u>.

(conheço)

82. Which one would you use in this sentence?

Não \_\_\_\_ quando vamos jantar.

(sei)

83. Every once in a while the distinction becomes a little fine.

Eu conheço o livro. I'm acquainted with the book
Eu sei o livro. I know the book (thoroughly).

But these instances are not common and you should not worry too much about them.

#### DIALOG

## Na escola (At school)

### O professor

são

'being' (they-form, present)

Que horas são?

What time is it?

O aluno

sei

know (I-form, present)

Não sei.

I don't know.

deixe

let (command form)\*

me

me

deixe-me

let me

ver

see (neutral form)

Deixe-me ver.

Let me see.

Ah! São dez horas.

Ah! It's ten o'clock.

O professor

já

already

Já? Nossa!

Already? Gosh!

está na hora

it's time

o intervalo

break period, interval

Está na hora do intervalo.

It's break time.

<sup>\*</sup>Command forms are examined in a later unit.

trabalharam

work (they-form, past)

Vocês trabalharam muito

You worked hard this hour.

esta hora.

<u>O aluno</u>

abrimos

open (we-form, present)

a porta

door

a janela

window

Por que não abrimos a porta

Why don't we open the door

and some windows?

fazendo

e umas janelas?

making

está fazendo

it's making

Está fazendo calor aqui.

It's hot in here.

O professor

boa

good

a idéia

idea

Boa idéia.

Good idea.

O professor

iá

already, yet

tomaram

take (they-form, past)

o café

coffee

Vocês já tomaram café?

Did you have (take) coffee yet

O aluno

tomamos

take (we-form, past)

chegamos

arrive (we-form, past)

embaixo

lá embaixo

Já. <sup>1</sup> Tomamos lá embaixo quando chegamos.

below

downstairs (there below)

Yes, we did. We had (took) some downstairs when we arrived.

O professor

nada

ainda não

nothing

Eu ainda não tomei nada. 2

jantei

a noite

à noite

ontem à noite

demais

not yet

I haven't had anything yet.

eat dinner (I-form, past)

night

at night

last night (yesterday at night)

too much

Jantei demais ontem à noite.

I ate too much (dinner) last

night.

O professor

Boa tarde.

Good afternoon.

almoçaram

eat lunch (they-form, past)

Vocês almoçaram bem?

Did you have a good lunch?

 $<sup>\</sup>frac{1}{26}$ , meaning 'already', is used here in response to the  $\frac{1}{26}$  in the question just asked.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Literally, 'I did not take <u>nothing</u> yet'. This kind of double negative is standard in Portuguese.

#### O aluno

almoçamos

fomos

go (we-form, past),
 i.e.,'we went'

o restaurante

restaurant

em frente

across the street

Almoçamos, sim. Nós fomos ao restaurante em frente.

Yes, we did. We went to the restaurant across the street.

#### A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

#### Practice Exercises

Part I. -ar verbs in the past; we-forms and they-forms

#### Practice 1: (Recorded)

Listen to this group of we-forms of  $-\underline{\mathrm{ar}}$  verbs in the past. In each case, the voice says 'we  $\underline{\mathrm{did}}$  something'. Remember that this form happens to be the same as the one that says 'we  $\underline{\mathrm{do}}$  something' (in the present).

(1-14)

#### Practice 2: (Recorded)

Now practice repeating these we-forms.

(1-14)xx

## Practice 3: (Recorded)

This is a comprehension check. After each lettered item is presented on the tape, stop the tape and select the correct meaning of that item from the list below. Write the corresponding number in the blank. Answers are at the end of this unit.

a.		1.	we worked
b.		2.	we had lunch
c.		3.	we ate dinner
d.		4.	we prepared
e.		5.	we lived
f.		6.	we arrived
g.		7.	we got up
h.	-	8.	we practiced
i.		9.	we took

j.	10.	we	noted
k.	 11.	we	stayed
1.	 <b>1</b> 2.	we	liked

# Practiced 4: (Recorded)

Now listen to these they-forms of -ar verbs in the past. In each case the speaker is saying that 'they' or 'you-all'  $\underline{did}$  something.

(1-14)x

### Practice 5: (Recorded)

In this exercise you are to practice repeating the they-forms that appear on the tape.

(1-14)xx

## Practice 6: (Recorded)

This is another comprehension check, similar to the one in Practice 3 above. Listen to the items on the tape and indicate in the blanks below the number of the correct English equivalent.

a.		1.	they	worked
b.		2.	they	liked
c.	<del></del>	3.	they	took
đ.		4.	they	visited
e.		5.	they	ate lunch
f.		6.	they	arrived
g.		7.	they	studied
h.		8.	they	prepared
i.		9.	they	passed
j.		10.	they	had dinner
k.		11.	they	spoke
1.		12.	they	thought
		15.17		

## Practice 7: (Recorded)

In this exercise one of the instructors will ask the other if some other people ( $\underline{\text{eles}}$  or  $\underline{\text{elas}}$ ) did something. The second instructor will answer in the affirmative. You are to repeat the answer  $\underline{\text{after}}$  the second instructor gives it.

(1-10)

### Practice 8: (Recorded)

This exercise is similar to the preceding one. However, this time the questions are directed at you, and you are to answer affirmatively in the pause provided on the tape <u>before</u> the second instructor responds with the correct answer.

(1-10)

#### Practice 9: (Recorded)

Now the first instructor addresses both you and the second instructor, asking the two of you (os senhores) if you did something. Let the second instructor answer first, then you mimic his answer. Some answers will be affirmative, others negative.

(1-10)

### Practice 10: (Recorded)

This time through, <u>you</u> answer first, then listen to the second instructor confirming your response. Answer affirmatively each time.

(1-10)

# Practice 11: (Recorded)

Same procedure as in No.10 above, but this time answer in the negative.

(1-8)

### Practice 12: (Recorded)

Listen to the instructions given on the tape, and ask the questions that are suggested there. Then check the tape for confirmation. This exercise is in two parts.

(1-8)

#### Observation:

Since you are going from English into Portuguese, it is often to your advantage to take English equivalents into special account. Such is the case with the English equivalents of the past tense forms you have been practicing. So far we have indicated the English equivalents as simple pasts. For example:

trabalhei = I worked

ficou = he stayed

levantamos = we got up

falaram = they talked, or they spoke

But we could also have translated them as follows:

trabalhei = I have worked

ficou = he has stayed

levantamos = we have gotten up

falaram = they have talked, or they have spoken

There is no separate tense in Portuguese for translating the English construction of the type (<a href="have/has">have/has</a> + past participal of main verb), often referred to as the 'present perfect tense'. Portuguese uses the simple past in most instances where English uses this kind of construction. Thus, for example, in a situation where you might be inclined to say 'He has eaten lunch', you will need to recast your thoughts in terms of 'He ate lunch' (ele almoçou). Similarly, the question 'Has he eaten lunch?' would be reinterpreted as 'Did he eat lunch?' (ele almoçou?).

### Practice 13: (Recorded)

How would you say the following in Portuguese? This time the verification procedure is different. Keep the response in the right hand column below covered until after you have spoken aloud. Then verify your response by checking the tape <u>and</u> the printed answer below.

1	JOE	has	worked	а	10+
⊥.	uve	IIa 5	worked	а	TOU.

2. Joe has prepared the lesson.

3. Has Joe arrived?

4. Has Joe gotten up?

5. I have had (taken) coffee.

6. I have studied two hours.

7. We have had lunch.

8. We have avoided the traffic.

9. They have spoken well of you.

10. Have they practiced?

O José trabalhou muito.

O José preparou a lição.

O José chegou?

O José levantou?

Eu tomei café.

Eu estudei duas horas.

Nós almoçamos.

Nós evitamos o tráfego.

Eles falaram bem de você.

Eles praticaram?

# Observation:

The word  $\underline{j}\underline{\acute{a}}$  ('already', 'yet') very often appears with past tense forms in those situations where the English equivalent might likely be stated in the present perfect tense.

- a. <u>Já tomaram café</u>? (Have you taken coffee yet?)
- b. Nós já jantamos. (We have already eaten dinner.)

The  $\underline{j}\underline{a}$  has the effect of bringing the action out of the past right up into the present, which is more or less what the 'have' does in the English construction.

We have already pointed out that a  $\underline{j}\underline{\acute{a}}$  in a question is often echoed by a  $\underline{j}\underline{\acute{a}}$  in the answer.

Já tomaram café?

Já. Tomamos lá embaixo.

Another example:

<u>Já</u> <u>almoçou</u>? (Have you eaten lunch yet?) <u>Já</u>. (I did.)

If the answer is 'not yet', then you will most likely find this sequence:

Já almoçou?

Ainda não (Not yet.)

Practice 14: (Recorded)

Ask the questions suggested by the tape, using the nouns and pronouns given (José, ele, etc.). Check the tape for confirmation.

(1-9)

Practice 15: (Recorded)

This time you will hear a series of questions of the sort 'Has so-and-so done such-and-such yet?' In each case you are to answer, 'Not yet, but he's going to do such-and-such now'. You will then hear your response confirmed on the tape.

Example:

- Q. O Paulo já preparou?
- A. Ainda não, mas ele vai preparar agora.

(1-8)

Practice 16: (Recorded)

Now, the question will be 'Have you (plural) done such-and-such yet?'. Your answer will be,'Yes, we did such-and-such last night' Begin each answer with  $\underline{\mathtt{M}}$ .

(1-6)

### Practice 17: (Recorded)

How would you say these brief thoughts in Portuguese? Be sure you can do these easily.

#### a. With já

- 1. He has already taken coffee.
- 2. He has already gotten up.
- 3. He has already spoken.
- 4. I have already practiced.
- 5. I have already eaten lunch.
- 6. We have already eaten dinner.
- 7. We have already studied.
- 8. They have already arrived.

#### b. With ainda não

- 1. I haven't studied yet.
- I haven't lived there vet.
- 3. They haven't gone to the party yet.
- 4. They haven't gotten up yet.
- 5. We haven't eaten lunch yet.
- 6. We haven't eaten dinner yet.

Part II: We- and they-forms of 'having' and 'going', in the Past

#### Practice 18: (Recorded)

Repeat each of these short sentences after your instructor. Group A says 'we had to do something', and Group B says 'they had to do something'.

- A. 1. Tivemos que praticar.
  - 2. Tivemos que trabalhar.
  - 3. Tivemos que almoçar.
  - 4. Tivemos que passar.
  - 5. Tivemos que ficar.

- 6. Tivemos que sair.
- Tivemos que abrir. 7.
- 8. Tivemos que jantar.
- Tiveram que tomar. B. 1.
  - 2. Tiveram que levantar.
  - 3. Tiveram que comer.
  - 4. Tiveram que sair.
  - 5. Tiveram que ficar.
  - 6. Tiveram que abrir.
  - 7. Tiveram que almoçar.
  - 8. Tiveram que jantar.

### Practice 19: (Recorded)

Listen to these questions on the tape, then respond affirmatively. Your answer will be either 'Yes, we had to' or 'Yes, they had to'. Confirm with the tape.

(1-8)

#### (Recorded) Practice 20:

Now, how would you ask the following questions? Use eles and vocês. Confirm with the tape and by checking below.

1.	Did they have to	leave?	Eles	tiveram que sair?
2.	Did they have to	stay?	Eles	tiveram que ficar?
3.	Did they have to	study?	Eles	tiveram que estudar?
4.	Did they have to	prepare?	Eles	tiveram que preparar?
5.	Did they have to	get up?	Eles	tiveram que levantar?
6.	Did you (plural)	have to eat lund	ch?	Vocês tiveram que almoçar?
7.	Did you (plural)	have to work?		Vocês tiveram que trabalhar?
8.	<pre>Did you (plural)   early?</pre>	have to arrive		Vocês tiveram que chegar cedo?
9.	Did you (plural) Portuguese?	have to speak		Vocês tiveram que falar português?
10.	Did you (plural) a lot?	have to talk		Vocês tiveram que falar muito?

# Practice 21: (Recorded)

Now make these negative statements, and confirm on the tape and below.

# (1-7)

1.	We	didn't	have	to	work.	Não	tivemos	que	trabalhar.
2.	We	didn't	have	to	leave.	Não	tivemos	que	sair.
3.	We	didn't	have	to	study.	Não	tivemos	que	estudar.
4.	We	didn't	have	to	prepare.	Não	tivemos	que	preparar.
5.	We	didn't	have	to	speak.	Não	tivemos	que	falar.
6.	We	didn't	have	to	stay.	Não	tivemos	que	ficar.
7.	We	didn't	have	to	open.	Não	tivemos	que	abrir.

# Practice 22: (Recorded)

Repeat each of these short sentences after your tape instructor. Group A says 'we went' somewhere; Group B says 'they went' somewhere.

- A. 1. Fomos ao centro.
  - Fomos à embaixada.
  - 3. Fomos ao restaurante.
  - 4. Fomos lá embaixo.
  - 5. Fomos ao Rio.
  - 6. Fomos à cidade.
  - 7. Fomos à escola.
- B. 1. Foram à festa.
  - 2. Foram à escola.
  - 3. Foram a Nova York.
  - 4. Foram ao túnel.
  - 5. Foram ao Leme.
  - 6. Foram à cidade.
  - 7. Foram ao Rio.

3.

### Practice\_23: (Recorded)

Respond to these questions in the negative, saying either 'No, we didn't go', or 'No, they didn't go', whichever is appropriate. Then check yourself with the correct response on the tape.

(1-9)

### Practice 24: (Not recorded)

Give the Portuguese equivalents of these brief English sentences. Uncover the right hand column only to check your answers. You will find a variety of forms in this exercise.

- Yara went to Boston yesterday.
  - A Yara foi a Boston ontem.

    Maria e Paulo foram com ela.
- 2. Maria and Paul went with her.
- Roberto e Bill foram a Nova York
- 4. Santos and I didn't go with them.

Robert and Bill went to New York.

- Eu e o Santos fomos com eles.
- 5. We went to have dinner in Bethesda. Fomos jantar em Bethesda.
  - romos jantar em Bethesda.
- 6. But we didn't go to the movies.
- Mas não fomos ao cinema.

7. I went home (para casa).

- Eu fui para casa.
- 8. And Santos went to visit a friend.
- E o Santos foi visitar um amigo.

# Part III. Present tense: We-forms and they-forms of ter, ser and estar

### A. The verb ter

# Practice 25: (Recorded)

In this series of questions and answers an instructor will ask 'How many \_\_\_\_\_ do they have?' or 'How many \_\_\_\_ do you-all have?'. A second instructor will answer appropriately either 'We have \_\_\_\_' or 'They have \_\_\_\_'. There is space on the tape for you to repeat questions and answers.

## Practice 26: (Recorded)

Ask the following questions of your friends, whom you address as  $\underline{\text{vocês}}$ . Follow the pattern  $\underline{\text{Vocês}}$   $\underline{\text{têm}}$   $\underline{\text{que...?}}$  You can verify your questions by checking the column on the right or by listening to the tape.

1.	Do you have to study now?	Vocês têm que estudar agora?
2.	Do you have to get up early?	Vocês têm que levantar cedo?
3.	Do you have to speak English?	Vocês têm que falar inglês?
4.	Do you have to live in Rio?	Vocês têm que morar no Rio?
5.	Do you have to work today?	Vocês têm que trabalhar hoje?
6.	Do you have to stay in the school?	Vocês têm que ficar na escola?
7.	Do you have to leave with Joe?	Vocês têm que sair com José?

# Practice 27: (Recorded)

Now try these. Verify on tape and below.

1.	We have two cars.	Temos dois carros.
2.	We have four daughters.	Temos quatro filhas.
3.	We have only one home.	Temos só uma casa.
4.	We have to prepare the dialog.	Temos que preparar o diálogo.
5.	We have to speak with you.	Temos que falar com você.
6.	We have to leave now.	Temos que sair agora.
7.	We have to spend the night.	Temos que passar a noite.
8.	We don't have to speak English.	Não temos que falar inglês.
9.	We don't have to do that $(\underline{isso})$ .	Não temos que fazer isso.

# B. Ser and estar

Observation: You will recall that you learned to use forms of ser when speaking of one's origin, where one comes from.

De onde você é?	Where are you from?
Sou de Nova Iorque.	I'm from New York.

You also learned that you use forms of  $\underline{\text{ser}}$  when speaking of the permanent, geographically fixed location of something.

A embaixada é no centro.

The embassy is downtown.

O Rio é no Brasil.

Rio is in Brazil.

On the other hand, you learned that when the location is not fixed, but temporary, forms of <u>estar</u> are called for. Recall such sentences as these:

O Paulo está no centro.

Paul is downtown.

Eu estou no Brasil.

I'm in Brazil.

The above principles apply, of course, to the we-form and they-form of each of these verbs too. Here are the new forms:

	ser	<u>estar</u>
We are:	somos	estamos
They are:	são	estão

Hence, in summary, the four present tense forms of each are:

	ser	estar
I-form	sou	estou
He-form	é	está
We-form	somos	estamos
They-form	são	estão

# Practice 28: (Recorded)

Now practice the we-forms. Repeat these short utterances after your instructor. In each case he says 'we are....', first with somos, then with estamos.

# Practice 29: (Recorded)

This is a practice with the they-forms, first  $\underline{s\~ao}$ , then  $\underline{est\~ao}$ . Repeat after your instructor.

### Practice 30: (Recorded)

Give the information requested on the tape.

### Practice 31: (Recorded)

Answer affirmatively the questions given on the tape. Give just the appropriate verb form, followed by  $\underline{\sin}$ . Then check the tape for confirmation.

Part IV: The use of ser for identity

### Observation:

Ser is used with nouns to identify or classify. When we say that Yara é solteira we are identifying or classifying her as a 'single girl'. Likewise, when we refer to another young lady and say that Ela é filha do Senhor Silva we are identifying or classifying her as a 'daughter', and very specifically, the daughter of Mr. Silva. In both cases the formula is the same: é (a form of ser) plus a noun (solteira and filha). You can easily observe the same formula in Este é o meu amigo. In the sentence É ele ('It is he') the pronoun ele replaces a noun, but the same principle is involved.

People are classified in many ways; among the more common are nationality, job or profession, and membership in groups.

- O Paulo é americano.
- O Paulo é professor.
- O Paulo é aluno.

Additional assorted examples of identification, all requiring ser, would be the following:

I am a Republican.

This is a hammer.

Ed is a lawyer.

Ed's car is a Ford.

Is it you?

KLM is an airline.

It's a boy!

### In the plural:

We are housewives.

The men are all actors.

The passengers are children.

You are fools!

In all such cases the verb that is used with the identifying noun or pronoun is a form of ser. Forms of estar can never be used.

### Practice 32: (Recorded)

### A. Preliminary step

You need to know the Portuguese words for 'Brazilian', both masculine and feminine, in order to do this exercise and several of the following. Practice these words now.

brasileiro	(	)	(	)x	(	)x	(	)x
brasileira	(	)	(	)x	(	)x	(	)x

B. Listen to these questions and answers as given by Instructors A and B.

### Practice 33: (Recorded)

Respond to these taped questions affirmatively, then check the tape for confirmation.

### Practice 34: (Not recorded)

Practice making these statements and asking these questions until you can do them flawlessly. Use the right hand column only as a check.

- 1. Are you a teacher?
- 2. No, I'm a student.
- We all (todos) are students.
- 4. We all are americans.

- O senhor é professor?
- Não, sou aluno.
- Todos somos alunos.
- Todos somos americanos.

- 5. Paul and Robert are Brazilians.
- 6. And they're not students.
- 7. Where are they from?
- 8. They're from Recife.
- 9. Are you (all) from the American Embassy?
- 10. We are, yes.
- ll. Is this your car?
- 12. No, it's not.

Paulo e Roberto são brasileiros.

E não são alunos.

De onde eles são?

São do Recife.

Os senhores são da Embaixada Americana?

Somos, sim.

Este é o seu carro?

Não, não é.

# Practice 35: (Recorded)

The two short dialogs printed below are recorded on the tape. Listen to them and practice them with yourself or a fellow student until they flow freely.

- 1. A. Éles são brasileiros?
  - B. Não, não são. São americanos.
  - A. E os senhores? O que são?
  - B. Somos americanos também.

Somos da Flórida.

2. A. Todos somos alunos.

E os senhores, são alunos também?

- B. Não, não somos.
- A. São professores?
- B. Somos, sim.
- A. De onde são?
- B. Somos do Brasil.

### Observation:

The verb  $\underline{\text{ser}}$  is also used in telling time, as you have observed in the dialog of this unit. This will be treated as a separate topic in the next unit.

# Part V: The double negative não... nada

# Practice 36: (Recorded)

Practice these short sentences, all of which contain the double negative  $\underline{\text{não}}$ ...  $\underline{\text{nada}}$ .

1.	Não sei nada. ( )x	I don't know anything.
2.	Não tenho nada. ( )x	I don't have anything.
3.	Ele não fala nada. ( )x	He doesn't speak anything.
4.	Ele não pode fazer nada.( )x	He can't do anything.
5•	Ela não vai preparar nada. ( )x	She's not going to prepare anything.
6.	Ela não gosta de nada. ( )x	She doesn't like anything.
7.	Ela não gosta de fazer nada. ( )x	She doesn't like to do anything.
8.	Você não pretende fazer nada? ( )x	Don't you plan to do anything?
9.	Você não falou nada? ( )x	Didn't you say anything?
10.	Vocês não prepararam nada? ( )x	<pre>Didn't you all prepare   anything?</pre>
11.	Eu não tive que estudar nada. ( )x	<pre>I didn't have to study   anything.</pre>
12.	Eu não achei nada. ( )x	I didn't think anything.
13.	Não é nada. ( )x	<pre>It's nothing. (It isn't anything).</pre>

### Observation:

The double negative of the type illustrated above is considered bad grammar in English ('I don't' know nothing'), but it has no such pejorative connotation in Portuguese.

### Comprehension (Recorded)

Listen to these sentences on the tape. Tell your instructor which ones are not clear to you.

### Translations

- A. Practice putting these thoughts into Portuguese.
  - 1. I know (eu sei) that he's married.
  - I know that he studies a lot.
  - I know what (o que) you can do.
  - I don't know what they can do.
  - I don't know what to do.
  - I don't know what to study.
  - I don't know what to prepare.
  - I don't know when to study.
  - I don't know when to leave. 9.
  - 10. I don't know where to live.
  - I don't know (conheço) your friend. 11.
  - 12. Good afternoon! Did you (os senhores) study a lot?
  - Good afternoon! Did you arrive OK? 13.
  - 14. Good afternoon! Did you eat lunch in the restaurant?
  - Good evening! Did you have dinner already? Good evening! Did you work hard today? 15.
  - 16.
  - Good idea! Let's (vamos) leave now! Good idea! Let's get coffee later! 17.
  - 18.
  - Good idea! Let's study tomorrow! 19.
  - 20. Good idea! Let's practice more!
  - It's two o'clock. Did she have lunch yet? It's 9:00. Are you going to work now? 21.
  - 22.
  - It's 5:00. Are we going to have dinner now? 23.
  - 24. It's 11:00. When are they going to study?
  - 25.
  - It's late. When are they going to leave?
    It's early. Why is he going to get up now?

(The following are in the form of brief exchanges. Do these with a fellow student.)

- Do you think it's a good idea? 27. Sure! Let's go now!
- Do you think it's a good idea? 28. Sure! Let's eat dinner at home tonight.

- 29. Do you think it's a good idea? No. I don't want to do that.
- 30. Do you think it's a good idea? No. I don't like the idea.
- 31. Do you (os senhores) think it's a good idea?
  No, we don't. We're tired. We have worked hard this afternoon.
- 32. It's ten o'clock. Do you think they've arrived yet?
  I don't know. We can make a phone call.
- 33. It's six o'clock. Do you think they went to the movies?
  I don't know. We can talk to Paul.
- 34. Do you think they went downtown tonight?
  No. They went there last night.
- 35. Do you think....?
   (Interrupting, because you're tired of these questions:)
   No, I don't think!

- B. Practice this tale (of woe), then recount it to your teacher. It's all in fun. The Portuguese version is on the tape, the English version below.
  - 1. It's ten o'clock.
  - The teachers haven't arrived yet, and I think I know why.
  - They went to a party last night, and they stayed there until very late.
  - 4. Gosh! And we, [the] students, we studied so much! (so much = tanto). We spent hours on the dialog. We studied all night.
  - 5. And the teachers aren't here yet.
  - 6. We can't do the dialog without the teachers.
  - 7. Well—(ôba!) Here they are! Good afternoon!
- C. Prepare this brief dialog for display to your instructor.
  - A. I'm hungry.
  - B. Me (eu) too. Where are we going to have lunch today?
  - A. I don't know. But I don't want to eat across the street (lá em frente) again.
  - B. Why don't we go to the Lucas restaurant?
  - A. Good idea! I haven't gone there yet.
  - B. Paulo and Yara ate dinner there last night. They said (that) they liked the food very much.

ANSWERS:	Prac	tice 3.			Practice 6.
	a.	4.	g.	1	a. 3 g. <b>1</b> 2
	b.	12	h.	3	b. 5 h. 2
	c.	6	i.	11	<b>c.</b> 9 <b>i.</b> 8
	đ.	7	j.	9	d. 10 j. 7
	e.	2	k.	8	e. 1 k. 4
	f.	10	1.	5	f. 11 1. 6

# UNIT 16

1.	Verbs of the $-\underline{ar}$ type have their own special set of endings in the past. You already know these endings, since you have been working with them in recent units. In this unit you will learn how to use $-\underline{er}$ type verbs in the past.
2.	Recall the endings of a typical -ar verb in the past.
	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
3.	Here is another example.
	$ \frac{1}{1} \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 1 \end{array} \right) \times \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} \right) \times \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 1 \end{array} \right) \times \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} \right) \times \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 1 \end{array} \right) \times \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} \right) \times $
4.	The endings of <u>-er</u> type verbs in the past are different. Take, for example, the verb which represents 'drinking'. The neutral form is <u>beber</u> .
	<u>beber</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
5•	The I-form in the past ('I drank') is $\underline{bebi}$ . Notice the stressed $\underline{i}$ ending.
	<u>bebi</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x
6.	The neutral form of the verb which represents 'writing' is escrever.
	<u>escrever</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x
7.	The I-form in the past ('I wrote') is escrevi.
	<u>escrevi</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
8.	Which of these two means 'I wrote'?
	(1) (2) (1) (2)
<b>(</b> 2)	

9.	No. I is not the right answer because the stress is not on the right syllable, i.e. the final syllable.	
10.	The neutral form for 'eating' is comer.	
	$\underline{\text{comer}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x	
11.	You would expect then that 'I ate' would be <pre>comi</pre> . And that is indeed the form.	E
	<u>comi</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	
12.	The ending for the he-form is the stressed diphthong <u>-eu</u> . You will recognize this diphthong as the same one that is the words <u>meu</u> and <u>seu</u> .	Ln
13.	Here is the he-form of 'eating', in the past ('he ate').	
	$ \underline{\text{comeu}} $ ( ) ( )x ( )x	
14.	This is the way you say 'he drank'.	
	<u>bebeu</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x	
<b>1</b> 5.	Remember that 'I wrote' is <u>escrevi</u> . How would you say 'he wrote'?	
(escrev	veu) Verify: ( )x ( )x	
<b>1</b> 6.	Repeat:	
	comeu ( )X ( )X	
	<u>bebeu</u> ( )X ( )X	
	escreveu ( )X ( )X	

17	A verb that is very useful, because we all do it, is the verb 'forget' The neutral form is <u>esquecer</u> .
	<u>esquecer</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
18	The form for 'he forgot' is:
	$\underline{\text{esqueceu}}  (  )  (  ) \mathbf{x}  (  ) \mathbf{x}$
19	How would you say 'I forgot'?
(esqı	verify: ( )X ( )X
20	Now repeat 'I forgot', then 'he forgot'.
	esqueceu ( )x ( )x
21	The we-form of <u>-er</u> type verbs in the past is the same as the we-form in the present. The form ends in <u>-emos</u> . You probably recall this ending from the present tense forms <u>podemos</u> , <u>pretendemos</u> .
22	Thus, the form <u>bebemos</u> can mean either 'we drink' or 'we drank'. Only the context makes clear which meaning is intended.
23	Repeat 'we drank'.
	<u>bebemos</u> ( )x ( )x
21	How would you say 'we forgot'? (The neutral form is esquecer.
esqu	emos) Verify: ( )X ( )X
2 !	How would you say 'we ate'? (The neutral form is comer.)
come	s) Verify: ( )x ( )x
	ACTITÀ ( )V ( )V

	26.	Repeat both 'we forgot' and 'we ate'.
		$\underline{\text{esquecemos}}$ ( )X ( )X
		<u>comemos</u> ( )x ( )x
	27.	Listen to the ending which marks the they-form.
		( ) ( ) x ( )x ( )x
	28.	This is 'they ate'.
		( ) ( )x ( )x
	29.	This is 'they forgot'.
		( ) ( )x ( )x
	30.	Here are the above two items in print. Repeat again.
		$\underline{\mathtt{comeram}}$ ( )X ( )X
		<u>esqueceram</u> ( )X ( )X
	31.	How would you say 'they drank'?
(bel	oeram	) Verify: ( )x ( )x
	32.	Repeat: <u>beberam</u> ( )x ( )x
		$\underline{\mathtt{comeram}}$ ( )X ( )X
		<u>esqueceram</u> ( )X ( )X
	33.	In summary, the four forms of a typical <u>-er</u> type verb in the past are:
		bebi ( )X bebemos ( )X
		bebeu ( )X beberam ( )X

34. Another example:

esqueci	(	)X
esqueceu	(	)x
esquecemos	(	)x
esqueceram	(	)x

35. Here is another example, using a new verb  $(\underline{1er})$  'to read'. The stem is short (just  $\underline{1}$ ) but the pattern is the same.

ler	(	)x	(	)x
1i	(	)x	(	)x
1eu	(	λX	(	λX
lemos	(	)x	(	λ
leram	(	) <b>x</b>	(	)x

- 36. The following frames deal with a concept we shall label reflexives. In the English sentence 'I cut myself', the pronoun
  'myself' is sometimes referred to as a reflexive pronoun since
  it 'reflects' back upon the actor 'I'. The doer of the action
  and the receiver of the action are the same person.
- 37. Similarly, in the sentence 'He dragged himself out of bed.' the pronoun 'himself' can be considered a <u>reflexive</u> pronoun since it 'reflects' back upon the actor 'He'. The actor and the receiver are one and the same person.
- 38. Furthermore, it is common practice to label each of the verbs in the two sentences cited above <u>reflexive verbs</u>. They are directly involved in the reflexive relation between the actor and the receiver.
- 39. Hence, in the sentence, 'She fooled herself that time' the word 'herself' is properly called a r\_\_\_\_\_\_p\_\_\_(reflexive pronoun)
- 40. In the same sentence, the word 'fooled' is properly called a r\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ v\_\_\_\_\_.

  (reflexive verb)

	41.	reflexive pronouns similar to those just illustrated, where clearly the actor is doing something to himself.
	42.	Here are the reflexive pronouns in Portuguese.
		me ( ) ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$ = myself
		nos ( ) ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$ = ourselves
		<pre>se ( ) ( )X ( )X = himself, herself, yourself,</pre>
	43.	These reflexive pronouns frequently precede the verb. Thus, if you want to say 'I know myself', you may say:
		$\underline{\text{Eu}} \ \underline{\text{me}} \ \underline{\text{conheço}} \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ $
	44.	If you want to say 'I prepare myself', you can say:
		<pre>Eu me preparo ( ) ( )x ( )x</pre>
	45.	'He prepares himself' can be said like this:
		<pre>Ele se prepara ( ) ( )x ( )x</pre>
	46.	How would you say 'He knows himself'?
		Ele
		<pre>Verify: ( )X ( )X</pre>
	47.	How would you say 'She knows herself'?
		Ela
		Verify: ( )X ( )X
	48.	'He confuses himself' is:
		<u>Ele se atrapalha</u> ( )x ( )x ( )x
	49.	How do you say 'I confuse myself'?
(Eu	me at	trapalho) Verify: ( )X ( )X
	50.	Sometimes you will find a reflexive construction where the reflexive pronoun comes $\underline{\text{after}}$ the verb.
		$\underline{\text{Chama-se}} \ \underline{\text{Yara}} \ \ ( \ \ ) x \ \ ( \ \ ) x$

16.6

	51.	In normal Engl	is expression says 'She calls herself Yara'. Lish we would avoid a reflexive and say some- er name is Yara.'
			Chama-se Yara ( )X ( )X
	52.	You can also h	near this said as follows:
			<u>Ela se chama Yara</u> ( )X ( )X
	53•	Now, here is h	now you say 'My name is Joe'.
			Eu me chamo José ( )x ( )x
	54.	even though th	will find that a Portuguese verb is reflexive ne actor is not performing the action on himself the verb 'remember'. The neutral form is
			<pre>lembrar ( )x ( )x</pre>
	55•	When the Portumay say:	aguese speaker wants to say 'I remember', he
			$\underline{\text{Eu}} \ \underline{\text{me}} \ \underline{\text{lembro}} \ \ (\ ) \ \ (\ ) x \ \ (\ ) x$
		It seems like he is just say	he is saying 'I remember myself', but actually ying the equivalent of 'I remember'.
	56.	Since 'remember remembers'?	er' is an -ar type verb, how would you say 'he
			Ele Verify: ( )X ( )X
	57•		'não precedes the reflexive pronoun. Thus, the don't remember' is:
			Eu não me lembro ( ) ( )x ( )x
	58.	How do you say	y 'I don't call myself' or 'My name is not'?
(Eu r	não me	e chamo)	Verify: ( )x ( )x
	59.	How do you say	y 'She doesn't remember'? (Answer aloud.)
			Ela n s_ l
			Verify: $( ) X ( ) X$
			say 'He doesn't call himself Joe'?
(Ele	não s	se chama José)	Verify: ( )X ( )X
			16.7

	_	say 'She doesn't confuse herself'?
(Ela nao s	se atrapalha)	Verify: ( )X ( )X
	How would you atrapalho)	say 'I don't confuse myself'?
		Verify: $( )x ( )x$
63.	Another reflex way to say 'He	rive verb is <u>deitar</u> 'to go to bed'. Here is the e goes to bed'. <u>Ele se deita</u> ( ) ( )X ( )X
64.	'I go to bed'	
		$\underline{\text{Eu}} \ \underline{\text{me}} \ \underline{\text{deito}} \ \ (\ ) \ \ (\ ) X \ \ (\ ) X$
65.	How would you	say 'He doesn't go to bed'? Answer aloud.  Ele  Verify: ( )X ( )X
66.	How would you	say 'I went to bed'? Eu Verify: ( )X ( )X
67.	How would you	<pre>say 'He went to bed'? Verify: ( )X ( )X</pre>
68.	find that the verbs 'remembe	nat you have just been practicing, you will reflexive element will often be omitted in the er' and 'go to bed' with no apparent change in you may hear somebody say:
		Eu lembro I remember
		<pre>Eu deito I go to bed</pre>
	you practice t	n is normal. We will recommend, however, that the reflexive so that you feel comfortable with you recognize it when others use it.

(Ele

69.	reflexive, car	n also be used re	nave already learned as a non- eflexively, with no change in o say 'I got up', you can say
		a. <u>Eu</u> <u>levantei</u>	( )x ( )x, or
			<u>eei</u> ( )x ( )x
70.	Using the ref	lexive, how would	l you say 'He got up'?
se 1	evantou)	Verify: ( )X	( )x
71.	to contraction tractions. In them involving Here is the f	ns. You have alm n this unit you w g the preposition	
72.	Now let's loom por + the def	k at another one, inite article <u>o</u> . <u>pelo</u> ( )X (	
73.		en that the combinate of the combinate o	<del></del>
74.		ws that the comb: cle <u>as</u> results in <u>pelas</u> ( )X	
75•			pefore doing so please take note rbs presented in this
		beber	deitar (-se)
		escrever	<pre>lembrar (-se)</pre>
		ler	` '
		comer	
		esquecer	

### <u>Dialog</u>

### Aluno

o sono

sleep

com sono

sleepy

(bocejo)

(yawn)

desculpe

excuse (command form)

Eu estou com sono. (Bocejo)

I'm sleepy. (Yawn)

Desculpe.

Excuse me.

### Professor

nada

nothing

de nada

that's O.K., think

nothing of it.

De nada. O senhor passou bem

a noite?

That's O.K. Did you have a

good night?

### <u>Aluno</u>

acordado

awake

Passei, sim. Mas ainda não

estou acordado.

Yes. I did. But I'm not

awake yet.

### Professor

a que horas? se deitou At what time?
went to bed (he-form,
-ar type)

# A que horas o senhor se deitou? Às onze?

What time did you go to bed? At eleven?

### Aluno

me lembro

I remember (-ar type)

### Não me lembro.

escrevi

- Company of the Comp

a carta li o jornal logo depois

me deitei

I don't remember.

I wrote (-er type)
letter
I read (-er type)
newspaper
shortly afterwards
I went to bed (-ar typ

# Escrevi uma carta, li o jornal, e (bocejo), logo depois me deitei.

por pela (contraction of  $\underline{por}$  and  $\underline{a}$ ) meia a meia-noite

I wrote a letter, read the paper and (yawn) shortly afterwards I went to bed.

around, about the half, middle midnight

### Lá pela meia-noite.

# Professor

começar

begin (neutral form)

# Bom, vamos começar

Well, let's begin!

Around midnight.

### Aluno

Iiii!

(an expression of dismay
 roughly equivalent
 here to 'oh, no'')
I forgot (-er type)

esqueci

o livro

book

Iiii... Esqueci o meu livro.

Oh, no! I forgot my book.

estava

tanta

a pressa

so much haste

I was

deixei

I left (-ar type)

Estava com tanta pressa que deixei tudo em casa.

I was in such a hurry that
I left everything at home.

396 PORTUGUESE

# A LOOK AT THE GRAMMAR

### Practice Exercises

# Part I

# Practice 1. (Recorded)

Practice saying these past forms of -er type verbs.

a.	He-fo	rms					
	1.	comeu	(	) 2	х (	):	X : ate
	2.	bebeu	(	) 2	х (	):	X : drank
	3.	escreveu	(	) 2	х (	):	X : wrote
	4.	esqueceu	(	) 2	х (	):	X : forgot
	5•	leu	(	) 2	х (	):	X : read
	6.	choveu	(	) 2	х (	):	X : rained
b.	They-	forms					
	1.	comeram		(	)x	(	)X : ate
	2.	beberam		(	)x	(	)x : drank
	3.	escreveran	n	(	)x	(	)X : wrote
	4.	esqueceram		(	)x	(	)X : forgot
	5.	leram		(	)x	(	)X : read
c.	I-for	ms					
	1.	comi	(	)x	(	)x	: ate
	2.	bebi	(	)x	(	)x	: drank
	3.	escrevi	(	)x	(	)x	: wrote
	4.	esqueci	(	)x	(	)x	: forgot
	5•	li	(	)x	(	)x	: read
đ.	We-fo	rms					
	1.	comemos		(	)x	(	)X : ate
	2.	bebemos		(	) x	(	)X : drank
	3.	escrevemos	5	(	)x	(	)X : wrote
	4.	esquecemos	3	(	)x	(	)X : forgot
	5•	lemos		(	)X	(	)X : read

e. (And just to refresh your memory, here are the neutral forms.)

1.	comer	(	)X	(	)x	:	idea	of	eating
2.	beber	(	)X	(	)x	:	idea	of	drinking
3.	escrever	(	)X	(	)x	:	idea	of	writing
4.	esquecer	(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	$\mathbf{x}$	:	idea	of	forgetting
5.	ler	(	)x	(	)x	:	idea	of	reading
6.	chover	(	)x	(	)X	:	idea	of	raining

### Practice 2: (Recorded)

In this practice Instructor A will ask Instructor B questions using the past forms you have just reviewed. Just listen this time through.

(1-13)

# Practice 3: (Recorded)

In this practice you will hear a similar set of questions and answers. There is a space after each question and after each answer for you to repeat.

# Practice 4: (Recorded)

In this set of questions you will be asked if Yara did something. You are to say that she  $\underline{\text{didn't}}$ , but that you  $\underline{\text{did}}$ . The verifying answer is on the tape.

#### Example:

Question: A Yara leu o livro?

Your answer: Não, não leu, mas eu li.

(1-7)

# Practice 5: (Recorded)

In this set of questions you will be asked if <u>they</u> did something. You are to say that <u>they didn't</u>, but that <u>we did</u>. Confirm your answer with the tape.

### Example:

Question: <u>Eles leram o livro?</u>

Your answer: Não, não leram, mas nós lemos.

(1 - 6)

# Practice 6: (Recorded)

These questions all begin with 'What did you...?' Repeat the answers which are supplied by the tape. Some contain <u>-er</u> type verbs, others -ar type verbs.

### Part II: Telling Time

The following exercise has been prepared to teach you a number of useful time expressions. Repeat each one after the voice on the tape and follow along with the Portuguese and English below. You should do this practice several times.

## Practice 7: (Recorded)

1.	São dez (horas)	(	)x	(	)x	It's ten o'clock.
2.	meia	(	)x	(	)x	half
3.	dez e meia	(	)x	(	)x	ten thirty (ten and a half)
4.	São dez e meia	(	)x	(	)x	It's ten thirty (half past ten)
5.	São dez e trinta	(	)x	(	)x	It's ten thirty.
6.	São seis e meia	(	)x	(	)x	It's six thirty.
7.	São seis e trinta	(	)x	(	)x	It's six thirty,
8.	São seis e cinco	(	)x	(	)x	It's 6:05.
9.	São seis e oito	(	)x	(	)x	It's 6:08.
10.	São seis e vinte	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>	It's 6:20.
11.	São seis e vinte e dois	(	)x	(	)x	It's 6:22.
12.	São seis e quarenta	(	)x	(	)x	It's 6:40.
13.	São seis e quinze	(	)x	(	)x	It's 6:15.
14.	São seis e um quarto	(	)x	(	)x	It's a quarter past six.

<b>1</b> 5.	para	(	)x (	)x	for, towards
16.	para as seis	(	)x (	)x	'towards' six (to six)
17.	São dez para as seis	(	)x (	Эx	It's ten to six.
18.	São vinte para as seis	(	) x (	)x	It's twenty to six.
19.	São cinco para as seis	(	)x (	)x	It's five to six.
20.	São quinze para as seis	(	)x (	)x	It's fifteen to six.
21.	É um quarto para as seis	(	)x (	)x	It's a quarter to six.
22.	É meio-dia ( )X	(	)x		It's twelve noon.
23.	É meia-noite ( )X	(	)x		It's midnight.
24.	É uma hora ( )X	(	)x		It's one o'clock.
25.	A que horas?	(	)x (	)x	At what time?
26.	A que horas você janta?	(	)x (	)x	<pre>(At) what time do you   eat dinner?</pre>
27.	As oito	(	)x (	)x	At eight.
28.	As oito em ponto	(	)x (	)x	At eight sharp.
29.	A uma	(	)x (	)x	At one.
30.	Ao meio-dia	(	)x (	)x	At noon.
31.	A meia-noite	(	)x (	)x	At midnight.
32.	Está na hora do intervalo	) (	)x (	)x	It's break time.
33.	Está na hora da festa	(	)x (	)x	It's time for the party.
34.	Está na hora de sair	(	)x (	)x	It's time to leave.
35.	Está na hora de trabalhar	- (	)x (	)x	It's time to work.

### Notice that:

1. Time is generally given by stating the hour plus the minutes after the hour.

3:10 três e dez 4:29 quatro e vinte e nove 7:50 sete e cinqüenta

2. After the half hour, time is very commonly expressed by stating the number of minutes before the next hour.

4:40 vinte para as cinco 7:50 dez para as oito

3. a. The half hour is given either as meia or trinta.

7:30 sete e meia/sete e trinta

b. The quarter hour is given as um quarto or quinze.

7:15 sete e um quarto/sete e quinze

7:45 um quarto para as oito/ quinze para as oito

4. When the time is not <u>exactly</u> on the hour, the word <u>hora(s)</u> is usually omitted from the time expression. When the time is on the hour, the word <u>hora(s)</u> is optional.

São quatro e quinze

São cinco para as três

(but)

são quatro (horas)

£ uma (hora)

- 5. The singular form <u>é</u> is used when the item immediately following is singular; the plural form <u>são</u> is used when the item immediately following is plural.
  - 1. É uma hora
  - 2. É meia-noite
  - 3. É meio-dia
  - 4. São três (horas)
  - 5. São cinco para as três
  - 6. São cinco para a uma
- 6. In Brazil the twenty-four hour clock is observed in many official contexts (radio announcements, time tables, etc.), but the twelve hour clock is adhered to in general conversation.

São vinte e três horas It's 11:00 p.m. (radio time)

São onze horas It's 11:00 p.m. (general conversation)

7. The expression está na hora de (utilizing a form of estar rather than ser) is used as the equivalent of 'it is time (to) or (for)'.

Está na hora de sair

It's time to leave.

Está na hora da festa

It's time for the party.

# Practice 8: (Recorded)

Listen to these times as recorded on the tape. For each one select the correct time from the list below and write the corresponding letter in the blank. Answers are given at the end of this unit.

1.	a.	3 <b>:1</b> 5
2.	b.	7:45
3.	c.	7:48
4.	d.	2:03
5•	e.	<b>11:</b> 55
6.	f.	4:17
7.	g.	5:00
8.	h.	8:22
9.	i.	8:42
10.	j.	10:50
11.	k.	1:05
12.	1.	<b>1</b> 2:55
13.	m.	6:50

### Practice 9: (Recorded)

Now practice saying these items. Repeat after the voice on the tape, and follow along visually below.

- 1. It's 8:07
- 2. It's 7:08
- 3. It's 7:53
- 4. It's midnight
- 5. It's 4:45
- 6. It's half past one
- 7. It's a quarter to eight
- 8. It's a quarter past eight
- 9. It's five after one
- 10. It's five till one
- 11. It's one o'clock sharp
- 12. At 4:00
- 13. At 7:30
- 14. At 1:45
- 15. At noon
- 16. At 2:05
- 17. At 6:47
- 18. At 12:15 p.m.
- 19. At 8:17
- 20. At 11:20

### Practice 10: (Recorded)

How would you say these items in Portuguese? Check the tape for confirmation <u>after</u> you have spoken aloud. Do this exercise several times to <u>assure</u> a rapid and accurate response.

- 1. It's four thirty.
- 2. It's quarter past four. (quarter: <u>um quarto</u>)
- 3. It's fifteen past four. (fifteen: quinze)
- 4. It's fifteen to four.

- 5. It's a quarter to four.
- 6. It's five past three.
- 7. It's five to three.
- 8. It's nine o'clock.
- 9. At nine o'clock.
- 10. At nine fifteen.
- 11. At a quarter to nine.
- 12. At midnight.
- 13. Today at three.
- 14. Tomorrow at ten.
- 15. Tomorrow at midnight.

### Part III. Reflexives

### Practice 11: (Recorded)

Practice saying these sentences and the follow-up questions. They will give you additional experience with reflexives.

1. Eu me chamo José. Como se chama o senhor?

2. Eu me levanto cedo. A que horas o senhor se levanta?

3. Eu também me deito cedo. A que horas o senhor se deita?

4. Ontem eu me deitei tarde. O senhor também se deitou tarde?

5. Hoje eu me levantei às 9. A que horas o senhor se levantou?

6. Eu não me lembro. O senhor se lembra?

### Comprehension

- A. Listen to these sentences and make a note of those that are not clear to you.
- B. Listen to these brief dialogs on the tape. Run through each one several times until you are sure you understand them. If you find that you are helped by visual aids, follow along with the printed version below.
  - 1. A. Estou com pressa.
    - B. Outra vez! Por que?
    - A. Tenho muito que fazer.

- B. Você já tomou café?
- A. Não, mas agora não posso. Vou dar um telefonema.
- 2. A. O que é que você vai fazer hoje à noite?
  - B. Vou escrever umas cartas, ler o jornal e deitar cedo.
  - A. E você não vai estudar?
  - B. Vou estudar aqui hoje à tarde.
- 3. A. Como é que ele se chama? Não me lembro.
  - B. Acho que se chama...ah...ah...Esqueci..!
  - A. Esqueceu?!! Mas você falou....
  - B. Esqueci, sim! É só que estou cansado. Deitei tarde ontem à noite.

### Translations

- A. How would you say the following in Portuguese?
  - 1. I'm sleepy.
  - 2. I'm hungry.
  - 3. I'm sleepy and hungry.
  - 4. Are you sleepy?
  - 5. Are you in a hurry?
  - 6. I was in a hurry.
  - 7. I was in such a hurry!
  - 8. I was in such a hurry that I left my book at home.
  - 9. I read the letter.
  - 10. Right afterwards I read the paper.
  - 11. I went to bed late.
  - 12. Around (lá pelas) two o'clock.
  - 13. What time did Paulo go to bed?
  - 14. I don't remember. Around one o'clock.
  - 15. I remember well. At three thirty!
  - 16. He wasn't (estava) sleepy last night, but he is today.
  - 17. I wasn't sleepy when I got up, but I am now.

- 18. I wasn't in a hurry when I got up, but I am now.
- 19. I'm not in a hurry now, but I'm going to be later.
- 20. I have a lot to do today.
- 21. It looks like we're going to have dinner very late.
- 22. I think we're going to have dinner around ten-thirty.
- 23. By the way, Maria, what time are we going to have dinner?
- 24. Let's see. Around about 8:30. Are you hungry?
- 25. No, I ate too much lunch. (almoçar)
- 26. Yes, I am [hungry]. I haven't eaten yet today. (comer)
- 27. No, I'm not hungry now, but I know that (que) I'm going to be at 8:30.
- 28. I was so hungry!
- 29. I was so hungry that I ate everything!
- 30. I was so hungry that I didn't leave anything!
- 31. I was so sleepy (tanto sono) that I didn't remember.
- 32. I forgot everything that he said.
- 33. He forgot everything that I said.
- 34. I don't remember if he studied or not.
- 35. I don't remember if I said that or not.
- 36. He doesn't remember what time he went to bed.
- 37. Well! Let's study!
- 38. Well! Let's work!
- 39. Well! Let's practice more!
- 40. Well! Let's leave!
- B. Practice putting these brief dialogs into Portuguese.
  - 1. A. Did you have a good lunch?
    - B. I ate too much.
    - A. Are you sleepy?
    - B. I am.
    - A. Why don't we open some windows?
    - B. Good idea.
  - 2. A. I left the book at home.
    - B. Here is my book.
    - A. Thanks. (yawn) Excuse me.

- Aren't you awake yet? в.
- Yes, but I'm still sleepy. I read until Α. midnight.
- Did you read the paper today? 3.
  - В. No, why?
  - The president has arrived in Brazil. He is Α. in Rio now.
  - When does he go to  $(\underline{a})$  Brasilia? в.
  - Tomorrow, and right after (logo depois) he Α. goes to (a) Recife.

# Answers to Practice 8:

- 1. f
- 2. b
- 3. а
- 4. C
- 5. i
- 6. j
- 7. đ
- 8. k
- 9. m
- 10.

1

- 11. е
- 12. g
- 13. h

Unit 17

# Preliminary Note:

Beginning with this unit, the programming format will include practice exercises appropriate to the point being developed.

#### Unit 17

1.	You will remember from previous	us units that many Portuguese
	nouns ending in a vowel sound	simply add an $-s$ sound to
	form the plural.	
	<pre>festa &gt; festas</pre>	escritório > escritórios
	semana > semanas	<pre>noite &gt; noites</pre>

2. Now, recall the word for 'lesson'. Recall that it has a stressed nasal diphthong in the last syllable.

lição (	')x	( )x

3. When this word is made plural, something happens to its nasal diphthong before the  $\underline{-s}$  is added. The nasal diphthong is replaced by another nasal diphthong, a blend of the nasal  $\underline{\delta}$  sound and the  $\underline{i}$  sound. It is written  $\underline{\delta}\underline{e}$ .

<u>õe</u>	(	)	(	)	(	)X	(	) X	(	)x
	`	/	`	/	`	/	`	,	\	,

4. Thus, the plural of licão is

5. Most other words that end in <u>ão</u> in the singular form will have the <u>õe</u> diphthong in the plural form. This includes a long list of words that are easily recognizable counterparts (cognates) of English words ending in <u>-tion</u> and <u>-sion</u>. For example, the English word <u>nation</u> is <u>nação</u> in Portuguese. (Be careful not to use the English <u>sh</u> sound. Instead, use the Portuguese <u>s</u> sound.)

6. In the plural form, the nasalized diphthong  $\underline{\tilde{a}o}$  is replaced by the nasalized diphthong  $\tilde{o}e$ .

# Practice 1 (Recorded)

Here are several words whose English counterparts end in '-tion' or '-sion'. You should look at them as you listen and repeat. They will all be fairly easy to recognize; hence we call them 'close cognates'. Notice that the English  $\underline{sh}$  sound corresponds to the Portuguese  $\underline{s}$  sound (numbers 1-9) and the English  $\underline{\Sigma}$  sound corresponds to the Portuguese  $\underline{s}$  sound (numbers 10-12). Each Portuguese word is recorded twice.

	<u>English</u>	Portuguese				
'-		Singular	Plural			
1.	solution	solução	soluções			
2.	position	posição	posições			
3.	condition	condição	condições			
4.	situation	situação	situações			
5.	petition	petição	petições			
6.	communication	comunicação	comunicações			
7.	mission	missão	missões			
8.	session	sessão	sessões			
9.	expression	expressão	expressões			
10.	vision	visão	visões			
11.	invasion	invasão	invasões			
12.	decision	decisão	decisões			

7. Here is the Portuguese word for 'formation'.

8. How would you say the plural <u>formations</u>? (formações)

$$\texttt{Verify:} \quad ( \quad ) \texttt{X} \quad ( \quad ) \texttt{X}$$

9. Here is 'vibration'.

	How would you say 'vibrations'?
(vibra	ções)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
11.	Here is an English plural form: 'intentions'. In Portuguese it is
	intenções ( )x ( )x
12.	How would you say the singular, 'intention'?
(inten	ção)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
13.	Before we go on, let us hasten to warn you that not every <u>-ion</u> word in English converts to a word ending in <u>ão</u> in Portuguese, but very many of them do.
14.	Here's one more that does: 'opinion'.
	<pre>opinião ( )x ( )x opiniões ( )x ( )x</pre>
	opiniões ( )x ( )x
15.	There are several Portuguese singular nouns ending in <u>So</u> whose plurals end in still another nasal diphthong. This diphthong is the 'last' nasal diphthong, the only one that you have not yet been formally introduced to. Here it is:
	$\underline{\tilde{a}e}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x
16.	Here are two common words which have $\underline{\underline{ao}}$ in the singular and $\underline{\underline{ae}}$ in the plural. Notice that they are one syllable words.
	1. 'dog' : <u>cão</u> ( )x ( )x
	'dogs' : <u>cães</u> ( )x ( )x
	<pre>2. 'bread' : pão ( )X ( )X 'bread(s)' : pães ( )X ( )X</pre>

17.	The $\underline{\tilde{a}e}$	diphthong a	ppears	elsewhe	re,	too,	as	in	'mother'	•
		'mother':	mãe	( )x	( '	x				

18. What happens to words that end in stressed <u>-al</u> (like <u>jornal</u>) when they are made plural? They do not just add <u>-s</u>. Instead, the <u>-al</u> is replaced by the non-nasal diphthong <u>ai</u>, and then the <u>-s</u> is added. This gives the ending <u>-ais</u>. Remember, it's not nasal.

19. Thus the plural for jornal is jornais.

20. Portuguese has many words that go through this sort of change, and again we can draw examples from words (both nouns and adjectives) which closely resemble their English counterparts. In repeating the singular form in the following practice be sure to give the final <u>-L</u> that special 'w-like' quality we mentioned in earlier units.

Practice 2. (Recorded)

<u>English</u>				Portuguese										
			<u>s</u>	ingu	lar	•	Plural							
a.	canal	canal	(	)x	(	)x	canais	(	)x	(	)x			
b.	final	final	(	)x	(	)x	finais	(	)x	(	)x			
c.	formal	formal	(	)x	(	)X	formais	(	)x	(	$\mathbf{x}$			
đ.	signal	sinal	(	)x	(	)X	sinais	(	)x	(	)x			
e.	annual	anual	(	)x	(	)X	anuais	(	)x	(	)x			
f.	special	especial	(	)x	(	)X	especiais	(	)x	(	)X			
g.	legal	legal	(	)x	(	)x	legais	(	)x	(	)x			
h.	postal	postal	(	)x	(	)x	postais	(	)x	(	)x			

21.	Here is the adjective 'local'.
	$\underline{local}$ ( )x ( )x
22.	How would you say the plural form?
(locai	s)
	Verify: $( )x ( )x$
23.	Here is the adjective 'normal'.
	$\underline{\mathtt{normal}}$ ( )X ( )X
24.	What is the plural?
(norma	is)
	Verify: $( ) X ( ) X$
25.	The English plural form 'mortals' is given in Portuguese as:
	<pre>mortais ( )X ( )X</pre>
26.	What is the singular form?
(morta	1)
	Verify: $( ) X ( ) X$
27.	Again we must warn you that not all English words ending in <pre>-al will convert into Portuguese as nicely as the examples given above. Many of them will, however.</pre>
28.	Here is another that does, the word 'metal'.
	$\underline{\mathtt{metal}} \qquad (  ) \mathbf{X} \qquad (  ) \mathbf{X}$
29.	What is the plural?
(metai	s)
	Verify: ( )X ( )X

30.	Here	is	a	plural	form:	<u>C</u>	apita:	<u>is</u> .	How	would	you	say	the	singular?
(capita	1)													
				Veri	Ey:	(	) X	(	) X					

31. Now let's review another point. Recall these instances when the pluralizing -s sound of the definite article becomes a -z sound because a vowel sound follows immediately afterwards. Listen for the -z sound, and repeat.

1. os estados ( )x ( )x 2. os escritórios ( )x ( )x 3. as avenidas ( )x ( )x 4. as esposas ( )x ( )x 5. as horas ( )x ( )x

32. The same thing happens to the  $-\underline{s}$  at the end of other words when these words are followed immediately by a vowel sound. The  $-\underline{s}$  sound becomes a  $-\underline{z}$  sound.

Practice 3. (Recorded) Listen and repeat.

	-s sound	-z sound
a.	vamos ( )X	vamo <u>s</u> ao Rio ( )X
b.	vamos ( )X	vamo <u>s</u> agora ( )X
c.	vamos ( )X	vamo <u>s</u> almoçar ( )x
d.	todos ( )x	todo <u>s</u> o <u>s</u> escritórios ( )X
e.	todas ( )x	toda <u>s</u> a <u>s</u> esposas ( )X
f.	fomos ( )X	fomo <u>s</u> ontem ( )X
g.	chegamos ( )X	chegamo <u>s</u> amanhã ( )X
h.	jantamos ( )X	jantamo <u>s</u> a <u>s</u> oito ( )X
i.	temos ( )X	temo <u>s</u> uma ( )X
j.	moramos ( )X	moramo <u>s</u> em Belém ( )X
k.	abrimos ( )X	abrimo <u>s</u> a porta ( )X
1.	mais ( )X	mai <u>s</u> ou menos ( )X
m.	três ( )X	trê <u>s</u> horas ( )X
n.	quantos ( )X	quanto <u>s</u> escritórios ( )X
٥.	os senhores ( )X	os senhore <u>s</u> almoçaram ( )X
p.	as senhoras $($ $)$ X	as senhora $\underline{s}$ acham ( )X

33.	In the last unit you learned the past tense forms of a number
	of common <u>-er</u> type verbs. In this unit we will look at the
	past tense forms of some common <u>-ir</u> type verbs.

34.	You remember that the neutral form for the verb 'open' is abrir. Here now is the form for 'I opened' (past tense).
	( ) ( )x ( )x
35.	<pre>Sair is the neutral form for 'leaving'. Here is the form for 'I left'.</pre>
	( ) ( )x ( )x
36.	Here is a new verb, the neutral form for 'sleeping'.
	<u>dormir</u> ( ) ( )X ( )X
	(One way to remember this verb is to associate it with the English word 'dormant'.)
37.	Here is the form for 'I slept'.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
38.	Repeat again as shown.
	I opened <u>abri</u> ( )X ( )X I left <u>saí</u> ( )X ( )X I slept <u>dormi</u> ( )X ( )X
	<u> </u>

39. <u>Preferir</u> is the neutral form expressing the notion of 'preferring'.

preferir ( )x ( )x

40.	How would you put <a href="mailto:preferred">preferred</a> !?
(prefe	ri)
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
4 <b>1.</b>	Repetir expresses the notion of 'repeating'.
	<u>repetir</u> ( )x ( )x
42.	How would you say 'I repeated'?
(repet	i)
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
43.	Sentir expresses the notion of 'feeling'. (Associate it with
	English 'sentiment').
	<u>sentir</u> ( )X ( )X
li li	en al de la composite de la co
	What is the form for 'I felt'?
(senti	•
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
45	<pre>Cair expresses the notion of 'falling'.</pre>
<del>~</del> ⊅•	
	<pre>cair ( )X ( )X</pre>
46	How would you say 'I fell'?
	non would you buy I lell .
(caí)	Verify: ( )x ( )x
	verily: ( )x ( )x
47.	Try these forms all together.
	<u>abri</u> ( )X I opened
	saí ( )X I left
	dormi ( )X I slept
	<u>senti</u> ( )X I felt
	preferi ( )X I preferred
	<u>repeti</u> ( )X I repeated
	<u>caí</u> ( )X I fell

17.9

48.			m. The ending for the ending in thi	
		<del>-</del>		s frame.
	Ξ	<u>iu</u> ( ) (	x ( )x ( )x	
49.	Now let's a ample, is '		end of some verbs	. Here, for ex-
		<u>abriu</u> (	)x ( )x	
50.	Here is 'he	slept'.		
		dormiu (	)x ( )x	
51.	What is the	form for 'he le	eft'?	
(saiu)				
		Verify: ( )	x ( )x	
		form for '[he]	repeated'? (Neut	ral form: repetir)
(repeti	iu)	Verify: ( )X	( )x	/
		verity: ( )A	( )A	
53.	What is the	form for '[she	] preferred'? (Ne	utral form: <pre>preferir</pre>
(prefer	riu)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	v ( )v	/
		Verify: ( )	X ( )X	
54.	What is the	form for '[she	] fell'? (Neutral	form: cair)
(caiu)				
		Verify: ( )X	x ( )x	
		form for '[he]	felt'? (Neutral	form: sentir)
(sentiu	1)	Verify: ( )X	( )x	

56. Now review these	forms.		
	preferiu	(	)x
	saiu	(	)x
	abriu	(	)x
	sentiu	(	)x
	dormiu	(	)x
	repetiu	(	)x
	caiu	(	)x
Practice 4. (Recorded)  Listen to this set by speakers A and B.		ues	stions and answers as delivered
Practice 5. (Recorded)  This time you are the affirmative, then	to answer t		questions. Answer them all in e for confirmation.
57. In the we-form, -			add the ending $-imos$ .
58. Thus 'we opened'	would be sa	id	like this:
	mos ( )		
59. 'We slept' would	be said lik	e t	chis:
dormi	imos (	)x	( )x
60. How would you say	y 'we left'?	þ	
(saimos)			
•	/erify: (	)x	( )x
61. How would you say	y 'we fell'?	?	
(caimos)	Jerify: (	)	x ( )x

62.	Repeat these three items.
	repetimos ( )X ( )X : 'we repeated'
	<pre>preferimos ( )X ( )X : 'we preferred'</pre>
	<pre>sentimos ( )X ( )X : 'we felt'</pre>
_	
63.	The they-form of these verbs utilizes an ending which is deserving of a bit of special practice.
	a. First, repeat the already familiar <u>-eram</u> ending of
	<pre>-er verbs in the past.</pre>
	$\underline{-eram}$ ( )X ( )X
	b. Now, substitute the $-i$ sound for the $-e$ sound and you
	have the ending for $\underline{-ir}$ verbs. Listen and repeat.
	-iram ( )x ( )x ( )x
64.	Therefore, the form for 'they left' must be:
	( ) ( )x ( )x
65.	The form for 'they opened' is:
	( ) ( )x ( )x
66.	'They slept' is:
	( ) ( )x ( )x
67.	Here are the above forms, plus some others, in print. Repeat
	as indicated.
	sairam ( )X ( )X
	abriram ( )X ( )X
	dormiram ( )X ( )X
	repetiram ( )X ( )X
	cairam ( )X ( )X
	preferiram ( )X ( )X
	extstyle  ext

### Practice 6. (Recorded)

Listen to this short set of questions and answers as given on the tape by two instructors. Numbers 1-4 ask 'Did <u>you-all</u> do something?'. Numbers 5-9 ask 'Did they do something?'.

## Practice 7. (Recorded)

This time <u>you</u> are to answer the questions. Answer them all affirmatively. Check your answers with those given on the tape.

68. Notice this sentence:

<u>Saí de lá</u> ( )X ( )X 'I left there'.

69. Now notice this one:

<u>Saí do Rio</u> ( )X ( )X 'I left Rio'.

70. And this one:

Saí da cidade ( )X ( )X 'I left the city'.

- 71. The word <u>de</u> appears between the verb <u>sair</u> (or one of its forms) and the place left from. That is, Portuguese says 'I left <u>from</u> such-and-such a place', rather than 'I left such-and-such a place'. Where one of the definite articles is involved, the <u>de</u> enters into the appropriate contraction, as in No's 69 and 70 above.
- 72. So, if you wanted to say 'I left the party', you would say:

  Saí da festa ( )x ( )x
- 73. How would you say 'I left the Embassy?' Make the contraction. (Saí da Embaixada)

Verify: ( )x ( )x

74. How would you say 'He left the school? (Ele saiu da escola.)

Verify: ( )x ( )x

75.	Here	is	'He	left	Joe'	s ho	me'	(the	home	of	Joe	).
			Ele	salu	ı da	casa	do	José	(	) X	(	)x

76. Contrast this with 'He left home', which contains no contraction since there is no article ('the') to contract with de.

Ele saiu de casa ( )x ( )x

77. How would you say 'He left the park'? Use do. (Ele salu do parque)

Verify: ( )X ( )X

78. How would you say 'He left the office'? (Ele saiu do escritório)

 $\texttt{Verify:} \quad ( \quad ) \texttt{X} \quad ( \quad ) \texttt{X}$ 

## Practice 8. (Recorded)

Put these brief utterances into Portuguese. Confirm with the tape.

- 1. He is going to leave Brazil.
- 2. He is going to leave Rio tomorrow.
- 3. He has already left the Embassy.
- 4. He left there yesterday.
- 5. He plans to leave home early.
- 6. He left the restaurant early.

#### Pronunciation

79. Portuguese has a very few words beginning with the consonant cluster <u>pn</u>. This is a combination of sounds which English speakers do not have at the beginning of a word, so it may be troublesome at first. The word for 'automobile tire', which begins with this cluster, appears in the dialog for this unit.

<u>pneu</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x

80.	You prono	ounce	both	the	<u>p</u>	and	the	<u>n</u> ,	and	follow	with	the
	familiar	dipht	chong	<u>eu</u> .								

( ) ( )x ( )x

Note: Before going on to the dialog, take note of the new verbs presented in the section just concluded.

cair

dormir

sentir

preferir

repetir

```
Dialog
```

Sônia

ô

Hey!

o dorminhoco

sleepyhead

acorde

wake up (command form)

O dorminhoco, acorde!

Hey, sleepyhead.... wake up!

João

an

uh

ô

oh

An, o quê...? Ô! Desculpe!

Uh, what...? Oh! Excuse me.

Sônia

João

John

caiu

you fell (-ir type)

vez?

João! Você caiu no sono outra John! Did you fall asleep again?

João

parece

it appears (-er type)

Parece.

Apparently so.

dormi

I slept (-ir type)

essa

that

essa noite

that night (used here in the

sense of 'last night')

Eu não dormi muito essa noite. I didn't sleep much last night.

Sônia

Não? Por quê?

No? Why?

	Joã	0			
voltamos				we	returned (-ar type)
a praia				bea	ch
Nós voltamos tarde da pra	<u>ia</u> .		We	retu	rned late from the beach.
sabe				you	know (- <u>er</u> type)
aconteceu				(it	) happened (- <u>er</u> type)
E você sabe o que acontec	eu?		<u>An</u>	<u>d</u> <u>do</u>	you know what happened?
	<u>S</u> ôni	<u>a</u>			
Não. O que é que acontece	<u>u</u> ?		No	. Wha	t happened?
	Joã	io			
o pneu				tir	e
furou				it	<pre>punctured (-ar type)</pre>
logo					cisely (used here in the ense of 'of all places')
a ponte				bri	dge
O pneu furou logo na pont	<u>e</u> .		Th of	e tir	e blew out on the bridge, places.
	<u>s</u> ôr	nia			
quem				who	,
dirigindo				dri	ving (- <u>ir</u> type) *
E quem é que estava diriq	<u>indo</u> ?		An	d who	was driving?
	Joã	io			
Eu estava.			I	was.	
* Supplementary note	and p	racti	lce.	(Rec	orded)
The neutral form is $\underline{d}$	irigi	<u>r.</u> .	Chis	verb	fits into the same cate-
gory as sair, dormir, etc	, pre	sente	ed e	arlie	r in this unit. Thus,
dirigi	(	)x	(	)x	'I drove'
dirigiu	(	)x	(	)x	'He drove'
dirigimos	(	)x	(	)x	'We drove'
dirigiram	(	)x	(	)x	'They drove'
dirigir					

# Expansion Exercises

# Adverbial Time Expressions

# Expansion Exercise 1 (Recorded)

Practice these time expressions.

	a.	tonight	hoje à noite ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$				
			hoje de noite ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$				
	b.	tomorrow night	amanhã à noite ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$				
			amanhã de noite ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$				
	c.	last night	ontem à noite ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$				
			ontem de noite ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$				
	d.	this afternoon	hoje à tarde ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$				
			hoje de tarde ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$				
	e.	tomorrow afternoon	amanhã à tarde ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$				
			amanhã de tarde ( )X ( )X				
	f.	yesterday afternoon	ontem à tarde ( )X ( )X				
			ontem de tarde ( )X ( )X				
	g.	this morning	hoje de manhã ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$				
	h.	tomorrow morning	amanhã de manhã ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$				
	i.	yesterday morning	ontem de manhã ( )x ( )x				
Notice	that	'afternoon' and 'ni	ight' are preceded by either à or				
de.			<u>u</u> or u or <u>u</u> or u or				
			>				
Exp		ion Exercise 2 (Reco	,				
			placing the letter of the correct				
transla			o the tape whenever necessary.				
	1.	( )	a. This afternoon				
	2.	( )	b. This morning				
	3.	( )	c. Tomorrow morning				
	4.	( )	d. Tonight				
	5.	( )	e. Yesterday afternoon				
	6.	( )	f. Last night				
	7.	( )	g. Tomorrow night				

# Expansion Exercise 3 (Recorded)

- a. Practice putting these items into Portuguese.
  - 1. I left this morning.
  - 2. I'm going to leave tonight.
  - She's going to leave tomorrow night.
  - 4. But Paul is going to leave tomorrow morning.
  - 5. I'm not going to study this afternoon.
  - 6. Because I already studied last night.
  - 7. Did you sleep well last night? (essa noite)\*
  - 8. No, but I'm going to sleep well this morning.
- b. Prepare these brief questions and answers, either by yourself or with one of your fellow students. Use <u>é que</u> in the questions. For example, No.1 would be: <u>Quando</u> <u>é que o senhor saiu?</u>

1. When did you leave?

Yesterday morning.

2. When did you return?

Yesterday afternoon.

3. When did you fall?

This morning.

4. When did you fall asleep?

This morning.

5. When did you go home?

(para casa) Last night.

6. When did you write the letter?

This afternoon.

- 7. When are you going to sleep? Tomorrow morning.
- 8. When are you going to drive? Tonight.
- \* Essa noite refers to sleeping time. When the reference is to time other than sleeping time, 'last night' is given as ontem a noite or ontem de noite. 'I went to the movies last night' would be Eu fui ao cinema ontem à noite or ontem de noite.

9. When are you going to return? Tomorrow morning.

10. When are you going to practice? Tomorrow night.

11. When are you going to read the book?

Tonight.

12. When are you going to arrive
 in Rio?

Tomorrow afternoon.

# Comprehension

Listen to these sentences and make a note of any that are not clear to you.

#### Translations

- I. Practice in asking questions (Recorded)
  - A. Ask these questions beginning with O que é que.
    - 1. What happened?
    - 2. What fell?
    - 3. What did he eat?
    - 4. What did he drink?
    - 5. What did he take?
    - 6. What did he prepare?
    - 7. What did he prefer?
    - 8. What did he write?
    - 9. What did he feel?
    - 10. What did he open?
  - B. These questions begin with Como é que.
    - 1. How did it happen?
    - 2. How did he fall? (Use <u>ele</u>)
    - 3. How did he begin?
    - 4. How did they begin?
    - 5. How did they sleep?
    - 6. How did they spend the night?
    - 7. How did they arrive?

- C. These begin with Quem é que.
  - 1. Who fell?
  - 2. Who opened the window?
  - 3. Who prepared the food?
  - 4. Who drove?
  - 5. Who got up late?
  - 6. Who returned early?
  - 7. Who went out with Yara?
  - 8. Who wrote the book?

\_\_\_\_\_\_

- 9. Who wants to eat?
- 10. Who wants to go?
- 11. Who wants to begin?
- 12. Who has to work?
- 13. Who has to return?
- 14. Who is going to return?
- 15. Who is going to drive?

- 16. Who remembers? (reflexive)
- 17. Who knows Mary?
- 18. Who is awake?
- 19. Who is sleepy?
- 20. Who is hungry?

- 21. Who is driving?
- 22. Who is dancing with Joe?
- D. These begin with por que é que.
  - 1. Why did they fall? (Use eles.)
  - 2. Why did they leave?
  - 3. Why did they stay?
  - 4. Why did they return?
  - 5. Why did they eat so much? (tanto)
  - 6. Why did they begin late?
  - 7. Why did they go to bed early?
  - 8. Why did they forget?

- 9. Why did they open the door?
- 10. Why did they fall asleep?
- 11. Why did they drive?
- E. These begin with Onde é que.
  - 1. Where did she eat lunch? (Use ela.)
  - 2. Where did she stay?
  - 3. Where did she fall?
  - 4. Where did she drive?
  - 5. Where did she eat?
  - 6. Where did she go?
  - 7. Where did she leave the book?
  - 8. Where did she begin?
- II. Say these thoughts in Portuguese.
  - 1. I'm sorry. I don't remember.
  - 2. I'm sorry. I don't know what happened.
  - 3. I'm sorry. I can't go today.
  - 4. I'm sorry. I left the car at the (na) Embassy.
  - 5. I'm sorry, but I'm sleepy.
  - 6. I'm sorry, but it's time to go back.
  - 7. I was driving when the tire blew out.
  - 8. I was driving when we passed the Embassy. (Use passar pela
  - 9. It was raining when we left the Embassy.
  - 10. I slept real well because it was raining.
  - 11. I'm going to sleep real well because it's raining.
  - 12. We're not going to leave now because it's raining.
- III. Prepare these dialogettes for presentation to your instructor.
  - 1. A. Do you know what happened today?
    - B. No. What happened?
    - A. I fell asleep in the office, of all places.

- B. Sleepyhead! You'll have to go to bed earlier.
- 2. A. I arrived late today. I'm sorry.
  - B. What happened?
  - A. A tire blew out.
  - B. Where? Near here?
  - A. No. In the tunnel, of all places.
- 3. A. Did you like the beach, John?
  - B. Not very much, no.
  - A. Why?
  - B. It rained all day.
  - A. Why didn't you stay there another day? (mais um dia)
  - B. I had to return because I have a lot of things to do.
- 4. A. Are we going to go back now?
  - B. Why not? Don't you want to?
  - A. Yes, but it's raining.
  - B. But we're going in Yara's car.
  - A. Hmm. I think I'm going to stay here.
- 5. A. At what time are you going to leave for New York?
  - B. At 11:00. After the party.
  - A. But isn't that late?
  - B. Yes, it is. But I'm in a hurry.
  - A. Drive carefully! (Dirija com cuidado!)

#### Unit 18

		that 'my' is given in Portuguese
as either meu or minha	, the	choice depending on the gender of
the item that follows.		

- a.  $\underline{\text{meu}}$   $\underline{\text{carro}}$  ( )X ( )X
- b. minha esposa ( )X ( )X
- You have also seen that the appropriate definite article very frequently appears before meu and minha.
  - a. o meu carro ( )x ( )x
  - b. <u>a minha esposa</u> ( )X ( )X
- 3. The phrases in No. 2 above mean exactly the same as those in No. 1: 'my car' and 'my wife'.
- 4. In English, if I want to remove the word 'car' from the sentence 'My car is a Chevrolet', I must also change something else. I must say,

'Mine is a Chevrolet.'

In such a case we assume, of course, that the word 'car', or its equivalent, has already been mentioned in a previous sentence. We would not be likely to say such a sentence if this were not true.

5. In Portuguese, if you wish to remove the word <u>carro</u> from the sentence <u>O meu carro</u> <u>é um Chevrolet</u>, you do so without changing anything else in the sentence.

O meu é um Chevrolet. ( )X ( )X

This is the equivalent of 'Mine is a Chevrolet'. Again, common sense tells us that 'carro' was mentioned in a previous sentence.

- 6. Notice that you <u>must</u> have the definite article. You cannot say <u>Mexi & vin cheviolet</u>. The <u>o</u> must be present.
- 7. If you are dealing with a feminine item, the procedure is the same. You omit the noun but retain the article and the possessive. Thus, if your Brazilian friend tells you--
  - a. A minha esposa é brasileira ( )X ( )X 'My wife is Brazilian'

you may want to respond with---

- b. A minha é americana. ( )X ( )X 'Mine is American'.
- 8. The plurals work the same way. For example, in response to the statement--
  - a. Os meus meninos estão no Rio. ( )X ( )X

you might wish to say---

- b. Os meus estão aqui. ( )X ( )X ( )X ( )X
- 9. If you tell your Brazilian friend--
  - a. As minhas filhas são americanas. ( )X ( )X

he may respond with---

b. As minhas são brasileiras. ( )X ( )X

## Practice 1. (Recorded)

How would you say 'mine' with reference to the following items? Use the definite article. Confirm with the tape.

- a. car
- b. daughter
- c. house
- d. daughters
- e. wife
- f. cars
- g. table
- h. newspaper
- i. windows
- j. tires
- k. letter
- 1. letters
- m. party

## Practice 2. (Recorded)

In this exercise, your instructor will make short statements about items or persons that belong to him. You are to respond with, 'Mine is(are) such-and-such too.' For example, if you hear---

A minha esposa está em Washington.

you should respond with---

A minha está em Washington também. (1-8)

10. Now let us continue. Recall this sentence:

<u>E que tal o seu inglês</u>? ( )X ( )X 'And how's your English?

11. O seu (or just seu) is the form used for your when one is dealing with masculine nouns.

- (o) seu livro ( )X ( )X
- (o) seu menino ( )X ( )X
- (o) seu carro ( )x ( )x

12. When one is dealing with feminine nouns, <u>a sua</u> (or <u>sua</u>) is the appropriate form.

 $\underline{a} \underline{sua}$  ( )x ( )x ( )x

13. Thus, 'your house' is---

- a.  $\underline{sua} \underline{casa}$  ( )X ( )X or
- b.  $\underline{a}$  sua casa ( )x ( )x ( )x

14. 'Your wife' is---

(a) sua esposa ( )x ( )x

15. How would you say 'your party'?

(a sua festa)

Verify: ( )x ( )x

16.	In the cas	e of a pwith it.	lural Thus	noun, s, 'you	you must p r parties'	luralize	everyt	hing
	a. <u>as sua</u>	s festas	. (	)x (	)X, or s	simply		
	b. suas f	estas (	)x	( )x				
17.	'Your cars	' would	be	-				
	a. Os seu	s carros	. (	) <b>x</b> (	)X, or s	simply		
	b. seus c	arros (	)x	( )	x			
18.	How would	you say	'your	partie	s'?			
(as sua	as festas) Ve	erify:	( )2	ζ (	)x			
19.	How would	you say	'your	sons'?				
(os se	us filhos)							
	Ve	rify:	( )3	ζ (	)x			
20.	If we are your house simply say	without						
	<u>a</u> <u>sua</u>	( )x	: (	)X				
	In English	, this t	ransla	ates as	'yours'.			
21.	How would	you say	'yours	s' with	reference	e to a 'pa	rty'?	
(a sua	Ve	erify:	( )2	ζ (	)x			
22.	How would 'parties'?	you say	'yours	s' with	reference	e to the <u>r</u>	lural	item
(as su	uas) Ve	erify:	( )2	ζ (	)x			
23.	How would	you say	'yours	s' with	reference	e to a car	?	
(o seu	ı) Ve	erify:	( )2	ζ (	)x			
24.	How would	you say	'yours	s' with	reference	e to the p	lural	'cars'
(os se	eus) Ve	erify:	( )2	<b>K</b> (	)x			

Practice 3. (Recorded)
Say the following sentences, then give the equivalent of the question 'And yours?' for each one. Confirm with the tape.
1. A minha filha é americana. (And yours?)
2. O meu carro é um Chevrolet. (And yours?)
3. Os meus pneus são velhos. (And yours?) [plural]
4. A minha casa é velha. (And yours?)
5. As minhas crianças são brasileiras. (And yours?) [plural]
6. A minha festa é amanhã. (And yours?)
7. O meu espanhol é péssimo. (And yours?)
8. Os meus filhos estão em Washington. (And yours?) [plural]
25. 'Our house' is
$\underline{a} \underline{nossa} \underline{casa}$ ( )X ( )X
26. 'Our book' is
o nosso livro ( )x ( )x
27. To say 'ours', with reference to 'house', just omit the word <a href="mailto:casa">casa</a> .
$\underline{a} \underline{nossa}$ ( )X ( )X
28. Likewise, to say 'ours' with reference to 'book', you omit the word <u>livro</u> .
$\underline{o} \ \underline{nosso} \ ( ) X \ ( ) X$
29. With reference to the plural items 'houses' and 'books', the forms are, respectively:
as nossas $( ) X ( ) X$
os nossos $( )X ( )X$
30. How would you say 'ours' with reference to 'daughter'? (a nossa)
Verify: ( )X ( )X
31. How would you say 'ours' with reference to daughters'? (as nossas)
Verify: ( )X ( )X

	32.	How would yo	a say 'our' with reference to 'beaches'?
(as	noss	sas)	
			Verify: $( )x ( )x$
(os	33. noss		ce to 'parks'?
			Verify: $( ) X ( ) X$
(as	34. noss		ce to 'embassies'?
			Verify: $( ) X ( ) X$
	35.	and 'yours',	u have learned how to say 'my' and 'mine', 'your' and 'our' and 'ours'. But how about 'his'? And er' and 'hers'?
	36.	The Portugue book of him' contracts, a	se equivalent of 'his book' is literally 'the . The phrase 'of him' is <u>de</u> + <u>ele</u> , which always s follows:
			<u>dele</u> ( )x ( )x ( )x
	37.	Thus, 'the b	ook of him' or 'his book' is
			o livro dele ( )X ( )X ( )X
10	38.	How would yo	u say 'his accent'?
(0	Soca	que dele;	Verify: $( )x ( )x$
( a	39. espos	How would yo sa dele)	u say 'his wife'?
			Verify: ( )X ( )X
/		form of that books'?	possessed is plural, you simply use the plural item, as always. Thus, how would you say 'his
(OS	S LIV	ros dele)	Verify: ( )X ( )X
( > c		How would yo anças dele)	u say 'his children'?
(as	CII	anças dele)	Verify: $( )x ( )x$
	42.	The Portugue book of her' contracts, a	
			<u>dela</u> ( )x ( )x ( )x
	43.	Thus, 'the b	ook of her' or 'her book' is
			<u>o livro dela</u> ( )x ( )x ( )x

	44.	How	wou]	ld you	say	'her	Portu	auese	۱			
(0	porti			•	_			_				
`	•			erify:	(	)x	(	)x				
	45.	How	wou]	ld you	say	'her	newsp	aper	?			
(0	jorna	al de										
				erify:	•	•	•	)x				
				Ld you	say	'her	lette	r'?				
( a	carta	a del			,	١	,	\				
	l			erify:	•	•	,	)x				
		you	say	it?	to s	say tl	ne plu	ıral,	her lett	er <u>s</u> ', ho	w would	
(as	cart	tas d		) erify:	(	١x	(	)x				
	48.	And		would		•	•	,	en!?			
(as	cria		s del	La)					··· .			
		•		erify:			(	)x				
	Pract	tice	<u>4</u> •	(Reco	cded)	)						
		Prac	ctice	e sayir	ng th	ese :	items	until	you can	do them	freely	and
	easi]	Ly.										
		1.	His	friend	Ē		9.	His	hous <u>es</u>			
		2.	Her	friend	Ē		10.	Her	hous <u>es</u>			
		3.	Her	accent	Ė		11.	Her	food			
		4.	Her	tables	<u> </u>		<b>1</b> 2.	His	room			
		5•	His	friend	1 <u>s</u>		13.	His	children			
		6.	His	son <u>s</u>			14.	His	newspape	r <u>s</u>		
		7.	His	wife			<b>1</b> 5.	Her	dialogs			
		8.	His	Chevro	olet							
	lı o	~ 6 -					- C-		•	-		
	49.	hous he	se', rs'.	we are Lite	e lei erall	t wit	th <u>a</u> d the on	lela, vie of l	phrase <u>a</u> which is her'.)	the equi	valent	of
			<u>a</u> 0	casa de	ela	(	)x	(	)x			
				dela		(	•	(	•			
	50.	T.ika	-wise	if v	ve re	emove	the w	ord c	arro from	the phr	- ase - c	arr
	<i></i> å	dela	a 'he	er car'	, we	are	left	with	o dela.	This too	transl	ate

I

	2	carro de	<u>La</u> (	)x	(	)x				
	2	<u>dela</u> (	)x	(	)x					
51.	Similarling about old'),	ly, if we it 'houses' [ will say	have , and <u>a del</u>	alrea l I wa <u>e</u> .	dy es nt to	stabli say	shed t'his'	hat we (as in	are tal 'his is	k-
	<u> </u>	casa dele	<u>e</u> (	)x	(	X				
	<u> </u>	<u>dele</u> (	)x	(	)x					
52.	And, if will use way:	I am refer the masc	rring uline	to so defin	methi ite a	ing ma art <b>i</b> cl	sculin e and	e, suc say 'h	h as <u>car</u> is' this	ro,
	9	<u>dele</u> (	)x (	( )x						
53.	If we an ate plum the maso	re speaking cal defini culine plu	g of p te art ral, i	olural icle. is as	iter Thu follo	ns, I ıs, 'h ows:	will u ers',	se the when i	appropr t refers	i- to
	<u> </u>	os <u>dela</u> (	)x	(	)x					
54. (as de]		Ld you say	'hers	s' wit	h rei	ferenc	e to '	<b>l</b> etter	s¹?	
(as de	La)	Verify:	( )	) x (	)x					
55. (os del		ld you say	'hers	s' wit	h re	ferenc	e to d	lialogs	1 ?	
(os de	Laj	Verify:	( )	) x (	)x					
56. (os del	Now, how	w would yo	u say	'his'	wit]	n refe	erence	to 'di	alogs'?	
(os de	Le,	Verify:	( )	) x (	)x					
57. (as de:		would you	say '	his'	when	refer	ring t	o 'par	ties'?	
(as ac.		Verify:	( )	) x (	)x					
Pract	tice 5.	(Recorded	)							
to th		actice is on the ta								n

# Practice 6. (Recorded)

Repeat the following sentences from the tape, then translate the English query that follows in parentheses.

Thus, if you hear os livros dele, you will repeat only os dele.

1. A minha filha é americana. (And his?)
2. O meu carro é um Chevrolet. (And hers?)
3. Os meus pneus são velhos. (And his?)
4. A minha casa é velha. (And hers?)
5. A minha festa é amanhã. (And hers?)
6. Os meus filhos estão em Washington. (And his?)
7. O meu português é muito bom. (And hers?)
58. Instead of using the prounouns <u>ele</u> , <u>ela</u> , etc., we can use proper nouns. That is, instead of saying 'the book of her', we can say 'the book of Paul', i.e. 'Paul's book'.
<u>o livro de Paulo</u> ( )X ( )X
59. If we use the definite article o with Paul's name, we have the contraction do. The meaning is still 'Paul's book'.
o livro do Paulo ( )X ( )X
60. Using the contraction, how would you say 'Paul's office'? (o escritório do Paulo)
Verify: ( )X ( )X
61. Using the contraction da, how would you say 'Yara's office'?
(o escritório da Yara) Verify: ( )X ( )X
62. How would you say 'Yara's friends'?
(os amigos da Yara) Verify: ( )x ( )x
63. How would you say 'Roberto's friends'?
(os amigos do Roberto)  Verify: ( )X ( )X
64. How would you say 'Roberto's grammar'?
(a gramática do Roberto) Verify: ( )x ( )x
<pre>Practice 7. (Recorded)</pre>
Translate these brief phrases into Portuguese. The tape confirmations have the contractions $\underline{do}$ and $\underline{da}$ .
1. Paul's car 4. Joe's accent
2. Paul's cars 5. The teacher's words
3. Mary's Spanish 6. Rio's beaches

7. The Embassy's door 9. John's wife 8. John's newspaper 10. Yara's book And, again, it is possible to leave out the noun in the above phrases. If we omit the noun from the phrase o escritório da Yara, for example, we are left with o da Yara, which means 'Yara's' (referring to her office, of course). o da Yara ( )x ( )x 66. If we are talking about houses, and we want to say something about Paul's house without actually saying the word casa, we can say a do Paulo, which means 'Paul's'.  $\underline{a} \otimes \underline{a} \underline{do} \underline{Paulo} = \underline{a} \underline{do} \underline{Paulo}$  ( )X ( )X The same procedure applies to the plural. The phrase os <u>livros</u> da <u>Yara</u> ('Yara's books') can be shortened to os <u>da</u> <u>Yara</u> ('Yara's). 67. os da Yara ( )X ( )X Likewise, as praias do Rio ('Rio's beaches') can be shortened to as do Rio ('Rio's'). 68. as do Rio ()XPractice 8. (Recorded) While referring to the nouns suggested at the left, practice putting into Portuguese the statements at the right. Check with the tape. Example: carro a. Yara's is a Chevrolet. (You should say: O da Yara é um Chevrolet.) Paul's arrived yesterday. filha a. b. Mine arrives today. Maria's is going to arrive tomorrow. 2. carro a. Mine is a Ford. The teacher's is a Ford, too, b. But Roberto's is a Volkswagen. c. Roberto's speak Portuguese. 3. filhos (plural) a. Yara's speak Portuguese, too. b. Do yours speak Portuguese, too? c.

4. festa

a. Mine is today.
b. Maria's is today too.
c. Is Sandra's going to be tomorrow?

5. pneus (plural)

a. Carlos's are old.
b. Mine are old, too.
c. And Bill's blew out.

6. amigo

a. Fred's is Brazilian.
b. Mine is too.
c. Yara's is American.

#### DIALOG

#### Professor

dona para (title of respect)
to, towards

Quando é que a senhora vai When are you going to Brazil, para o Brasil, Dona Bárbara? Barbara?

### Barbara

vinte e seis maio o sábado depois de a formatura twenty-six May Saturday after graduation

No dia vinte e seis de maio. On the 26th of May.

O sábado depois da minha formatura.

The Saturday after my graduation.

#### Professor

direta diretamente direct directly

<u>A senhora vai diretamente</u> <u>Are you going directly to Rio?</u>
<a href="mailto:para">para o Rio?</a>

#### Barbara

parar pais stop (neutral form)
parents

Eom, eu vou parar na Florida

E passar uma semana com os

meus pais.

Well, I'm going to stop in Florida

and spend a week with my parents.

para

towards, for

E de lá, então, eu vou para And from there, then, I'm going to Rio.

#### <u>Professor</u>

Que bom!

That's good.

a gente receber notícias

suas

we\*
receive (neutral form)

news

yours, of you

A gente vai receber noticias Are we going to hear from you? suas?

Barbara

mandar o cartão send (neutral form)
post card

Eu vou mandar um cartão do Rio. I'm going to send a card from Rio.

Professor

comprou as passagens

you bought (-ar type) tickets

A senhora já comprou as passagens?

Did you buy your tickets yet?

Barbara

reservei Variq Eu já reservei; de Washington a Miami pela Eastern, e de Miami on Eastern, and from Miami ao Rio pela Varig. \*\* Miami to Rio on Varig.

<sup>\*</sup> A gente (literally, 'the people') is very commonly used in the sense of 'we' or 'us'.

<sup>\*\*</sup> The definite article in this contraction is feminine since the reference is to the word <a href="companhia">companhia</a> 'company', which is feminine. That is, the Portuguese concept is 'on the Eastern (or Varig) Company'. Notice that the meaning of <a href="pela">pela</a> here ('on') is quite different from its meaning in Unit 16 where it was equated with 'around, about'. This is typical of the wide variety of equivalences that prepositions assume across language boundaries.

## Supplementary Vocabulary (Recorded)

## The days of the week

segunda-feira Monday
terça-feira Tuesday
quarta-feira Wednesday
quinta-feira Thursday
sexta-feira Friday
sábado Saturday
domingo Sunday

#### The months of the year

janeiro January fevereiro February março March abril April maio May junho June julho July agosto August setembro September outubro October novembro November dezembro December

## Expansion Exercise 1 (Recorded)

Practice saying these dates after your instructor's voice on the tape.

- 1. Sábado, dois de fevereiro
- 2. Domingo, vinte e seis de fevereiro
- 3. Quarta-feira, doze de janeiro
- 4. Quinta-feira, seis de junho
- 5. Segunda-feira, dez de abril
- 6. Sexta-feira, quinze de setembro
- 7. Terca-feira, trinta de maio
- 8. Sábado, dezesseis de julho
- 9. Domingo, vinte e sete de agosto
- 10. Quarta-feira, primeiro\* de outubro

<sup>\*</sup> All dates except the 'first' are expressed with cardinal numbers.

#### 

# Repeat: A senhora já comprou as passagens?

#### Translate:

- 1. Have you (already) bought the car?
- 2. I already bought the car.
- 3. Are you going to buy the car?
- 4. I'm not going to buy anything.
- 5. I want to buy a postcard.
- 6. We bought two tickets.

# Expansion Exercise 3. (Recorded) (Practice with the verb mandar)

#### Repeat: Eu vou mandar um cartão.

#### Translate:

- 1. He's going to send a card from São Paulo.
- 2. He has already sent a card.
- 3. I sent a letter yesterday.
- 4. Did you send the letter to Brasilia?
- 5. Varig has already sent the tickets to New York.

# Expansion Exercise 4. (Recorded) (Practice with a gente, meaning 'we')

# Repeat: A gente vai receber noticias suas?

#### Translate:

- 1. Are we going to receive a letter?
- 2. Are we going to like [it]?
- 3. Are we going to work tomorrow?
- 4. Are we going to stop in Rio?
- 5. Are we going to sleep until late?
- 6. We drink a lot of coffee.
- 7. We eat a good lunch here.

#### Comprehension

Listen to these utterances and make a note of any that are not clear to you.

#### Exchanges and Brief Dialogs

- I. (Recorded) These are brief, 2 and 3 line exchanges in Portuguese. First, listen to them on tape for comprehension purposes. Then look at them below, preferably while continuing to listen, and familiarize yourself with them so that you can use them readily, easily and understandingly with your teacher.
- 1. A. Eu esqueci os meus livros.
  - B. E eu esqueci os meus também.
- 2. A. O senhor falou com os seus pais?
  - B. Falei.
  - A. Que bom! Eu vou falar com os meus amanhã.
- 3. A. Este é o meu livro. Qual é o seu?
  - B. Este é o meu.
- 4. A. O filho do Paulo fala espanhol.
  - B. O do Roberto fala inglês.
- 5. A. Eu estou com o carro da Sandra.
  - B. Por que? O que é que aconteceu com o seu?
  - A. Nada. O meu está em casa.
- 6. A. Eles já compraram as passagens.
  - B. Eu ainda não comprei a minha.
- 7. A. Aqui está a minha passagem.
  - B. Você sabe onde é que está a da Sandra?
- 8. A. A minha filha fala inglês. E a sua?
  - B. A minha só fala português.
- 9. A. A nossa casa fica em Copacabana.
  - B. A nossa fica em Ipanema, perto da praia.
- 10. A. O meu filho é americano.
  - B. O da Yara é americano também.

- II. Practice these brief dialogs. The first two are in Portuguese and are recorded for you.
  - 1. A. O meu carro está muito perto, na Avenida Rio Branco. Onde está o seu?
    - B. O meu está lá também.
    - A. Então vamos no meu, ou no seu?\*
    - B. O do Jorge está perto também. Por que não vamos no\* dele?
  - 2. A. O senhor já comprou as passagens?
    - B. Já, sim. Para o dia 28 de junho, pela Braniff.
    - A. Por que pela Braniff? O senhor não gosta da Pan Am?
    - B. Gosto, claro, mas a Pan Am vai diretamente ao Rio. A Braniff pára em Lima, e eu quero passar uns dias lá.
    - A. O senhor conhece Lima?
    - B. Conheço, sim. Eu tenho amigos lá.
    - A. Que bom
  - 3. A. Are you going by Varig?
    - B. No. by Pan American.
    - A. What time do you arrive in Rio?
    - B. At 7:00 in the morning. Real early.
- III. Now, how would you say these thoughts in Portuguese?
  - 1. I'm going to stop there.
  - 2. I'm going to stop in Belém.
  - 3. I'm going to spend two weeks in Belém.
  - 4. I'm going to spend Saturday in New York.
  - 5. When are you going to New York?
  - 6. Are you going after the graduation?
  - 7. From Rio, then, we are going to São Paulo.
  - 8. From Rio, then, he went to Fortaleza.
  - 9. From Rio, then, we went to Curitiba.
  - 10. And from Curitiba, we returned to Rio.

<sup>\*</sup>Contraction:  $\underline{em} + \underline{o} = \underline{no}$ 

# UNIT 19

Review	Material	-	Pronunciation	Practice

1.	Here is the phrase 'with the car'.
2.	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
	a. <u>com</u> ( )x ( )x
	b. <u>o</u> ( )x ( )x
	c. <u>com o</u> ( )x ( )x
3.	For our purposes, $\underline{\text{com}} \odot \text{might}$ be rewritten like this, without an $\underline{m}$ :
	<u>K⊗</u> <u>o</u> ( )X ( )X
4.	When saying $\underline{\text{com}}\ \underline{\text{o}}$ , if you accidentally put an $\underline{\text{m}}$ sound after the $\underline{\tilde{\text{o}}}$ , the Portuguese-speaking listener will very likely interpret what you say as $\underline{\text{como}}\ \underline{\text{o}}$ , which means 'like the'.
5•	Since 'with the' means something other than 'like the', it is important that you say this phrase so that you will be understood. For example, listen to the tape, and repeat 'with the car'.
	( )x ( )x
6.	Now listen to the tape, and repeat 'like the car'.
	( )x ( )x
7.	Repeat the one after the other.
	a. 'with the car' ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
	b. 'like the car' ( $)X$ ( $)X$
8.	Now do the same with the phrases 'with the president' and 'like the president'.
	a. 'with the president' ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	b. 'like the president' ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$

## Practice 1. (Recorded)

This is a chance to practice some more of the same. Below is a list of items that appear on the tape in Portuguese. In each case, item (a) is 'with somebody or something', and item (b) is 'like somebody or something'. There is a pause for you to repeat after each one.

(a) (b) 1. with the traffic like the traffic 2. with the car like the car 3. with Bill like Bill with the children like the children 5. with an accent like an accent 6. with a child like a child 7. with my friend like my friend

- 9. This same unwanted m sound can be a problem with other words ending in a nasal vowel or nasal diphthong when they are followed immediately by another vowel.
- 10. Thus, in <u>falam</u> <u>espanhol</u>, you must be sure that you go directly from the nasal diphthong  $\underline{\tilde{ao}}$  to the following  $\underline{e}$  without producing an  $\underline{m}$ .

# falam espanhol ( )X ( )X

11. In this case, there is not much danger of your being misunderstood if you slip and put an m sound in the utterance. But to do so does constitute an error of pronunciation grave enough to hurt the native speaker's ears. So you will want to be careful. There is a nasal 30, but there is no m.

falam espanhol ( )X ( )X

12. Here is another example.

tem uns livros ( ) ( )x ( )x

13. In this case one goes directly from the nasal diphthong  $\underline{em}$  to the nasal vowel  $\underline{\tilde{u}}$  without saying an  $\underline{m}$  sound. Now, try the first part of the utterance again.

tem uns ( ) ( )x ( )x

## Practice 2. (Recorded)

Here	is a	chance t	to pi	cactice	more o	of th	e same	. Repe	at the
following	items	, being	very	z carefi	ul not	to p	roduce	an <u>m</u> s	ound
where two						_			
shown her	e with	the $igcup$		First :	listen	to t	he tap	e, then	repeat.

1.	trabalham_aqui ( )X ( )X
2.	trabalham_hoje ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
3.	${\tt pretendem\_almoçar}  (  ) {\tt X}  (  ) {\tt X}$
4.	querem_amanhã ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
5.	sairam ontem ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
6.	abriram a porta ( )X ( )X
7.	escreveram uma carta ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
8.	leram um livro )X ( )X
9.	repetiramoutra vez ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
10.	tem uma menina ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
11.	tem_um filho ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
12.	tem_o livro ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
13.	sem $_{\circ}$ Paulo ( )X ( )X
14.	sem_a Yara ( )x ( )x
15.	bom_espanhol ( )X ( )X

14. Occasionally, there is a chance for misunderstanding. The way to say 'good hotel' is  $\underline{\text{bom}}$   $\underline{\text{hotel}}$ . There is no  $\underline{\text{m}}$  sound, nor is there an  $\underline{\text{h}}$  sound (the printed  $\underline{\text{h}}$  is silent). We could rewrite it like this:

<u>bŏ otel</u> ( )x ( )x

15. If you accidentally link the two words with an  $\underline{m}$  sound, instead of saying 'good hotel' you are saying 'good motel' ( $\underline{bom\ motel}$ ). Not a horrendous mistake, to be sure, but an interesting one, nonetheless.

<u>bom motel</u> ( ) ( )X ( )X

16.	Here are the two phrases, one after the other.
	a. bom hotel ( )X ( )X
	b. bom motel ( )x ( )x
	NEW MATERIAL
1.	In this unit we are going to examine the present tense of verbs of the $-\underline{ir}$ type. We have already examined the past tense of this type in Unit 17. In this unit we will use some of the same verbs we used in Unit 17, namely:
	abrir ( )X
	sair ( )X
	cair ( )X
	sentir ( )X
	dirigir ( )X
2.	First, recall from earlier units the present tense endings of a typical, regular -er type verb. The verb pretender is a good example.
	pretendo ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
	pretend <u>e</u> ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
	pretend <u>emos</u> ( )X ( )X
	pretend <u>em</u> ( )X ( )X
3.	Verbs of the $-\underline{ir}$ type have a similar set of endings. Indeed they are the very same except for the we-form. Take the verb $\underline{abrir}$ as an example.
	$abr\underline{o}$ ( )X ( )X
	abr <u>e</u> ( )X ( )X
	abr <u>imos</u> ( )X ( )X
	$abr\underline{em}$ ( )X ( )X
4.	In the we-forms, $-\underline{er}$ type verbs have the $-\underline{emos}$ ending, while $-\underline{ir}$ type verbs have the $-\underline{imos}$ ending.
	pretendemos ( )X ( )X : we plan
	abrimos ( )X ( )X : we open

5•	This $-imos$ ending is the same one that marks the past tense. Thus, $abrimos$ can also mean 'we opened'. The context tells us which meaning is intended.
6. (sentin	Infinitive: sentir
7. (dirig	How would you say 'we drive'? Infinitive: dirigir
8. (saimos	How would you say 'we leave'? Infinitive: sair  S  Verify: ( )X ( )X
9.	Now let us go to the 'they-form'. It has the same ending as the 'they-form' of an $\underline{-er}$ type verb, namely $\underline{-em}$ . Thus,
	a. 'They open' = $\underline{abr-em}$ ( )X ( )X b. 'they leave' = $\underline{sa-em}$ ( )X ( )X
10. (caem)	How would you say 'they fall'? Infinitive: <a href="mailto:cair">cair</a> Verify: ( )X ( )X
ll. (dirige	How would you say 'they drive'? Infinitive: <u>dirigir</u> em)  Verify: ( )X ( )X
12. (senter	How about 'they feel'? Infinitive: sentir m) Verify: ( )X ( )X
Prac	tice 3. (Recorded)
	Listen to these short questions and answers as spoken by two ructors on the tape. There is space for you to repeat the ers aloud.
	(1-8)
13.	Now we will turn to the he-forms. Listen to 'he opens'.
	( ) ( )x ( )x
14. (sente	What is the form for 'he feels'? Infinitive: sentir ) Verify: ( )X ( )X

15. (dirige	How do you say 'he drives'? Infinitive: dirigir
`	Verify: $( )x ( )x$
16.	The form for 'he leaves' is a bit irregular. The unstressed $\underline{e}$ ending coalesces with the $\underline{a}$ of the stem and a diphthong results. The form is not $\underline{sa-e}$ . The form is $\underline{sai}$ .
	$\underline{\mathtt{sai}}$ ( ) ( )x ( )x
17.	The form for 'he falls' is irregular in exactly the same way.
	$\underline{\mathtt{cai}}$ ( ) ( )X ( )X
18.	And now we turn to the I-form which, as you would expect, is marked by an unstressed $\underline{o}$ ending. Thus, 'I drive' is
	<u>dirijo</u> * ( ) ( )x ( )x
19. (abro)	What is the form for 'I open'?
,	Verify: ( )X ( )X
20.	The form for 'I leave' is a bit irregular. It is not $\underline{sa-o}$ , as you might expect. Listen to the correct form on the tape, and repeat.
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
21.	This is the way it is written.
	<u>saio</u> ( ) ( )x ( )x
22.	Can you guess what the form for 'I fall' is?
(caio)	Verify: ( )X ( )X
23.	The form for 'I feel', or 'I'm sorry', is also irregular.
	sinto ( )x ( )x
24.	It is irregular because the stem vowel has changed from the nasal $\underline{\tilde{e}}$ of the infinitive to the nasal $\underline{\tilde{1}}$ .
	<pre>sentir ( )x ( )x sinto ( )x ( )x</pre>

\*Note the spelling with 'j', instead of 'g'.

25.	Here, in summary, are the four forms of a regular - <u>ir</u> type verb in the present.						
	abro ( )X abrimos ( )X						
	<u>abre</u> ( )x <u>abrem</u> ( )x						
26.	And here in summary are the verbs <u>sair</u> , <u>cair</u> and <u>sentir</u> , some of whose forms are irregular in the present tense.						
	$\underline{\text{saio}}$ ( )X $\underline{\text{caio}}$ ( )X $\underline{\text{sinto}}$ ( )X						
	$\underline{\text{sai}}$ ( )X $\underline{\text{cai}}$ ( )X $\underline{\text{sente}}$ ( )X						
	saímos ( )X caímos ( )X sentimos ( )X						
	$\underline{\text{saem}}$ ( )X $\underline{\text{caem}}$ ( )X $\underline{\text{sentem}}$ ( )X						
Prac	tice 4. (Recorded)						
inst answ	Here are some more short questions and answers spoken by two ructors on the tape. Listen to them, and repeat just the ers.						
Prac	tice 5. (Recorded)						
tape	Answer these questions using the present tense of the verbs cated. The questions (not the answers) are recorded on the . If you wish, you can practice these questions with a ow student,						
	l. Como é que ele dirige?						
	2. Quando é que você sai?						
	3. A que horas é que a embaixada abre?						
	4. Quando é que ela cai no sono?						
	5. Quem é que dirige até a praia?						
	6. Quem é que sai comigo?						
	7. Quem mais dirige?						
27.	The verb <u>sentir</u> is usually reflexive when it is used with reference to how one is feeling. Recall this sentence from a previous dialog.						
	Como é que o senhor se sente hoje? ( )x ( )x						
28.	The answer to that question might be:						
	Eu me sinto bem ( ) ( )x ( )x						

29.	Notice that the reflexive pronouns $\underline{se}$ and $\underline{me}$ precede the verb forms.
	O senhor se sente ( )X ( )X Eu me sinto ( )X ( )X
30.	How would you say 'I feel tired'?
(Eu me sinto	cansado) Verify: ( )X ( )X
	How would you say 'He feels tired'?
cambaa	Verify: ( )X ( )X
32.	How would you ask the question: 'Do you feel well?'
(Você s	pem?)
	Verify: $( )x ( )x$
33.	Now, on to another topic. Recall these utterances.
	a. <u>Está chovendo outra vez</u> . ( )X ( )X
	b. Está fazendo calor aqui. ( )X ( )X
	c. Quem é que estava dirigindo? ( ) X ( )X
34.	The translations of the above sentences are:
	a. It is raining again.
	b. It is making heat (i.e., it's hot) here.
	c. Who was driving?
35.	Notice:
	<pre>chovendo = raining</pre>
	<pre>fazendo = making dirigindo = driving</pre>
26	
36.	This <u>-ndo</u> ending on a verb generally equates with English '-ing'. This form is arrived at by removing the <u>r</u> of the infinitive, nasalizing the final vowel, and adding <u>-do</u> . In writing, the nasalization of the final vowel is indicated by the <u>n</u> ; hence, it is common to say that one adds an <u>-ndo</u> ending, rather than a <u>-do</u> ending.
	<pre>chove-r / chove-ndo ( )X</pre>
	faze-r / faze-ndo ( ) $x$ fala-r / fala-ndo ( ) $x$

## Practice 6. (Recorded)

Practice saying the following forms, imitating the voice on the tape.

Α.	<u>-ar type</u>	morando ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
		preparando ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
		${\tt estudandc}$ ( )X ( )X
		almoçando ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
		dando ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
		levantando ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
		trabalhando ( )X ( )X
_		
в.	- <u>er type</u>	comendo ( )X ( )X
		bebendo $( ) X ( ) X$
		escrevendo ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
		esquecendo ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
		len <b>d</b> o ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
		sabendo ( )X ( )X
		pretendendo ( )X ( )X
c.	-ir type	dirigindo ( )X ( )X

#### abrindo ( )X ( )X ( )x ( saindo )x caindo ( )x ( )xrepetindo ( )x ( preferindo ( )x ( dormindo ()x()x

# Practice 7. (Recorded)

Translate these English '-ing' forms into Portuguese. Check with the tape for confirmation.

1.	speaking	7.	drinking
2.	arriving	8.	eating
3.	working	9.	sleeping
4.	sending	10.	feeling
5.	buying	11.	opening
6.	writing	12.	leaving

37. These -ndo forms are commonly preceded by a form of the verb estar. English has a direct parallel. The '-ing' form is often preceded by a form of the verb 'to be'.

eu estou trabalhando	(	)x	(	)x	I am working
ele está saindo	(	)x	(	)x	He is leaving
nós estamos bebendo	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>	We are drinking
eles estão estudando	(	)x	(	)x	They are studying

- 38. The examples in 37 above all contain a present tense form of <a href="mailto:estar">estar</a> and thus refer to the present time. The use of this construction (present tense of <a href="mailto:estar">estar</a> + <a href="mailto:ndo">ndo</a> form) underscores the continuing, progressive nature of an action in the present. For this reason it is often referred to as the present progressive construction.
- 39. The example <u>estava dirigindo</u> contains a past tense form of <u>estar</u>. We will deal with this construction in a later unit.
- 40. Thus, the phrase <u>ele está dormindo</u> means 'he is sleeping'. It would be used in the translation of these two utterances:
  - a. Don't wake him; he's sleeping soundly. (At this moment)
  - b. He's sleeping better these days. (Not necessarily at this very moment, but certainly during a time span which includes the present.)
- 41. However, this same phrase (<u>ele está dormindo</u>) would <u>not</u> be used in translating the following utterance:
  - c. He's sleeping at Dave's tomorrow night.

This is a normal sentence in English. It uses the present tense of 'to be' together with the '-ing' form of the main verb to refer to a <u>future</u> action. This cannot be done in Portuguese. The present tense of <u>estar</u> plus the <u>-ndo</u> form can be used only to describe actions occurring in the present, never in the future.

## Practice 8. (Recorded)

Listen to these recorded exchanges (questions and answers) between two Brazilians. There is space on the tape for you to mimic the replies of the second one.

(1-11)

## Practice 9. Translation Exercise

Practice putting these short items into Portuguese. Check the tape for verification.

1.	He's eating lunch.	( <u>almoçar</u> )
2.	He's making a phone call.	( <u>dar</u> )
3.	He's falling!	( <u>cair</u> )
4.	He's working.	( <u>trabalhar</u> )
5.	He's writing a letter.	(escrever)
6.	I'm returning.	(voltar)
7.	I'm receiving lots of news.	( <u>receber</u> )
8.	I'm living in Rio.	( <u>morar</u> )
9.	I'm studying.	( <u>estudar</u> )
10.	I'm planning.	( <u>pretender</u> )
11.	I'm planning to start.	(pretender)
12.	I'm starting.	(começar)

#### DIALOG

#### <u>Paulo</u>

Oi

Jorge

fazendo

Ηi

George

doing (-er type)

Oi, Jorge! O que é que você Hi, George! What are you doing?

está fazendo?

nunca

descansa

never

rest (-ar type)

Você nunca descansa? Don't you ever rest?

Jorge

estudando

studying (-ar type)

Eu estou estudando.

I'm studying.

o exame

test, exam

Tenho exame amanhã.

I have a test tomorrow.

Paulo

há

o que é que há?

aquele

novo

there is

what is there?

that new

O que é que há com aquele

novo professor Ferreira?

What is it with that new professor

Ferreira?

sempre

dando

a prova

always

giving (-ar type)

test (English 'proof')

Ele está sempre dando provas. He's always giving tests.

#### Jorge

<u>Eu sei lā</u>! <sup>1</sup>

I don't know!

viu?

you know? (See Note 2)

Mas ele é bom, viu?<sup>2</sup>

But he's good, you know?

Paulo

mesmo

indeed, really, surely<sup>3</sup>

É mesmo.

He sure is.

olhe mudando o assunto look, say changing (-ar type)

vem não é? subject
he comes (neutral form: vir)
right? Is it not so?

Olhe, mudando de assunto, amanhã a gente vem no seu carro, não é?

Say, changing the subject, tomorrow
we come in your car, don't
we?

### Jorge

a vez

time, turn

É, é minha vez.4

Yes, it's my turn.

lembre saio remember
I leave (-ir type)

 $\frac{E}{cedo}$   $\frac{lembre}{do}$   $\frac{de}{do}$   $\frac{de}{do}$   $\frac{de}{do}$   $\frac{de}{do}$   $\frac{de}{do}$ 

And remember that I always leave early.

This very idiomatic expression has connotations roughly equivalent to 'How should I know?' and 'I don't have the slightest idea.' You will hear it frequently among close friends. Be careful to use it only in informal circumstances.

<sup>2.</sup> This use of viu? is common. The word is an abbreviation of ouviu? which means 'did you hear?' Thus this sentence says, 'But he's good, do you hear me?' You should certainly be aware of this form, but you should be careful not to overuse it at first.

<sup>3.</sup> Mesmo has a variety of translations and shades of meaning, several of which are suggested here.

<sup>4.</sup> Notice that the first  $\underline{\acute{e}}$  echoes the  $\underline{\acute{e}}$  of the question just asked. Q. Is it not so? A. It is.

#### EXPANSION EXERCISES

#### Expansion Exercise 1. (Recorded)

Following the models given, ask the following questions in Portuguese. Verify with the tape.

### A. Model: O que é que você está fazendo?

- 1. What are you studying?
- 2. What are you eating?
- 3. What are you preparing?
- 4. What are you drinking? (beber)
- 5. What are you buying?
- 6. What are you reading?
- 7. What are you saying?

## B. Model: Quem é que está falando?

- 1. Who is practicing?
- 2. Who is leaving?
- 3. Who is driving?
- 4. Who is speaking?
- 5. Who is sleeping?
- 6. Who is studying?
- 7. Who is living?

## C. Model: Por que é que ele está praticando?

- 1. Why is he sleeping?
- 2. Why is he resting?
- 3. Why is he leaving?
- 4. Why is he studying?
- 5. Why is he driving?
- 6. Why is he working?
- 7. Why is he reading?

#### D. Model: Onde é que eles estão estudando?

- 1. Where are they sleeping?
- 2. Where are they reading?
- 3. Where are they eating lunch?
- 4. Where are they living?
- 5. Where are they practicing?
- 6. Where are they working?
- 7. Where are they spending the night?

#### Expansion Exercise 2. (Recorded)

Study the following model, then prepare the four exchanges that follow.

- Model: A. O que há com o Paulo? Ele sempre está cansado.
  - B. Eu sei lá. Parece que ele está trabalhando demais.
  - 1. A. What is it with Mr. Ferreira? He's always hungry.
    - B. I don't know. It seems he likes to eat.
  - 2. A. What is it with Maria? She's not awake vet.
    - B. I don't know. It looks like she got to bed late.
  - A. What is it with Paul? He's always sleeping.
    - B. I don't know. I think he's working at night.
  - 4. A. What is it with him? He's always forgetting his book.
    - B. I don't know. It looks like he doesn't like Portuguese.

### Expansion Exercise 3. (Recorded)

Following the model given, prepare these short conversational exchanges.

- Model: A. Mas ele é bom, viu?
  - B. É mesmo.
  - 1. A. But he is an American, you know?
    - B. He is, indeed!
  - 2. A. But he speaks well, you know?
    - B. He does (speak), indeed!

- 3. A. But he drives well, you know?
  - B. He does, indeed!
- 4. A. But he likes to eat, you know?
  - B. He really does!
- 5. A. But he fell, you know?
  - B. He really did!
- 6. A. But he came back late, you know?
  - B. He really did!
- 7. A. But he left everything in the car, you know?
  - B. He really did!

### Expansion Exercise 4. (Recorded)

By changing the intonation, phrases with  $\underline{\text{mesmo}}$ , such as those you just practiced in Exercise 3, can be made into questions, with the meaning 'Really?', 'Is that so?', etc. Listen to the models given on the tape, then try the examples below. Pay particular attention to the question-type intonation of the phrases containing mesmo.

#### Models:

Ele é brasileiro, viu? (He's Brazilian, you know?)
É mesmo? (Is he really?)

Ele trabalhou ontem, viu? (He worked yesterday, you know?)
Trabalhou, mesmo? (Is that so?)

- 1. He's single, you know?
   Is he really?
- 2. He speaks Spanish, you know? Does he really?
- 3. He knows the president, you know?
  Is that so?
- 4. She's going directly to Rio, you know? Is she really?
- 5. She already bought the tickets, you know? Did she really?
- 6. She went by Pan Am, you know? Did she really?

- 7. It is difficult, you know? Is that so?
- It was difficult, you know? ('was' = foi) 8. Was it really?
- 9. They went to Florida, you know? Did they really?
- 10. His English is terrible (péssimo), you know? Is that so?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 11. A. Paulo!.... It's time to get up!
  - B. (Bocejo) Is it really?
- 12. A. Paulo!... Today is Monday!
  - B. Is it really?
- A. Paulo!... It's seven-thirty! 13.
  - B. Uh.. Is it really?
- 14. A. Paulo!... Wake up! We have a test today.
  - B. (Bocejo)... Do we really?
- A. Paulo!... Wake up! 15.
  - B. (Bocejo)... I'm awake!
  - A. Are you really?

#### Expansion Exercise 5.

Prepare these brief conversational exchanges.

- Hi, George! What are you doing? Α.
- В. I'm eating lunch. Did you eat yet?
- Yes. I ate downstairs.
- Hi, George! What are you doing? Α.
- I'm leaving the party. В.
- Α. Why?
- Sh! I don't like (I'm not liking) it!\* В.

Frequently Portuguese uses the present progressive construction where English uses the simple present tense.

- A. Hi George! What's going on? (acontecendo)
- B. The president is speaking.
- A. What's he saying?
- B. I don't know. I'm sleeping.

- A. Hi, George! What are you doing?
- B. (Bocejo) I'm sleeping, see?!
- A. Oh, Excuse me!......Sleepyhead!

## <u>Expansion Exercise 6</u>. (Recorded)

(Note that an adverb like  $\underline{\text{sempre}}$  may fall between  $\underline{\text{estar}}$  and the  $\underline{\text{-ndo}}$  form.)

Following the example of the model, put the following thoughts into Portuguese.

#### Model: Ele está sempre dando provas.

- 1. He's always making phone calls.
- 2. He's always studying.
- Barbara is always talking with Mr. Ferreira.
- 4. Barbara is always going out with him.
- 5. I'm always doing that.
- 6. I'm always forgetting my book.
- You're always saying that.
- 8. You're always eating.
- You're always noticing my accent.
- 10. It's always raining there.

# Expansion Exercise 7. (Recorded)

Again, follow the model and put these thoughts into Portuguese.

## Model: Você nunca descansa?

- 1. Don't you ever work?
- 2. Don't you ever go to New York?
- 3. Don't you ever study?
- 4. Don't you ever arrive late?

- 5. Don't you ever open the windows?
- 6. Doesn't he ever leave early?
- 7. Doesn't he ever feel well?
- 8. Doesn't he ever go to bed early?
- 9. Doesn't he ever stop in Washington?
- 10. Doesn't he ever have to study?

#### Comprehension

Listen to these utterances and notify your instructor of any that are not clear to you.

#### Translations

How would you say the following utterances in Portuguese? In numbers 1-5 the present tense should be used, even though the reference is to future time. This use of the present tense is just as common in Portuguese as it is in English.

- 1. Tomorrow we (a gente) come early.
- 2. Tomorrow we rest.
- 3. Tomorrow we buy the tickets.
- 4. Remember that tomorrow we begin at 7:30 p.m.
- 5. Remember that tomorrow we go to the beach.
- 6. It's my turn.
- 7. It's never my turn.
- 8. It's my turn to rest. (Use de + descansar)
- 9. Remember that tomorrow it's my turn.
- 10. It's my turn to speak. (Use de + infinitive)
- 11. It's my turn to buy the food.
- 12. It's your turn to prepare the food.
- 13. It's your turn to buy the tickets.
- 14. It's your turn to eat lunch early.
- 15. It's your turn to repeat.
- 16. Changing the subject, what are we going to do tomorrow?
- 17. Changing the subject, where are we going to eat dinner?
- 18. Changing the subject, how are we going to get (receive) news of you?
- 19. Changing the subject, who is going to drive?
- 20. Changing the subject, when are we going to the movies?

- 21. I am a little tired. When are we going to leave?
- 22. I am very tired. I worked too much today.
- 23. If he is tired, why doesn't he go home?
- 24. If you are tired, why don't you stay home?
- 25. When I am tired, I always leave early.
- 26. I'm not tired. Let's go to the beach!
- 27. Yesterday I left early.
- 28. My friend Sam left with me. He lives in Alexandria also.
- 29. I always leave with Sam. He's a good friend.
- 30. Sam is a friend of the president.
- 31. Well, let's change the subject. Let's talk about Gloria.
- 32. Good idea! Who's Gloria?
- 33. Don't you know (her)? She's our teacher!
- 34. Of course. Now I remember. Excuse me.

## UNIT 20

1.	Do you remember these present tense he-forms from earlier units?
	$\underline{\mathtt{ele}}$ $\underline{\mathtt{nota}}$ ( )X ( )X he notices
	$\underline{\text{ele mora}}$ ( )X ( )X he lives
	$\underline{\text{ele}}$ $\underline{\text{gosta}}$ ( )X ( )X he likes
2.	All of them contain the open vowel O. Repeat them again and make sure that the vowel is an open O. Remember that it's similar to the vowel sound of English 'paws'.
	$\underline{mOra}$ ( ) $\mathbf{x}$ ( ) $\mathbf{x}$
	gOsta ( )X ( )X
3.	The same open O appears in the I-form.
	eu noto ( )x ( )x
	eu moro ( )x ( )x
	eu gOsto ( )x ( )x
)1	It appears also in the they-form.
4.	
	<u>eles nOtam</u> ( )X ( )X <u>eles mOram</u> ( )X ( )X
	eles qOstam ( )X ( )X
	eres dostan ( )x ( )x
5•	But it does not appear in the we-form, where the $\underline{o}$ remains closed.
	$n\underline{o}$ tamos ( )X ( )X
	$m\underline{o}$ ramos ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
	$g_{\underline{o}}$ stamos ( ) $X$ ( ) $X$
6.	Nor does it appear in the infinitive, where again the $\underline{o}$ remains closed.
	n <u>o</u> tar ( )X ( )X
	m <u>o</u> rar ( )X ( )X
	<u>go</u> star ( )X ( )X

7.		e that th o in uns				stressed	syllable	s, the	<b>:</b>
	<b>S</b> tres	ssed:							
		nOto	n <b>O</b> ta	nOtam	(	)x			
		mOro	mOra	mOram	(	)x			
		gOsto	g0sta	gOstam	(	)x			
	Unsti	ressed:							
		notamos	nota	r (	)x				
		moramos	mora	r (	)x				
		gostamos	gost	ar (	)x				
8.	of o ar	nd <u>O</u> . Th	ose tha	t you ha	ve ha		ame distrar, in acoltar.		
9.	Thus,	'I eat lu	inch' ha	s the op	en <u>O</u> .	•			
		eu almog	<u> </u>	)x (	)x				
10.	How do	you say	'I retu	rn'?					
(eu vol	to)								
		Verify:	( )	x ( )	x				
11.	How do	you say	'he ret	urns'?					
(ele vo	lta)								
		Verify:	( )x	( )x					
12.	How do	you say	'they r	eturn'?					
(eles vo	Oltam)								
		Verify:	( )x	( )x					
13.	How abo	out 'they	eat lu	nch'?					
(eles a	lmOçam)								
		Verify:	( )x	( )x					
14.		forms, a social constant of the constant of th	Thus, '				open <u>0</u> ; 1	hey ha	ive
<b>1</b> 5.	How wor	uld you s	say 'we	eat lunc	h'?				
(nós alı	moçamos	)							
		Verify:	( )	x ( )	x				

16.	Several $-ar$ type verbs have closed $e$ and open $E$ distributed in the same pattern as the $e$ 0 and the $e$ 0, the closed $e$ 0 appearing in unstressed syllables and the open $e$ 1 appearing in stressed syllables. The only verb of this sort that you have had so far is $e$ 1 começar 'begin'.
17.	Thus, in 'I begin', the open $\underline{E}$ falls in the stressed syllable. $\underline{comEço}$ ( )X ( )X
18.	How would you say 'Sandra begins'?
Sandra	comEça)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
19.	How would you say 'they begin'?
eles co	omEçam)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
2 <b>0.</b>	The phrase 'we begin' has the closed $\underline{e}$ sound. The syllable is not stressed. How do you say 'we begin'?
nós cor	meçamos)
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
21.	Another useful verb of this sort, and one that you have not run across in this book, is <a href="Levar"><u>levar</u></a> , which expresses the idea of 'carry'.
	$\underline{1evar}$ ( )x ( )x
22.	The form 'I carry' requires the open $\underline{E}$ sound.
	eu lEvo ( )X ( )X
23.	How, then, would you say 'Jorge carries'?
Jorge :	lEva)
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
24.	How would you say 'they carry'?
eles l	Evam)
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
25.	'We carry' requires the unstressed, closed $\underline{e}$ sound. So how do you say 'we carry'?
(nós le	vamos)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x

26.	A number of $-\underline{er}$ type verbs also have the open $\underline{E}$ or open $\underline{O}$ sound in their stems, but only in the he- and they-forms. Verbs that have already appeared in this text and that follow this patterning are:
	escrever
	receber
	beber
	esquecer
	conhecer
	parecer
	chover
27.	Thus, when you hear the he-form for 'write', you will hear the open $\underline{E}$ sound in the stem. Listen and repeat. $\underline{\text{escrEve}}$ ( ) ( )X ( )X
	How would you say the he-form for 'drink'?
(bEbe)	
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
29.	How would you say the he-form for 'forget'?
(esquEc	e)
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
30.	The he-form for 'know' is not new to you. You learned it early in the course, but you may not have been too careful about the open $\underline{E}$ sound.
	Repeat: <a href="mailto:conhEce">conhEce</a> ( )X ( )X
31.	The form <u>parEce</u> is another he-form that you already know. Be sure, however, that you say it with the open $\underline{E}$ sound.
	Repeat: <a href="mailto:parEce">parEce</a> ( )X ( )X
32.	is <u>está chovendo</u> . But do you know how to say 'it rains', with the he-form of <u>chover</u> ? That form is <u>chove</u> , with an open <u>O</u> .
	<u>chOve</u> ( )X ( )X
33.	All of the above verbs except <u>chover</u> have they-forms (you cannot say 'they rain' in Portuguese any more than you can say it in English) and all of those they-forms have the open $\underline{E}$ sound.
	<u>escrEvem</u> ( )X ( )X <u>parEcem</u> ( )X ( )X
	$\underline{\text{bEbem}}$ ( )X ( )X $\underline{\text{recEbem}}$ ( )X ( )X
	$\underline{\mathtt{esquEcem}}$ ( )X ( )X

34. However, in the I-form as well as the we-form the closed  $\underline{e}$  prevails (as underlined). Repeat in pairs.

escrevo/escrevemos ( )X
bebo/bebemos ( )X
esqueço/esquecemos ( )X
pareço/parecemos ( )X
recebo/recebemos ( )X

35. Here is the contrast between the open  $\underline{E}$  and the closed  $\underline{e}$ . Imitate as well as you can, repeating in pairs. Do these several times if necessary.

escrevo/escrEve ( )X ( )X
bebo/bEbe ( )X ( )X
esqueço/esquEce ( )X ( )X
pareço/parEce ( )X ( )X
recebo/recEbe ( )X ( )X

### Practice 1. (Recorded)

This is a review and summary of the verb forms that you have been working with thus far in this unit. You should repeat them again in order to feel more comfortable with the contrasting open and closed vowels. The voice on the tape will read these items from left to right. There is space for you to repeat after each one.

#### open O or E

#### closed o or e

- <u>ar</u>	type						
	gOsto nOto vOlto mOro almOço	gOsta nOta vOlta mOra almOça	gOstam nOtam vOltam mOram almOçam	gostamo notamos voltamo moramos almoçam	s		
	comEço 1Evo	comEça 1Eva	comEçam 1Evam	começam levamos	os		
<u>-er</u>	-er type						
	esci	Ebe r uEce e rEve e nEce c	Ebem ecEbem squEcem scrEvem onhEcem arEcem	bebemos recebemos esquecemos escrevemos conhecemos parecemos	bebo recebo esqueço escrevo conheço pareço		

Practice 2. Put these brief dialogs into Portuguese.

	1.	A. B. A. B. A. B. A. B.	Do you know Sandra? Yes, I know her. Do you like her? I do. Where does she live? She lives nearby. Do you eat lunch with her? I do. What time does she get back? She always gets back at 1:30.
	2.	A. B.	Is he going to remember? Yes, he never forgets.
	3.	A. B.	Does he drink a lot? No. He doesn't like to drink.
	4.	A. B.	What time do you begin? I begin at 9:00.
	5•	A. B.	Is he going to take ( <u>levar</u> ) his son, too? He always takes his son.
36.	Reca	Voc	these sentences extracted from previous dialogs. <u>ês trabalharam muito esta hora</u> . ( )X ( )X <u>e é o meu amigo, Carlos</u> . ( )X ( )X
37.	Noti	.ce	the two words for 'this': esta and este.  esta ( )X ( )X este ( )X ( )X
38.	Esta	<u>a</u> ha	s an open $\underline{\mathbf{E}}$ sound in the first syllable. $\underline{\mathbf{esta}}$ ( )X ( )X
39.	Este	<u>h</u>	s a closed $\underline{e}$ sound in the first syllable. $\underline{este}$ ( )X ( )X
40.			know, the <u>t</u> of this word is pronounced like a <u>ch</u> by azilians. <u>este</u> ( )X ( )X
41.			al, unstressed vowel sounds of these two words are nt, of course.  esta/este ( )X ( )X
42.			s the stressed syllable of <pre>esta</pre> , the first or the last? again if you are not sure.
(first)			( ) ( ) 20.6

43.	By contrast, which is the stressed syllable of the familiar verb form <u>está</u> , meaning '(he) is'?
(last)	
	( ) ( )
44.	The location of the stress is one of the factors that make these two words different.
	esta $()X()X($ this $)$
	está ( )X ( )X (is)
45.	The form <u>esta</u> is the word for 'this' which is used when one is referring to feminine items.
	$\underline{\mathtt{esta}}$ hora ( )X ( )X 'this hour'
	esta comida ( )X ( )X 'this food'
	esta lição ( )X ( )X 'this lesson'
46.	The form <u>este</u> is the word for 'this' which is used when one is referring to masculine items. Notice in particular that the final syllable is an unstressed $\underline{\mathbf{i}}$ sound, rather than the unstressed $\underline{\mathbf{u}}$ sound that is usually the sign of the masculine.
	<pre>este carro ( )X ( )X 'this car'</pre>
	$\underline{\mathtt{este}\ \mathtt{exame}}$ ( )X ( )X 'this test'
	<pre>este livro ( )X ( )X 'this book'</pre>
47.	In other words, the word for 'this' has gender agreement with the noun that it refers to.
	este diálogo ( )X ( )X 'this dialog'
	$\underline{\mathtt{esta}}$ palavra ( )X ( )X 'this word'
48.	This gender agreement is maintained even if the word 'this' does not immediately precede the noun.
	Este é o meu amigo. ( )X ( )X
	'This is my friend'.
49.	Amigo is masculine; hence the word for 'this' must appear in the masculine form, este, even though other words intervene.
50.	Now let's introduce a female friend, Elsa.
	<u>Esta é a minha amiga, Elsa</u> . ( )X ( )X
	'This is my friend, Elsa'.

5 <b>1.</b>	hend	word amiga is feminine since we are talking about Elsa; ce the word for 'this' must also be feminine. It doesn't ter that other words separate the two.
52.	to t	tabout the plural? How do we change the singular 'this' the plural 'these'? Answer: We simply add the pluralizing which, as always, becomes -z or -z before a vowel or a ced consonant).
	a.	este ( )X ( )X 'this' estes ( )X ( )X 'these'
	b.	esta ( )X ( )X 'this' estas ( )X 'these'
53.	Now	try a few of these pairs. $(\underline{z} \text{ sound is starred*})$
	a.	este carro ( )X estes carros ( )X
	b.	este livro ( )X estes* livros ( )X
	c.	este exame ( )X estes* exames ( )X
	d.	esta avenida ( )X estas* avenidas ( )X
	e.	esta casa ( )X estas casas ( )X
	f.	esta passagem ( )X estas passagens ( )X
54.	How	do you say 'this door'?
(esta po	orta	
		Verify: ( )X ( )X
55•	How	do you say 'these doors'?
(estas p		
		Verify: $( )x ( )x$
56.	How	do you say 'this office'?
(este es	scrit	tório)
		Verify: ( )X ( )X
57•	How	do you say 'these offices'?
		ritórios)

Verify: ( )X ( )X

58.	The words for 'this' and 'these' apply to items close at hand. Portuguese has other words, corresponding to English 'that' and 'those', which apply to items not within the immediate reach of the speaker. These words too change their forms to agree in gender with the item they refer to.
59•	Here is the word for 'that' which is used when one is referring to something masculine. $( )x  ( )x$
60.	Here is the word for 'that' which is used when one is referring to something feminine. $( )X  ( )X$
61.	Here they are together.
	$\underline{\mathtt{esse}}$ , with closed $\underline{\mathtt{e}}$ ( )X ( )X
	essa, with open $\underline{\mathbf{E}}$ ( )X ( )X
62.	Here are some examples of the masculine form.
	<u>esse carro</u> ( )x ( )x
	<pre>esse menino ( )X ( )X</pre>
	<u>esse escritório</u> ( )x ( )x
	esse pneu ( )x ( )x
63.	Here are some examples of the feminine form.
	essa moça ( )x ( )x
	essa praia ( )x ( )x
	essa carta ( )x ( )x
	<pre>essa ponte ( )x ( )x</pre>
64.	How would you say 'that house'?
(essa c	
•	Verify: ( )x ( )x
65.	How would you say 'that state'?
(esse e	
`	Verify: ( )X ( )X
66.	How about 'that newspaper'?
(esse j	
	Verify: ( )X ( )X

(essa c	·
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
	And 'that day'? (Appearances aside, 'day' is masculine.)
(esse d	•
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
69.	Gender agreement is maintained even though the word 'that' does not immediately precede the noun.
	Esse é o meu carro. ( )X ( )X That is my car.
	Essa é a minha casa. ( )X ( )X That is my house.
70.	For the plural, we add, as usual, the pluralizing $-\underline{s}$ (which becomes $-\underline{z}$ is some cases.)
	$\underline{\mathtt{esses}}$ ( )X ( )X
	$\underline{\mathtt{essas}}$ ( )x ( )x
71.	Here are some examples of plurals of masculine items. The $-z$ sound is starred*.
	<pre>esses carros ( )X ( )X</pre>
	<pre>esses* americanos ( )X ( )X</pre>
	esses* exames ( )X ( )X
72.	Here are some examples of feminine items.
	essas casas ( )x ( )x
	essas solteiras ( )X ( )X
	essas* avenidas ( )x ( )x
	<u>essas palavras</u> ( )X ( )X
73.	Let us return to the singular forms again and compare two sets of minimal pairs.
	a. this car: este carro ( )X that car: esse carro ( )X
	<pre>b. this house: esta casa ( )X     that house: essa casa ( )X</pre>
Comm	<u>ment</u>
	The forms for 'this' differ from the forms for 'that' by
virt	tue of the presence of a $\pm$ (or $ch$ ) sound. Why not seize upon $\pm$ ( or $ch$ ) to help you to remember which is which? Associate
the	t of este and esta with the t of English touch. (If you are
a <u>ch</u>	speaker, you can associate the ch sound of este with the ch

of <u>touch</u>.) Why <u>touch</u>? Because if the item you are talking about is close enough for you to touch, either literally or figuratively, you will normally use <u>este</u> or <u>esta</u>. <u>T</u> for <u>touch</u>! On the other hand, if the item you are talking about is not close enough for you to touch, you will normally refer to it with <u>esse</u> or <u>essa</u>. No touch, no <u>t</u>!

- a. este carro: this car (I can touch it)
- b. esta casa: this house (I can touch it)
- c. esse carro: that car (it's not within my reach)
- d. essa casa: that house (it's not within my reach)

The same association of  $\underline{t}$  for  $\underline{t}$  ouch applies to the forms for 'these' and 'those'. If you can touch the items you are talking about, use the appropriate form with  $\underline{t}$  in it. If the items are too far away for you to touch, use the appropriate form without the  $\underline{t}$ .

- a. estes carros: these cars (I can touch them)
- b. estas casas: these houses (I can touch them)
- c. <u>esses carros</u>: those cars (not within my immediate reach)
- d. essas casas: those houses (not within my immediate reach)

There are areas of overlap, of course, and they tend to be the same ones we have in English. If I know, for example, that I can easily touch a picture on the wall beside me simply by leaning to the right and stretching a bit, am I going to say 'this picture' or 'that picture' when I refer to it? Doesn't really matter, does it? The overlap is very common in the non-concrete world of ideas, where spatial relationships are hard to define. Does it make much difference whether I say 'this proposal' or 'that proposal' when we are in the midst of a discussion on the proposal itself? Probably not. The point of all this is that you would not concern yourself with such distinctions in English and you should not do so in Portuguese either.

## Practice 3. (Recorded)

Put these items into Portuguese. Omit items in brackets.

7.

8.

- 1. This car is [a] Chevrolet.
- 2. That car is [a] Ford.
- 3. This house is old.
- 4. This dialog is difficult.
- 5. That dialog is horrible.
- 6. This view is marvelous.
- 9. These boys are Brazilians.
- 10. Those girls are Americans.
- 11. These Brazilians work a lot.

These cars are American.

These girls speak English.

12. These teachers are from Brazil.

### Practice\_4. (Recorded)

Following the example of the model, ask these questions in Portuguese.

#### Model: Você conhece essa moça?

- 1. Do you know that teacher? (m.)
- 2. Do you know this restaurant?
- 3. Do you know this city?
- 4. Do you know this book?
- 5. Do you know those children? (crianças)
- 6. Do you know those Americans?
- 7. Do you know those states?

### Practice 5. (Recorded) Same procedure as for Practice 4.

#### Model: A senhora estudou esta lição?

- 1. Did you prepare these lessons?
- 2. Did you read this book?
- 3. Did you write those letters?
- 4. Did you work a lot this hour?
- 5. Did you prepare this food?
- 6. Did you buy this coffee in Brazil?
- 7. Did you notice that accent?!! Wow!

## Practice 6. (Recorded) same procedure.

## Model: Este é o meu amigo, Carlos.

- 1. This is my friend, Paulo.
- 2. This is my friend, Sandra.
- 3. This is my wife, Brünhilde.
- 4. This is my daughter, Angela.
- 5. That is my daughter, Luisa.
- 6. That is my son, Roberto.
- 7. Those are my sons, Roberto and Paulo.
- 8. Those are my daughters, Angela and Luisa.
- 9. These are my books.
- 10. These are my tires.
- 11. These are my tickets.

- 12. These are my children.
- 13. This is my car.
- 14. This is my office.
- 15. This is my break time (intervalo).

### DIALOG

Luísa

Geraldo entre Gerald, Jerry

enter, come in (command

form)

Entre, Geraldo. Tudo bom?

Come in, Jerry. How's it going?

<u>Geraldo</u>

ótimo Luisa fine, wonderful

Luisá

Tudo ótimo, Luísa. E com

Fine, Luísa. And you?

você?

Luísa

Sente

sit (command form)

Também...Sente.

Same here... Have a seat.

Geraldo

o calor

Ui!

heat whew!

que calor!

what heat!

Obrigado. Ui! Que calor!

Thanks. Whew! It sure is hot!

Luísa

aceita

(you) accept (-ar type)

o refrigerante

soft drink

Você aceita um refrigerante? Will you have a soft drink?

### Geraldo

aceito por favor (I) accept (-ar type)

please

Aceito. Uma Coca-cola, por favor.

I will. A Coke, please.

# Luísa

faz

(he) does (irregular,

-er type)

a gente faz o fim

we do end

o fim de semana

weekend

O que é que a gente faz este fim de semana de 3 dias?

What are we going to do \* this 3-day weekend?

## Geraldo

a certeza

certainty

tem certeza

(you) are sure (have certainty)

segunda-feira o feriado

Monday holiday

Você tem certeza que segunda- Are you sure that Monday is a holiday? feira é feriado?

cai

Luĭsa

(it) falls (-<u>ir</u> type)

Tuesday

terça-feira ser

to be

comemorado segunda

celebrated (commemorated) (abbreviation of segunda-

feira)

Tenho. O feriado cai na

terça-feira, mas vai ser comemorado segunda.

The holiday falls on Yes, I am. Tuesday, but it's going to be celebrated on Monday.

Or 'What do we do?'. As in English, the present tense can sometimes be used when the reference is to future time.

# <u>Geraldo</u>

a razão tem razão reason, rationality you're right (have reason)

Você tem razão ... Bom!...

You're right...Well!...

dá dá para ir (it) gives (-ar type)
it's enough time to/for
to go

<u>Dá para ir a Williamsburg...</u>
ou...

It's enough (time) to go to Williamsburg...or...

# Luisa

caro

expensive

Dá. Mas fica caro.

Yes. But it's expensive.

# <u>Geraldo</u>

fazemos

fazemos um passeio a montanha

(we) do, make (-er type)
(we) take a ride

mountain

Por que não fazemos um passeio até as montanhas?

Why don't we take a drive to the
 mountains?

# <u>Luisa</u>

legal levo

o sanduíche

fine, wonderful\*
(I) take (-ar type)

sandwich

Legal! Eu levo uns sanduiches.

Wonderful! I'll take some sandwiches.

<sup>\*</sup> Notice this special use of the word legal. In other contexts
it is a cognate of the English word 'legal'.

### EXPANSION EXERCISES

### Comment Re Expansion Exercise 1

You have learned the following common greetings:

A. Bom dia
Boa noite
Boa tarde

B. Alô Oi Como vai? or Como é que vai? Tudo bom? Tudo bem?

To these expression in column B we can add the following.

Você está bom? (To a man) Você está boa? (To a woman)

These two new ones and those in column B can be given literal translations, but in the final analysis they are all greetings or salutations and they all mean more or less the same thing, just as the greetings 'Hi,' 'Hi ya,' 'How's it going?', 'How are you?', etc., all mean more or less the same thing in English.

# Expansion Exercise 1. (Recorded)

Listen to the brief exchanges of greetings. From time to time you can practice them, and variations of them, with your instructor or a fellow student.

- I. A. Oi, Paulo. Como vai?
  - B. Muito bem, e você?
  - A. Muito bem.
- II. A. Bom dia, Luís. Tudo bom?
  - B. Tudo bem, e com você?
- III. A. Oi, Yara! Você está boa?
  - B. Estou boa, e você?
  - IV. A. Boa tarde, Luís. Você está bom?
    - B. Estou bom, e você?
    - V. A. Boa noite, Roberto. Você está bom?
      - B. Vou bem, e você?
  - VI. A. Oi, Roberto. Tudo bom?
    - B. Tudo bom.
- VII. A. Alô, Paulo. Tudo bem?
  - B. Tudo bem, e com você?

### Comment Re Expansion Exercise 2

The expression dá para (literally, 'it gives for') is very common. As used in the dialog of this unit, it means 'the circumstances give time for', i.e., 'there is enough time for'. In other contexts, the expression can mean 'the circumstances are appropriate for, convenient for, suitable for', etc.

In the exercise that follows, the expression refers primarily to time.

# Expansion Exercise 2. (Recorded)

Repeat the several model sentences, then translate from English into Portuguese.

Model 1: Dá para ir às montanhas.

Model 2: Dá para ir à praia.

Model 3: Dá para tomar café.
Model 4: Dá para fazer um passeio.

- 1. There's enough time to write a letter.
- 2. There's enough time to go to the city.
- 3. There's enough time to eat lunch downtown.
- 4. There's enough time to speak with the teacher.
- 5. There's enough time to stop in Florida.
- 6. There's enough time to read the newspaper.
- There's enough time to make a sandwich. 7.
- 8. There's enough time to sleep an hour more. (mais uma hora)

### Comment Re Expansion Exercise 3

Expressions utilizing Que plus a noun are generally the equivalent of English 'what' or 'what a' plus a noun. They are exclamations, and they may be laudatory or depreciative. For example, Que carro! (What a car!) can mean either 'What a splendid automobile!' or 'What a lemon!' The circumstances and the tone of voice indicate which meaning is intended, just as they do in English.

In the dialog, <u>Que calor</u> is the equivalent of 'What heat!' or, as most of us would say, 'It sure is hot!'.

# Expansion Exercise 3. (Recorded)

Repeat the models, then translate from English to Portuguese. Verify with the tape.

- Model 1: Que calor!
  Model 2: Que carro!
  Model 3: Que festa!
  Model 4: Que tráfego!
- 1. What a teacher!
- 2. What a restaurant!
- 3. What a friend!
- 4. What a sandwich!
- 5. What a city!
- 6. What a view!
- 7. What a book!
- 8. What a word!
- 9. What a sleepyhead!
- 10. What food!

## Comment Re Expansion Exercises 4 Through 8

Expansion Exercises 4 through 8 are designed to encourage you to seek out and use English cognates in your Portuguese. Portuguese has many English cognates. Some of them group themselves into fairly predictable patterns, thus making it relatively easy for English speakers to learn them. In this unit and in some of the units to follow you will have an opportunity to practice some of these patterns.

There are certain dangers involved in relying on cognates because every so often you will run across one that means something different from what its supposed counterpart means in English. These we call 'false cognates'. For example, the word esquisita looks and sounds like it ought to mean 'exquisite', but beware! It means 'strange', 'unusual', even 'freakish'. One could get himself into real trouble by telling an attractive young lady that she looks esquisita. One need only imagine her reaction! Better use another cognate - elegante. The latter is a 'true' cognate; it means what it seems to mean. Furthermore, it is almost guaranteed to bring forth the desired smile of appreciation on the lady's face.

Minor perils of this sort exist, and you must look out for them. But you should not let due caution deter you from healthy experimentation. Try cognates. They provide an excellent way to increase your vocabulary.

# Expansion Exercise 4. (Recorded)

You will recall from an earlier unit that many English words that end in  $-\underline{\text{tion}}$  and  $-\underline{\text{sion}}$  have cognates in Portuguese that end in  $-\underline{\text{cão}}$  and  $-\underline{\text{são}}$ . All of them are stressed on the last syllable and all are feminine. Be wary, however, lest the sight of familiar letters lead you into English pronunciation habits. Note that numbers 12, 13, 14, and 15 have the  $-\underline{\text{z}}$  sound, as underlined.

1.	solução	(	)x	(	)x	solution
2.	situação	(	)x	(	)x	situation
3.	posição	(	)x	(	)x	position
4.	operação	(	)x	(	)x	operation
5•	repetição	(	)x	(	)x	repetition
6.	organização	(	)x	(	)x	organization
7.	promoção	(	)X	(	)x	promotion
8.	administraçã	ĭo	( ):	х (	)x	administration
9.	edição	(	)x	(	)x	edition
10.	missão	(	)x	(	)x	mission
10. 11.	missão expressão	(	)x	(	)x )x	mission expression
		(		(		
11.	expressão	( ( ( (	) <b>x</b>	( ( (	) <b>x</b>	expression
11. 12.	expressão vi <u>s</u> ão	( ( ( ( (	)x	( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( (	)x	expression vision
11. 12. 13.	expressão vi <u>s</u> ão deci <u>s</u> ão	( ( ( ( ( (	)x )x	( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( ( (	)x )x )x	expression vision decision

# Expansion Exercise 5. (Recorded)

Below you will find several model sentences. Using them as a starting point, put the English sentences that follow into Portuguese. Draw on the previous exercise for the necessary vocabulary. Verify on the tape.

## Model Sentence A. Não gosto da cidade.

- 1. I don't like the situation.
- 2. I don't like the solution.
- I don't like the organization.
- 4. I don't like the expression.
- 5. I don't like the mission.
- 6. I don't like the decision. ( $\underline{z}$  sound)
- 7. I don't like the conclusion. ( $\underline{z}$  sound)

# Model Sentence B. O que é que você acha da praia?

- 1. What do you think of the invasion? (z sound)
- 2. What do you think of the solution?
- 3. What do you think of the expression?
- 4. What do you think of the situation?
- 5. What do you think of the repetition?
- 6. What do you think of the organization?
- 7. What do you think of the decision? ( $\underline{z}$  sound)

## Model Sentence C. A praia é boa.

- 1. The decision is good. ( $\underline{z}$  sound)
- 2. The situation is good.
- $\beta$ . The repetition is good.
- 4. The solution is good.
- 5. The position is good.
- 6. The administration is good.
- 7. The promotion is good.
- 8. The vision is good. ( $\underline{z}$  sound)

# Expansion Exercise 6. (Recorded)

In Unit 17 you learned that many English adjectives ending in  $-\underline{al}$  have cognates in Portuguese that also end in  $-\underline{al}$ . Review the ones listed below. Remember that in Portuguese the stress is on the last syllable. Take time to pronounce these well.

1.	formal	(	)x	(	)x	8.	local	(	)x	(	)x
2.	normal	(	)x	(	)x	9.	federal	(	)x	(	)x
3.	social	(	)x	(	$\mathbf{x}$	10.	regional	(	)x	(	)x
4.	oficial	(	)x	(	)x	11.	industrial	(	)x	(	)x
5.	legal	(	)x	(	)x	12.	anual	(	)x	(	)x
6.	final	(	)x	(	)x	13.	especial*	(	)x	(	)x
7.	nacional	(	)x	(	)x						

<sup>\*</sup>Note that this word has an initial vowel  $\underline{e}$  which is absent in the English cognate 'special'. This initial vowel is sometimes whispered.

# Expansion Exercise 7. (Recorded)

Like all other descriptive adjectives, those ending in  $-\underline{al}$  are normally placed after the nouns they modify. Practice the following sequences, repeating after each one on the tape.

A.	1.	É uma festa boa. ( )X
	2.	É uma festa ótima. ( )X
	3.	É uma festa péssima. ( )X
	4.	É uma festa maravilhosa. ( )X
	5.	É uma festa formal. ( )X
	6.	É uma festa anual. ( )X
	7.	É uma festa especial. ( )X
	8.	$\mathbf{\acute{E}}$ uma festa oficial. ( )X
в.	1.	É um feriado americano. ( )X
	2.	
	3.	É um feriado ótimo. ( )X
	4.	É um feriado local. ( )X
	5.	É um feriado nacional. ( )X
	6.	$ ilde{\mathbf{E}}$ um feriado industrial. ( )X
	7.	$ ilde{\mathtt{E}}$ um feriado legal. ( )X
	8.	É um feriado oficial. ( )X
c.	1.	É uma expressão americana. ( )X
	2.	É uma expressão brasileira. ( )X
	3.	É uma expressão formal. ( )X
	4.	É uma expressão local. ( )X
	5.	É uma expressão regional. ( )X
	6.	É uma expressão normal. ( )X
	7.	É uma expressão legal. ( )X
D.	1.	É uma situação maravilhosa. ( )X
	2.	É uma situação péssima. ( )X
	3.	É uma situação normal. ( )X
	4.	É uma situação formal. ( )X
	5.	É uma situação informal. ( )X
	6.	É uma situação legal. ( )X
	7.	É uma situação especial. ( )X

Ε.	1.	É uma organização americana. ( )X
	2.	É uma organização brasileira. ( )X
	3.	É uma organização nacional. ( )x
	4.	É uma organização industrial. ( )X
	5.	É uma organização legal. ( )X
	6.	É uma organização social. ( )X
	7.	É uma organização regional. ( )X
F.	1.	É a edição americana. ( )X
	2.	É a edição brasileira. ( )x
	3.	É a edição final. ( )X
	4.	É a edição anual. ( )X
	5.	É a edição local. ( )X
	6.	É a edição especial. ( )X
	7.	É a edição oficial. ( )X

# Expansion Exercise 8. (Recorded)

Using the nouns of exercise 4 and the adjectives of exercise 6, translate the following short phrases into Portuguese. Verify with the tape.

- a legal solution
- 2. a legal decision
- 3. a legal organization
- 4. the final decision
- 5. the final conclusion
- 6. the annual promotion
- 7. my annual promotion (admittedly, an unlikely phrase!)
- 8. my special mission
- 9. a normal operation
- 10. the final operation
- 11. the final repetition
- 12. the final solution
- 13. the final promotion
- 14. a normal promotion
- 15. the official position
- 16. the social position

### Comprehension

On the tape are a total of ten, 2 and 3 line exchanges which have been prepared for your comprehension practice. Listen to them now and note any that are not clear to you.

## Exchanges and Brief Dialogs

- I. Prepare these brief exchanges for your teacher. Numbers 1-10 correspond to the ten exchanges recorded in the <u>Comprehension</u> section above.
- A. Do you notice that I'm eating a lot for lunch?
   B. I notice, and I don't like it.
- 2. A. I live in Copacabana. And you? (plural), where do you live?
  - B. We live there too.
- A. What time do you begin?
   B. I begin early, at six.
  - A. Is this office mine?
- 4. A. Is this office m B. Yes, it's yours.
  - A. Great! What a view!
- 5. A. Is this book yours?
  - B. It's mine, yes. Thanks.
- 6. A. Is that book yours?
  - B. No, it's Robert's.
- 7. A. Are these sandwiches yours?
  - 3. No, they're theirs.
- 8. A. Is that Coke yours?
  - B. No, it's Sandra's.
- 9. A. This food is good, isn't it?
  - B. No, I don't like it.
  - A. You're not hungry!
- 10. A. Is this house yours?
   B. No, it's my parents'.
- 11. A. Are you sure it's my turn?
  - B. I'm sure. My turn is tomorrow.
- 12. A. I'm sure I know that girl. But who is she?
   B. It's Sandra.
- 13. A. Are you sure he likes Sandra?
  - B. Of course! He likes her a lot.
  - A. Why doesn't he go out with her?

PORTUGUESE

- 14. A. When is the holiday? Tuesday?
  - B. Well, the holiday falls on Tuesday, but it's going to be celebrated on Monday.
- 15. A. But isn't tomorrow a holiday?
  - B. It is. But it's going to be celebrated on Friday.
  - A. Good. We work tomorrow, and Friday we go to the mountains.
- 16. A. Did you say that we're going to take a trip to the mountains?
  - B. Yes, I did. Don't you like the idea?
  - A. I do, indeed! This heat is too much!
- 17. A. Will you accept a Coke?
  - B. Yes, thanks. It's very hot. (fazendo calor)
- II. Prepare these short dialogs for your teacher. Numbers 3, 4 and 5 are recorded for you. Listen to them for comprehension practice before actively preparing them.
  - 1. A. What are we (gente) going to do this Thursday?
    - B. It's a holiday, isn't it?
    - A. It is.
    - B. Why don't we stay at home? I don't want to do anything. I'm tired.
    - A. Good. We can sleep until late.
  - 2. A. What are we (gente) going to do today?
    - B. What do you want to do?
    - A. I don't know. Let's see... Is it going to rain?
    - B. I don't think so.
    - A. Let's take a ride to the mountains.
    - B. Good idea.
  - 3. A. Oi, Geraldo. Tudo bom? Sente.
    - B. Obrigado.
    - A. Você aceita um café?
    - B. Não, obrigado.
    - A. Mesmo?! O café está muito bom hoje, viu?
  - 4. (This dialog emphasizes the open  $\underline{O}$  vowel. Practice it with your teacher or a fellow student. The open  $\underline{O}$  is underlined.)
    - A. A que horas você almoça?
    - B. Almoço à uma hora.
    - A. Você volta às duas?
    - B. Volto, sim.
    - A. Posso almoçar com você hoje?
    - B. Pode, claro... Vamos sair agora.
    - A. Vamos. Estou com fome.

- 5. (This dialog emphasizes both open vowels,  $\underline{O}$  and  $\underline{E}$ . They are underlined. We have included several of the verbs that you practiced earlier in this unit.)
  - A. Quando é a festa?
  - B. A festa é no dia dez.
  - A. Onde é que a Sônia mora?
  - B. Ela mora na Virginia.
  - A. A que horas a festa começa?
  - B. As sete.
  - A. Você leva os sanduíches?
  - B. Levo.
  - A. E eu levo o café...e uns refrigerantes tambem. Você gosta de Coca-Cola?
  - B. Gosto.
  - A. Até quando você vai ficar lá?
  - B. Até às nove.
  - A. So até às nove? (Party pooper!)\*
  - в. **s**ō.

<sup>\*</sup>Translates as Chato or Chata.

UNIT	21
------	----

D٥		

1.	Listen	to	these	verb	for	ms.	
			a,	. (	)	(	)
			b	. (	)	(	)
			C,	. (	)	(	)

2. The stem of these forms may sound familiar to you, but the endings probably do not. The forms have not been used in this text before. Here they are again. Listen and repeat.

a.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x
<b>b</b> .	(	)	(	) x	(	)x
c.	(	)	(	) x	(	) x

3. What we are doing is simple. We are adding the ending -ava to the stems of three verbs that are well-known to you: ficar, falar and trabalhar. The situation looks like this.

- a. Stem <u>fic-</u> plus ending <u>ava = ficava</u>
- b. Stem fal- plus ending ava = falava
- c. Stem  $\underline{\text{trabalh}}$  plus ending  $\underline{\text{ava}}$  =  $\underline{\text{trabalhava}}$

4. Repeat again.

a.	ficava	(	) x	(	) x	
b.	falava	(	) x	(	)x	
c.	trabalha	ıva	(	) x	(	) x

5. The -ava ending on a verb signals a time reference which can be translated several ways in English. One frequent way is the phrase 'used to'. Thus, the form <u>ficava</u> often suggests the translation 'used to stay'. Likewise, the form <u>falava</u> often suggests the notion 'used to speak', and <u>trabalhava</u> the notion used to work'.

6.	What	is	the	no	tion	sug	gest	ed	ру	this	verb	form?	
					(	)	(	)					
(used	to vis	sit)	)										
7.	What	is	the	no	tion	sug	ggest	ted	bу	this	verb	form?	
(used	to ser	nd)			(	)	(	)					
8.	How a	abou	ıt tl	nis	one	?							
(used	to pra	acti	.ce)		(	)	(	)					
9.	And t	his	s one	∍?									
					(	)	(	)					
(used	to ret	urr	1)										
10.	Now,	rep	peat	th	e fo	orms	you	hea	ard	in f	rames	6 through	9.
					a.	vis	itava	a	(	)x	(	)x	
					b.	man	dava		(	)x	(	)x	
					c.	prat	cicav	/a	(	)x	(	)x	
					đ.	volt	tava		(	)x	(	)x	
11.	How w	vou]	ld yo	ou	expr	ess	the	not	tion	ı 'us	ed to	study'?	
(estud	lava)				* 7 ~ ~ <del>*</del>	٠			,	١	(	١٠.	
• •		_				-			•	•	,	•	
		vou]	Ld yo	ou	expr	ess	the	not	tion	n 'us	ed to	arrive'?	
(chega	ava)				Veri	Lfy:			(	)x	(	)x	
13.	How a	abou	ı <b>t '</b> ı	ıse	d to	pre	epare	≘'?					
(prepa	arava)				Veri	Lfy:			(	)x	(	)x	
14.	And h	NO	woul	Ld	you	say	'use	ed 1	to d	dance	1 ?		
(dança	ava)				Veri	ify:			(	)x	(	)x	

15.	The 'used t	o' forms	that you	have	e jus	t been	n pra	actici	.ng a	re bo	th
	I-forms and	he-forms.	That	is, t	he e	nding	for	the 1	:-for	m	
	and the end	ling for th	ne he-for	rm is	the	same	: <u>av</u>	<u>a.</u> 1	o av	old	
	ambiguity i	t is ofter	necessa	ary t	o pr	ecede	the	verb	form		
	with the ap	propriate	noun or	pron	oun.	For	exam	mple:			
		eu fala			) x		) x				
		ele fala					) x				
		você falav									
	M	aria <b>f</b> alay	7a				) x				
		José fala	7a	(	) x	(	)x				
16.	So, how wou	ld you say	/ 'Mary w	ısed	to s	tay'?					
(Maria	ficava)										
		Verify:		(	)x	(	) X				
_	How would y		andra use	ed to	wor	k'?					
(Sandra	trabalhava)										
		Verify:		(	) x	(	) x				
0											
	How would y	ou say <b>'G</b> e	eorge use	ed to	pra	ctice'	?				
(Jorge 1	praticava)			,	,	,					
		Verify:		(	) X	(	) X				
10							_				
_	Using the p	ronoun, ho	w would	you	say	'she u	ısed	to ea	t Iu	nch'?	
(ela alr	noçava)	16		,	١	,	١				
		Verify:		(	) X	(	) X				
00	Mada a the m					1			3 3	10	
	Using the p	ronoun, no	ow would	you	say	'I use	ea to	eat	ainne	er. ?	
(eu jant	tava)	170 md for		,	١	,	١ ,,,				
		Verify:		(	)x	(	) x				
01	7 i i i	+1		<b>^</b> 1						- 3	
∠ <b>⊥</b> •	Again, using to arrive'?		ioun <u>voc</u>	e no	w wo	ита ус	ou sa	. Ус	u use	ea	
(você ch											
( Ange GI	iegava)	Verify:		(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	) x				
			21.3								

# Practice 1. (Recorded)

Learn to say the following sentences well enough so that you do not have to refer to the Portuguese at the right.

- I used to work a lot.
   I would work all day.
- (Eu trabalhava muito.)
  (Eu trabalhava o dia todo.)
- I used to study too much.I would study all day.
- (Eu estudava demais.)
  (Eu estudava o dia todo.)
- He used to speak English. He would speak [it] well.
- (Ele falava inglês.)
  (Ele falava bem.)
- 4. He used to eat lunch early. He'd always eat lunch at eleven.
- (Ele almoçava cedo.)
  (Ele sempre almoçava às onze.)
- 5. She used to eat dinner late.
  She'd always eat at ten.
- (Ela jantava tarde.)
  (Ela sempre jantava às dez.)
- 6. I used to stay home.
  I'd stay with my son.
- (Eu ficava em casa.)
  (Eu ficava com o meu filho.)
- 7. He used to get up early.
  He'd get up at six.
- (Ele levantava cedo.)
  (Ele levantava às seis.)
- 8. You used to arrive late.
  You'd arrive at nine.
- (Você chegava tarde.)
  (Você chegava às nove.)
- 9. I used to stop in Florida.
  I'd stop in Miami.
- (Eu parava na Flórida.) (Eu parava em Miami.)
- 10. She used to take the food. She'd always take sandwiches.
- (Ela levava a comida.)
  (Ela sempre levava sanduíches.)

## Practice 2. (Recorded)

Now, learn how to participate in these question and answer exchanges without having to refer to the Portuguese.

- Would you [habitually] stay home?
   Yes, I would.
- (Você ficava em casa?) (Ficava, sim.)
- 2. Would you [customarily] start at eight?

(Você começava às oito?)

Yes, I would.

(Começava, sim.)

3. Would you [customarily] study a lot? (Você estudava muito?)

Yes, I would.

(Estudava, sim.)

4. Did you [habitually] rest on weekends? Yes, I did. (Você descansava nos fins
 de semana?)
(Descansava, sim.)

Did he [customarily] like the

Yes, I did.

(Ele gostava das festas?)

parties?

No, he didn't.

(Não, não gostava.)

6. Did you [ordinarily] notice his accent?

(Você notava o sotaque dele?)
(Notava, sim.)

7. Would she [usually] arrive late?
No. she wouldn't.

(Ela chegava tarde?)
(Não, não chegava.)

8. Would she (usually) go to bed late? Yes, she would.

(Ela deitava tarde?)
(Deitava, sim.)

9. Did you use to live in Texas?
Yes, I did.

(Você morava no Texas?)
(Morava, sim.)

10. Did you use to take sandwiches?
 No, I didn't.

(Você levava sanduíches?) (Não, não levava.)

11. Would you buy the food? Yes, I would.

(Você comprava a comida?)
(Comprava, sim.)

- Would you prepare the food? 12. No. I wouldn't.
- 13. Would Spanish get in the way? Yes, it would.
- Would it suit to go to the 14. mountains? Yes, it would.

- (Você fazia a comida?) (Não, não fazia.)
- (O espanhol atrapalhava?) (Atrapalhava, sim.)
- (Dava para ir às montanhas?)

(Dava. sim.)

#### Practice 3. (Recorded)

Be sure you can translate these pairs of sentences. Notice how easily sempre and nunca adapt themselves to these situations.

- He used to stop in Brasilia. 1. He wouldn't stop in Recife.
- 2. He used to stay till ten. He would never stay later.
- 3. She would always speak Portuguese.

She wouldn't speak English.

- 4. She always used to go to bed early. She would never go to bed late.
- I always used to get back late. 5. I'd never get back early.
- 6 I wouldn't take a Coke. I'd always take another soft drink.
- I didn't (use to) like the mountains. (Eu não gostava das montanhas.) 7. I always used to like the beach.
- 8. He'd never send a letter. He'd always send a card.

- (Ele parava em Brasília.) (Ele não parava em Recife.)
- (Ele ficava até as dez.) (Ele nunca ficava até mais tarde.)
- (Ela sempre falava português.) (Ela não falava inglês.)
- (Ela sempre se deitava cedo.) (Ela nunca se deitava tarde.)
- (Eu sempre voltava tarde.) (Eu nunca voltava cedo.)
- (Eu não aceitava Coca-cola.) (Eu sempre aceitava outro refrigerante.)
- (Eu sempre gostava da praia.)
  - (Ele nunca mandava uma carta.) (Ele sempre mandava um cartão.)

22.	So much for	the I an	id he-	form:	s.	Now T	et's	go on	to the	!
	we-form. H	Here is th	e end	ing :	for	the w	e-for	rm.		
		( )								
		,	`	,	`	,				
23.	This ending	n has thre	e svl	lable	es.	the f	irst	one of	which	is
-5•	stressed.	_	_							
	scressed.								SYTTAL	,TC •
		( )	(	) X	(	) X	(	) A		
Oli	Mar. 1a41a v	+ 1 +				-ah	d			
24.	Now let's p				a ve	rp an	a see	e wnat	we nav	e.
	Let's use the verb 'talk'.						,			
		( )	(	) X	(	) X	(	) X		
25.	That was th	ne way you	ı say	we u	used	to t	alk',	. Now,	here	is
	the way you	ı say 'we	us <b>e</b> d	to s	tay'	•				
		( )	(	) x	(	) X	(	) X		
26.	And here is	s 'we used	l to a	rrive	e¹.					
•		( )				\ <b>x</b>	1	) <b>x</b>		
		( )	`	<i>)</i> A	(	) A	`	) A		
07	Co how was	.1.3				1 4	1.0			
	So, how wou	iid you sa	.y we	used	a to	Tive				
(morávam	os)				,	,	,			
		Verify:			(	) x	(	) X		
28.	How would y	you say 'w	e use	d to	lik	e'?				
(gostáva:	mos)									
		Verify:			(	) x	(	) x		
					•	·	•	,		
29.	How about '	we used t	o tak	۾ اڄ	(16	war)				
(levávam		we abea e	.o case	· .	( <u>10</u>	· Var				
(Te va vaiii	OS)	****			,	\ 37	,	\ 35		
		Verify:			(	) x	(	) X		
						,				
	And how abo	out 'we us	ed to	sper	nd'?	( <u>pa</u>	ssar)	1		
(passáva	mos)									
		Verify:			(	) x	(	) x		

31.	Now let's le	ave the	e we-fo	orm f	or a	mome	nt an	nd go on	to the	:
	they-form:	Here is	s the	endin	g fo	r the	the	y-form.		
		( )	(	) x	(	) x				
32.	The last syl	lable o	of this	s end	ing	is an	uns	ressed,	nasal	
	diphthong th	at you	are a	lread	y fa	milia	r wi	th.		
		( )2	x (	) x						
33•	Here is the	whole e	ending	agai	n.	Be su	re to	stress	the <u>fi</u>	rst
	syllable, no	the	diphth	ong.						
			(		(	) x				
		,	•	,	•	,				
34.	Now let's pu	t that	endin	g on	the	verb	spea	ak' in or	der to	)
<b>J</b>	say 'they us						-			
	• •		(		(	) x				
		` ,	`	,	`	,				
35•	Now put it o	n anoth	ner ve	rb an	d sa	v 'the	ev us	sed to li	ve'.	
3 <b>2</b> •	1					2				
		( )	(	) x	(	١x				
		,	`	, 22	`	/ 21				
36.	Here is the	way you	ı sav '	thev	1156	d to 1	orac	tice!.		
J <b>0</b> •	11020 10 0110		(				9140	•		
		,	`	<i>)</i> A	`	<i>)</i> 22				
37•	Now that you	have i	the nat	ttarn	wh	at ic	the	form for	ther	,
31•	used to work		the par	ccern	, WII	at is	CHE	TOTAL TOT	chey	
/										
(trabalha	avamj	***			,	١,,,	,	١ ,,,		
		Verify	Y:		(	) x	(	) X		
20					<b>.</b> .					
	What is the	form fo	or the	ey us	ed t	o take	∍'?	(tomar)		
(tomavam)	)				,	<b>\</b>	,	<b>\</b>		
		Verify	Y:		(	) x	(	) X		
	_	-								
	How do you s	ay 'the	ey use	d to	rest	• ?				
(descansa	avam)				,	,	,	,		
		Verify	Y:	21.8	(	)x	(	) X		

40. (começav		ou s	ay 'they used	l to	begi	n¹?		
. ,	·	Ver	ify:	fy: (			) x	
41.	Notice this to speak'.	cont	rast between	'th	ey sp	eak'	and	they used
		a.	falam	(	)x	(	)x	'they speak'
		b.	falavam	(	)x	(	) x	they used to speak
42.			ntrasts of th					
	between 'the	ey do	something a	nd	'they	used	l to	do something.
	(1)	a.	moram	(	) x	(	) x	
		b.	moravam	(	)x	(	)x	
	<b>(</b> 2)	a.	tomam	(	)x	(	) x	
		b.	tomavam	(	)x	(	) x	
	<b>(</b> 3)	a.	começam	(	) x	(	)x	
		b.	começavam	(	) x	(	) x	
	(4)	a.	jantam	(	) x	(	)x	
	•	b.	jantavam	(	) x	(	) x	
	<b>(</b> 5)	a.	preparam	(	)x	(	) x	
	(2)	b.	preparavam	(	) x	(	)x	
	(6)	a.	levantam	(	) x	(	) x	
	(0)	b.	levantavam	(	) x	(	) x	
	(7)	a.	atrapalham	(	)x	(	) x	
	(17	b.	atrapalhavam	(	) X	(	) x	
	<b>(</b> 8)	_	deixam	,	\ 27	,	١	
	<b>(</b> 8)	a. h	deixawam	(	) x	(	) x	
		r 1	VICTABLE CITY		1 X		ıγ	

<b>(</b> 9)	•	mudam mudavam	•	) x ) x	•	
(10)	•	aceitam aceitavam	•	)x )x	•	•

### Observation

We have already indicated that the words 'used to' are only one possible way of thinking about these verb forms. Another useful way is the English word 'would'. Be not misled, however. The word 'would' serves several purposes in English. In the present context we are talking only about the 'would' which is the equivalent of 'used to', the 'would' that we frequently use when we are relating events that took place over and over again in the past. It is the 'would' that occurs in these sentences:

- a. When I was a teenager I would go to bed much later than I do now.
- b. I would always say 'good morning' to her but she would never even smile.
- c. In those days we <u>would</u> ordinarily begin our day's work at 8:00.

In these instances we are talking about habitual, customary, oft-repeated or continual actions in the past. Sometimes we feel comfortable describing such actions with the phrase 'used to', and sometimes we feel just as comfortable, or more so, using the word 'would'. (Notice that you can substitute 'used to' for 'would' in the above sentences.) Both of these English terms are useful in thinking about the Portuguese verb forms that we are studying in this unit, for they too (the Portuguese forms) reflect customary, habitual, oft-repeated or continual actions in the past.

Sometimes it is a bit awkward to force the words 'used to' or 'would' into the English translation, even though it is clear from the context that this is indeed the sense of the Portuguese. You will see some evidence of this in the dialogs and exercises of this unit.

# Practice 4. (Recorded)

Learn how to say these sentences without having to refer to the right hand column.

- They used to study a lot.
   They would study all day.
- They would speak English. They'd speak [it] well.
- They used to stop in Florida.They'd stop in Miami.
- 4. They'd arrive real late.
  They'd arrive after eleven.
- 5. They used to live in Colorado. They used to live in Denver.
- We used to live in New York.
   We used to live in Albany.
- We used to begin real early.
   We'd begin at seven.
- 8. We used to stay till late. We'd stay until one o'clock.
- We would work a lot.We'd work day and night.
- 10. We would eat dinner at home.
  We'd eat well.

(Eles estudavam muito.)
(Eles estudavam o dia todo.)

(Eles falavam inglês.)
(Falavam bem.)

(Eles paravam na Flórida.) (Paravam em Miami.)

(Eles chegavam muito tarde.)
(Eles chegavam depois das onze.)

(Eles moravam no Colorado.)
(Moravam em Denver.)

(Nós morávamos em Nova York.) (Morávamos em Albany.)

(Nós começávamos bem cedo.) (Começávamos às sete.)

(Nós ficávamos até tarde.) (Ficávamos até uma hora.)

(Nós trabalhávamos muito.)
(Trabalhávamos dia e noite.)

(Nós jantávamos em casa.)
(Jantávamos bem.)

# Practice 5. (Recorded)

Now, learn how to say these sentences.

We wouldn't stop in Baltimore.

We'd stop in Philadelphia.

- We wouldn't speak English. We'd speak Portuguese.
- We'd never get up late.We'd always get up at six.
- 4. We'd never eat lunch there.
  We'd always eat lunch at home.
- 5. We'd never buy a Chevy.

We'd always buy a Ford.

- They'd never eat dinner in the restaurant.
  - They'd always eat dinner at home.
- 7. They'd never arrive late.
  They'd always arrive early.
- 8. They'd never stay in a hotel.
  They'd always stay here.
- 9. They wouldn't take a Coke.
  They'd take another soft drink.

They liked Sundays.

(Nós não parávamos em Baltimore.)

(Parávamos em Filadélfia.)

(Nós não falávamos inglês.)
(Falávamos português.)

(Nós nunca levantávamos tarde.)
(Nós sempre levantávamos às seis.)

(Nós nunca almoçávamos lá.) (Nós sempre almoçávamos em casa.)

(Nós nunca comprávamos Chevrolet.)

(Sempre comprávamos Ford.)

(Eles nunca jantavam no restaurante.)
(Sempre jantavam em casa.)

(Eles nunca chegavam tarde.)
(Sempre chegavam cedo.)

(Eles nunca ficavam no hotel.)
(Eles sempre ficavam aqui.)

(Eles não aceitavam Coca-cola.) (Aceitavam outro refrigerante.)

(Eles não gostavam dos sábados.)

(Eles gostavam dos domingos.)

# Practice 6. (Recorded)

Practice asking and answering these questions.

- Did you use to speak Spanish?
   Yes, we did.
- 2. Did you use to return early? Yes, we did.
- Would you practice a lot?Yes, we would.
- 4. Would you stay at the Embassy?
  No, we wouldn't.
- 5. Would you drink coffee? No, we wouldn't.
- 6. Did you [customarily] eat a a good lunch? Yes, we did.
- 7. Did you [usually] send cards? No, we didn't.
- 8. Did you [ordinarily] go to bed early? Yes, we did.

Os senhores falavam espanhol? Falávamos, sim.

Os senhores voltavam cedo? Voltávamos, sim.

Os senhores praticavam muito? Praticávamos, sim.

Os senhores ficavam na Embaixada? Não, não ficávamos.

Os senhores tomavam café? Não, não tomávamos.

Os senhores almoçavam bem?

Almoçávamos, sim.

Os senhores mandavam cartões? Não, não mandávamos.

Os senhores se deitavam cedo?

Deitávamos, sim.

# Part II

1.	Recall the ir:	regular	form	ation of	adie	ctive	s and	d nou	ns t	that
	end in stress				J					
	f	inal	(	)x	finai	S	(	)x		
	C	ana1	(	)x	canai	s	(	)x		
	ne	ormal	(	)x	norma	is	(	)x		
		ocal					(			
	f	ormal	(	)x	forma	is	(	)x		
		egal					(	)x		
				)x			(	)x		
	f	ederal	(	)x	feder	ais	(	)x		
2.	Nouns that end similar proced an example.	ss to fo First, r	rm t epea	heir plu	rals. the si	The	word			
3.	Now repeat the	e plural	for	m, i.e.,	, the	equiv	alen	t of	'ho	tels'.
			(	) (	)x	( )	x			
4.	Here is the w	ord for	'pap	er'. Th	nis is	a ne	w it	em fo	r y	ou.
			(	) (	)x	( )	х	( )	X	
5•	Analogizing w plural, 'pape		plur	al of 'h	notel'	, how	wou	ld yc	ou sa	ay the
	V	erify:	(	)x (	)x					

6.	Here is the word for 'r: It too is a new word for		e kind y	ou put	on your	finger.
	(	) (	) x (	( )x		
7•	Again, by analogy, you s	should be	e able t	co say	the plur	al form
	Verify: (	)x	( )x			
8.	Here is the word for sor pie, or turnover.	mething '	very tas	sty, a	kind of	small
	(	) (	) x (	( )x		
9•	Generally, these small properties want to eat more than just the cook just how good word into the plural?	ist one	of them.	When	n you wan	t to tell
	Verify:	( )x	( )x			
10.	Now, here are the above them as you are saying		ems agai	in. Th	nis time	look at
	hotel (	•		•	•	
	papel (					
	anel (			-		
	pastel (	) x	pastéis	s (	) x	
11.	Notice that the open $\underline{\mathbf{E}}$ a	appears	in the s	stresse	ed syllab	le of
	these words. Notice, to				_	

the plural where it is part of the stressed diphthong  $-\underline{\text{Ei}}$ -.

			hotéis	(	)x	(	)x					
			papéis	(	)x	(	)x					
			anéis	(	)x	(	)x					
			pastéis	•	)x	Ì	)x					
			-	`	, -	`	, -					
<b>1</b> 2.	Her	e are	a few additi	onal	. les	s cc	mmon <b>1</b> s	v hea	ard wo	ords	that	
•			ne above patt		-							
			nese items as								,	
	-01				2	· 5-·		1				
	A.	First	t, just the s	ingu	lar f	orms	5 <b>.</b>					
		(1)	pincel	(	)x	(	)x	'pai	nt br	ush'		
		(2)	quarte1	(	)x	(	)x	'bar	racks	, <b>1</b>		
		(3)	corone1	(	)x	(	)x	'col	onel'			
		(4)	cascavel	(	)x		)x		tlesr			
		(5)	carrossel	(	)x	(	)x	'car	rouse	1'		
	в.	Now	the singular	for	me fo	1104	zed by	the	nlurs	1 fo	rme	
	ь.	(1)	_	,			céis	,	-	,	_	
		` '	quarte1	(	) X	_		(	) X	(	)x	
					-		rtéis			(	) X	
			coronel	(	•		onéis	•		•	)x	
			cascavel	(	•		scavéis		) x	`	)x	
		(5)	carrossel	(	)X	car	rossé	ıs(	)x	(	)x	
13.	Wor	ds end	ding in stres	sed	-01 (	oper	n 0) a	lso h	ave a	dir	hthona	
-50			plural endin									
			that ends in									•
			n be both adj				-	iie we	ora re	,, ,	Panisn	,
	WILL	CII Cai	n be both day	16001	ve ai	ia ne	Juli.					
			espanhol		(	١x	(	١x				
				-	`	,		,				
14.	Espa	anho1	is just the	masc	uline	for	m (the	e fem	ninine	is	espanho	o1a)
•			the masculine									/
				1		<b></b> 9					-	
			( )	(	)x	(	)x (	( )	x			

<b>1</b> 5.	This is	what it	100}	ks li	.ke:							
			esp	anhối	Ls	(	)x	(	)x			
16.	Thus, i	f you wa	nt to	say	'Th	ney a	re S	Spani	sh',	you wi	ill s	ay:
	<u>E1</u>	es são e	spanl	nóis		(	)x	(	)x			
17.	And, if	you wan	t to	say	'Spa	nish	res	staur	ants'	, you	will	say:
	re	staurant	es es	spanl	nóis	(	)x	(	)x			
18.	How wou	ld you s	ay 's	Spani	.sh a	ccen	ts'?	•				
(sotaque	es espan	hóis)	Ver:	ify:	(	)x	(	( )	x			
<b>1</b> 9.	How abo	ut 'Span	ish t	frier	nds (	masc	.)?'					
(amigos	espanhó	is)	Ver:	ify:	(	)x	(	( )	x			
20.		ords tha equency										
		anzol										
	b.	farol	(	)x	(	)x	,	head	light	'		
21.	Now, re	peat the	plui	ral f	orms	alo	ng w	vith	the s	ingula	ar.	
	a.		-	•		-				)x		
	b.	farol	(	)x	(	) X	f	arói	s (	)x	(	)x
	in stree for wor yes, the worth many Here is	we have essed -al ds endingere is. mentioning the singular.	., <u>-e</u> g in But g at gular (	L are streethe this r for	nd -cessed exam exam cm.	ol. d -ul mples int i	Is t and are s th	there d str e few ne ad	a si essed . Th	milar - <u>il</u> ? e only ve 'b	patt For y one	ern - <u>ul</u> ,
23•		e is the uis					1	١v	(	)x		
	<u>a2</u>	ulb	(	)	1	<i>)</i> ^	(	14	(	12		

24.	Thus, is you want to say 'blue car', you will say it like this.
	carro azul ( )x ( )x
25.	And if you want to say the plural form, 'blue cars', you will say it like this. <u>carros azuis</u> ( )X ( )X
26. (livro a	How would you say the singular, 'blue book'?
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
27. (livros	How about the plural, 'blue books'? azuis)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
	How would you say 'blue mountains'?
	Verify: ( )X ( )X
29.	This is the way you say 'the mountain is blue'.
	A montanha é azul ( )x ( )x
	How do you say 'The mountains are blue'? tanhas são azuis)
(11- 0)	Verify: ( )X ( )X
31.	Do words that end in stressed - <u>il</u> follow the same pattern and have a diphthong in their plural forms? No, they do not. They simply change the <u>l</u> to <u>s</u> . Here are a few such words, first in their singular forms. <u>barril</u> ( )X ( )X 'barrel'
	civil ( )X ( )X 'civil'
	<pre>gentil ( )X ( )X 'kind', 'polite'</pre>

32	r. Tr	nis	time	repe	at	the	sin	gu <b>l</b> a	<b>r</b> an	d p	lura	al :	forms	toge	ether.	
			barri	1	(	)x	(	)	х	b	arr:	is	(	)x	(	)x
			civil			-		-	X				•	)x		)x
				_										•	(	
					`	,	`	,					`	,	`	/
33	3. Th	nis	is th	ne wa	у У	ou :	say	'He	is v	ery	ki	nd	(poli	te)'	•	
			Ele é	mui	to.	gen	<u>til</u>	(	)x	(		)x				
31	↓. но	ow v	would	you	say	'T]	hey	are	very	ki	nd'	?				
(Eles	s são	mu	ito ge	entis	:)											
					V	eri:	fy:	(	)x		(	)x				
35	5. Th	nis	is th	ne ph	ras	e '	one	barr	el'.							
			um ba	rril	_ (	•	)x	(	)x							
36	б <b>. н</b> о	ow c	do you	ı say	, 't	hre	e ba	rrel	s¹?							
(três	s barı	cis	)													
					V	eri:	fy:	(	)x		(	)x				
Re	eview	Pra	actice	<b>a</b>												
	Re	epea	at the	ese s	ing	rula:	r an	d pl	ura1	it	ems	as	they	are	given	to
ус	ou on	the	e tape	≥.												
	1.	• ]	pastel	L	(	•	)x	F	asté	is		(	)x			
	2.		ane1						néis			(	)x			
	3.	. :	forma]	L	(		)x	f	orma	is		(	)x			
	4.	. (	capita	a1	(		)x	c	apit	ais		(	)x			
	5.		quarte	<b>=1</b>	(		)x	q	uart	éis		(	)x			
	6.	. (	espanl	101	(		)x	€	span	hối	s	(	)x			
	7.	. :	faro <b>l</b>		(	,	)x	f	arói	.s		(	)x			
	8,		azu <b>l</b>		(		)x	i	zuis	5		(	)x			
	9.	. :	legal		(	•	)x	1	egai	.s		(	)x			
	10.	. (	civil		(	,	)x	c	civis	5		(	)x			
	11.	. 9	gentil	L	(	,	)x	ç	genti	İs		(	)x			
	<b>1</b> 2.	. 1	notel		(	•	)x	h	otéi	.s		(	)x			

21.19

## DIALOG - Part I

Yara

Onde você mora?

Where do you live?

<u>Jac</u>k

Eu moro em Alexandria.

I live in Alexandria.

Yara

antes

before, previously

Onde você morava antes?

Where did you (use to) live

before?

<u>Jack</u>

Eu morava em Filadélfia.

I used to live in Philadelphia.

Yara

nascer

to be born

Você nasceu lá?

Were you born there?

Jack

nasci a capital (I) was born the capital

Não, eu nasci em Harrisburg, a capital.

No. I was born in Harrisburg, the capital.

### Part II

### Yara

Onde é que você trabalhava, Frank?

Where did you use to work, Frank?

## Frank

Londres seção política London section political

Eu trabalhava em Londres, na seção política.

I worked (use to work) in London, in the political section.

## Yara

viajar

to travel

<u>Você viajava?</u>

Did you (customarily) travel?

### Frank

aliás

actually, as a matter of fact

England

Viajava. Aliás, eu viajava muito, na Inglaterra mesmo.

a Inglaterra

<u>I did.</u> As a matter of fact, <u>I travelled a lot, in England</u> itself.

## Part III

### <u>Yara</u>

Ana

Anna

Chinês

Chinese

Você sabe, Ana, que o Jorge falava Chinês muito bem?

Do you know, Anna, that George used to speak Chinese real well?

### Jorge

Eu? Que Chinês?
Eu não falava Chinês.

Me? What (do you mean) Cninese?
I didn't use to speak Chinese!

inventar

to invent

cada

each

Você inventa cada uma!

You invent the darnedest things! (Literally, You invent each one!)

# Expansion Exercise 1. (Recorded)

This is additional practice with the verb <u>viajar</u>. Repeat these items as they are given to you on the tape.

### Present

- 1. Você viaja muito?
- 2. Vocês viajam amanhã?
- 3. Nós não viajamos hoje, viajamos amanhã.
- 4. Quem viaja mais, você ou ele?
- 5. En não viajo nada.
- 6. Quando é que a senhora viaja? No sábado?

### Past

- 7. Eles viajaram para o Brasil ontem.
- 8. Eu já viajei pela Pan American. Gostei muito.
- 9. Você viajou pela Varig?
- 10. Nós já viajamos três vezes ao Rio. Que cidade!
- 11. Quem viajou com vocês?

### Neutral form

- 12. Quem quer viajar com ele?
- 13. Nós só vamos viajar segunda-feira.
- 14. Eu não vou viajar de carro. É longe.
- 15. Eles também pretendem viajar domingo?

# Expansion Exercise 2. (Recorded)

Note well these instances of the use of <u>aliás</u>. Repeat first the part of the utterance that precedes the word <u>aliás</u>, then repeat the part that begins with the word.

- 1. Eu me levanto cedo; aliás, eu me levanto às seis e meia.
- Eu não quero comer estes sanduíches; aliás, eu não estou com fome.
- 3. Acho que ele sai amanhã; aliás, eu tenho certeza.
- 4. Ele vai viajar pela Braniff; aliás, ele já reservou as passagens.

- O professor Ferreira dá muitas provas; aliás, ele vai dar uma hoje.
- 6. O sanduíche é bom, viu? Aliás, é ótimo.
- 7. Você tem razão; aliás, você sempre tem razão.

### Expansion Exercise 3.

Note well these examples of the exclamation <u>Que</u> used in the approximate sense of <u>what do you mean?</u> In each instance it should be easy to imagine that the speaker is disputing something that has just been said.

## (with a noun)

- 1. Que Chinês! Eu não falo Chinês.
- 2. Que festa! Eu não vou dar uma festa.
- 3. Que sanduíches! Eu não vou levar sanduíches, viu?
- 4. Que Coca-cola! Aqui a gente não bebe Coca-cola.
- 5. Que feriado! Amanhã não é feriado.
- 6. Que notícias dele! Eu não recebi notícias dele.
- 7. Que filha! Ele não tem filha, viu?

### (with an adjective)

- 8. Que espanhol! Ele é brasileiro.
- 9. Que velha! Ela não é velha!
- 10. Que solteira! Ela é casada.

### (with a verb)

- 11. Que parar na Flórida! Eu não vou parar na Flórida.
- 12. Que fazer um passeio! Eu quero descansar, viu?
- 13. Que levar sanduíches! Nós vamos comer num restaurante.
- 14. Que preparar o diálogo! Hoje é sábado, viu?
- 15. Que passou bem a noite! Eu não dormi nada.
- 16. Que mandar um cartão! Eu vou escrever uma carta.
- 17. Que viajar pela Braniff! Eu vou viajar pela VARIG, viu?
- 18. Que moramos em Washington! Nós moramos em Maryland.
- 19. Que nasceu na Virginia! Eu nasci na Pennsylvania.
- 20. Que trabalhava em Londres! Ela trabalhava em Bonn.
- 21. Que está resfriado! Eu estou cansado só.
- 22. Que caiu no sono! Eu estou acordado, viu? Você inventa cada uma!

### Translations

Be prepared to participate in these brief interchanges either with your teacher or a follow student.

- 1. A. Você falava espanhol?
  - B. Falava. Eu morava em Caracas.
- 2. A. Os senhores moravam na África?
  - B. Morávamos. Nós trabalhávamos na embaixada em Cairo.
- 3. A. Eu nasci em Harrisburg.
  - B. Mesmo? A minha esposa nasceu perto de lá.
- 4. A. Eu sou de Albany. Eu nasci lá.
  - B. Mesmo? Eu trabalhava lá.
- A. A Yara falava francês (French) bem, mas ela já esqueceu muito.
  - B. Eu também falava. Mas agora falo bem pouco.
- A. Eu passava muitos fins de semana em Chicago. Eu trabalhava em Gary.
  - B. Mesmo? Eu conheço bem a cidade. Eu sou de lá.
- 7. A. Quando nós morávamos em Londres, nós jantavamos tarde.
  - B. E agora?
  - A. Agora nós jantamos cedo, lá pelas seis.
- 8. A. Quando eu morava em Nova Iorque eu levantava cedo.
  - B. E agora?
  - A. Agora eu levanto tarde, lá pelas oito.
- 9. A. Você trabalhava muito, não é?
  - B. Trabalhava. Eu ficava na Embaixada até às sete e só chegava em casa às oito.

- 10. A. A que horas os senhores começavam o dia?
  - B. Nós começávamos às oito e quarenta e cinco, mais ou menos.
- 11. A. Das nove até às dez você sempre estudava?
  - B. Não. Eu descansava. Eu não gostava de estudar a essa hora.
- 12. A. Não dava para ir às montanhas?
  - B. Não dava. Nós sempre ficávamos na cidade.
- 13. A. Você falava espanhol bem?
  - B. Não. O francês sempre atrapalhava.
- 14. A. Você levava sanduíches?
  - B. Levava. Eu não gostava da comida do restaurante.
- 15. A. Eu voltava da praia cedo.
  - B. E eu ficava até bem tarde. Eu gostava tanto!
- 16. A. Eu praticava francês com ela.
  - B. Ela falava bem?
  - A. Falava. Ela nasceu em Paris, viu?

# UNIT 22

In the last unit we dealt with the concepts of 'used to' and/or 'would' in -ar type verbs. In this unit we will deal with these concepts in -er and -ir type verbs.

1.	Listen to these verb forms.
	a. ( ) ( )
	b. ( ) ( )
	c. ( ) ( )
	d. ( ) ( )
2.	You may recognize the stems of these verbs but you
	probably do not recognize their ending. Here is the
	ending. Listen and repeat.
	( ) ( )x ( )x ( )x
3.	Now let's attach this ending to the stems of four verbs,
	as we did in frame 1, above. This time you should repeat
	b. ( )x ( )x c. ( )x ( )x
	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
4.	Now let's attach the ending to four more verbs. Listen
	and repeat.
	a. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	b. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	c. ( ) ( )x ( )x
	d. ( ) ( )x ( )x
5•	The ending that we have been dealing with looks like this
	in print: -ia.
	( )x <b>(</b> )x ( )x
6.	It can be attached to the stem of -er type verbs.
	a. ( )x ( )x
	b. ( )x ( )x
	c. ( )x ( )x
	d. ( )x ( )x
	22.1

7.	It can also be attached to the stem of -ir type verbs.
	a. ( )x ( )x
	b. ( )x ( )x
	c. ( )x ( )x
	d. ( )x ( )x
8.	This is what the four - <u>er</u> type verbs in frame 6 look like with this ending attached.  a. Stem <u>beb</u> - plus ending - <u>ia</u> = <u>bebia</u>
	b. Stem <u>com-</u> plus ending - <u>ia</u> = <u>comia</u>
	c. Stem <u>escrev-</u> plus ending <u>-ia = escrevia</u>
	d. Stem <u>receb-</u> plus ending - <u>ia = recebia</u>
9.	Now, repeat again.
	a. bebia ( )x ( )x
	b. comia ( )x ( )x
	c. escrevia ( )x ( )x
	d. recebia ( )x ( )x
10.	This is what the four - <u>ir</u> type verbs in frame 7 look
	like with this ending attached.
	a. Stem <u>dorm</u> - plus ending - <u>ia</u> = <u>dormia</u>
	b. Stem <u>repet-</u> plus ending - <u>ia = repetia</u>
	c. Stem <u>dirig</u> - plus ending - <u>ia</u> = <u>dirigia</u>
	d. Stem <u>abr</u> - plus ending - <u>ia</u> = <u>abria</u>
11.	Now, repeat again.
	a. dormia ( )x ( )x
	b. repetia ( )x ( )x
	c. dirigia ( )x ( )x
	d. abria ( )x ( )x
12.	The -ia ending signifies 'used to' or 'would' for -er and -ir type verbs, just as -ava does for -ar type verbs. Thus the form comia can be translated as 'used to eat' or 'would eat' and the form dormia can be translated
	as 'used to sleep' or 'would sleep'.

	13.	How	would	d you	ı tra	anslate	this	form?	Liste	n.	
			(	)	(	)					
(used	d to/t	would	d eat	•	,	•					
	14.	How	would	d you	ı tra	anslate	this	form?			
			(	)	(	)					
(used	d to/v	would	d writ	ce)							
	15.	How	about	thi	s fo	orm?					
			(	)	(	)					
(used	d to/v	would	d oper	•	,	•					
	16.	And	this	form	n?						
			(	)	(	)					
(used	i to/v	vould	d repe	eat)							
	17.	And	this	one	•						
			(	)	(	)					
(used	d to/v	vould	d driv	ле)		·					
	18.	And	this	ones	<b>)</b>						
				)		)					
(used	i to/v	vould	rece	•	•	,					
	19.	Here	are	the	neut	tral for	ms of	many c	f the	-er	and -ir
type											his list
										_	o prepare
				-		at follo		_			
		come	er	(		)×		dormir		(	)×
		bebe	er	(	•	) <b>x</b>		repeti	r	(	)x
		esci	cever	(	, ,	) <b>x</b>		dirigi	r	(	)x
		esqu	ıecer	(	, ,	)x		abrir		(	)x
		chov	/er	(	, ,	)x		prefer	ir	(	)x
		sabe	er	(		)×		sentir		(	)×
		rece	eber	(		)×		sair		(	)x
		faze	er	(	, ,	)×		cair		(	)x
		conh	necer	(		)×		ir		(	)×
		acor	ntecer	- (		)×					
		ler		(	. ,	۱x					

20.	Now, we will take just the $-\underline{er}$ type verbs from the
	above list and we will practice them in their 'used to/
	would forms.
	a. comia ( )x ( )x
	b. bebia ( )x ( )x
	c. escrevia ( )x ( )x
	d. esquecia $( )x ( )x$
	e. chovia ( )x ( )x
	f. sabia ( )x ( )x
	g. recebia ( )x ( )x
	h. fazia ( )x ( )x
	i. conhecia ( )x ( )x
	j. acontecia ( )x ( )x
21.	The 'used to/would' form for <u>ler</u> ('read') may seem
	strange to you since it is so short.
	<u>lia</u> ( )x ( )x
22.	However, this form follows the same pattern as the
•	others: the stem 1- is followed by the ending -ia.
	<u>lia</u> ( )x ( )x
3 <b>3</b>	Now we will take the -ir type verbs from the above list
• ر ــ	and we will practice saying their 'used to/would' forms.
	a. dormia ( )x ( )x
	b. repetia ( )x ( )x
	c. dirigia ( )x ( )x
	d. abria ( )x ( )x
	e. preferia ( )x ( )x
	f. sentia ( )x ( )x
	g. saía ( )x ( )x
	h. caía ( )x ( )x
	i. ia ( )x ( )x
24.	If items (g) and (h) seem a bit strange to you it is only
۵ च •	because of their stems. Their stems are relatively short,
	and they end in a vowel. The stems are <u>sa</u> - and <u>ca</u>
	sa-ia ( )x ( )x
	ca-ía ( )x ( )x
	\ /**

25. Item (i) may seem to lack a stem, and perhaps it does, but the form is complete. It is the 'used to/would' form for the verb <u>ir</u>. (When you remove the <u>ir</u> portion to look for a stem, you realize immediately that there is nothing left. No stem to attach <u>ia</u> to. So the ending <u>ia</u> becomes the whole form.)

ia ( )x ( )x

26. The forms that we have been practicing are both I-forms and he-forms. The form dormia, for example, is the form that is called for when you want to say 'I used to/would sleep' and it is also the form that is called for when you want to say 'He' or 'You' or 'Maria' or 'the Ambassador used to/would sleep'.

### Practice I (Recorded)

Learn how to say these short, paired sentences.

- 1. I used to eat a lot. (Eu comia muito.)
- I would eat everything. (Eu comia tudo.)
- 3. I used to leave early. (Eu saía cedo.)
- 4. I would leave at six. (Eu saía às seis.)
- 5. He used to sleep a lot. (Ele dormia muito.)
- 6. He would sleep 10 hours. (Ele dormia dez horas.)
- 7. He used to fall asleep early. (Ele dormia cedo.)
- 8. He would fall asleep at nine. (Ele dormia às nove.)
- 9. She used to read a lot. (Ela lia muito.)
- 10. She would read until midnight. (Ela lia até a meia-noite.)
- 11. It used to rain a lot there. (Chovia muito lá.)
- 12. It would rain every day. (Chovia todos os dias.)
- 13. He used to drive a lot. (Ele dirigia muito.)
- 14. He would drive every day. (Ele dirigia todos os dias.)
- 15. He used to go to the movies a lot. (Ele ia muito ao cinema.)
- 16. He'd go everyday. (Ele ia todos os dias.)

### Practice II (Recorded)

Now, be sure you can say these pairs of sentences.

John wouldn't go to (João não ia à praia.)
 the beach.

He'd go to the (Ele ia às montanhas.) mountains.

- 2. I wouldn't drink coke. (Eu não bebia Coca-cola.)
   I'd drink other soft (Eu bebia outros
   drinks. refrigerantes.)
- 3. I wouldn't read 'The (Eu não lia 'The News'.)
  News'.

But I <u>would</u> always (Mas eu sempre lia 'The Post.') read 'The Post'.

Jorge wouldn't go out (Jorge não saía com a Yara.)
 with Yara.

But he <u>would</u> always go (Mas ele sempre saía com a Sandra, out with Sandra, yes, claro!) indeed!

5. Yara wouldn't go through (A Yara não ia por Brasília.) (por) Brasilia.

She'd go directly to (Ela ia diretamente ao Rio.)

6. He wouldn't forget (Ele não esquecia só o livro.) just his book.

He'd forget everything. (Ele esquecia tudo.)

7. The holiday wouldn't (O feriado não caía na segunda.) fall on Monday.

It would fall on the (Caía no fim de semana.) weekend.

# Practice III (Recorded)

Now make sure you can say these. Notice how easily the words 'always' and 'never' fit into these situations.

 I always used to leave (Eu sempre saía cedo.) early.

My wife would never (Minha esposa nunca saía cedo.) leave early.

I used to always sleep (Eu sempre dormia até tarde.)

My son would never (O meu filho nunca dormia até sleep late. tarde.)

3. I would always forget. (Eu sempre esquecia.)

Yara would never for- (A Yara nunca esquecia.) get.

4. I would always drink (Eu sempre bebia Coca-cola.)
Coke.

Yara would never drink (A Yara nunca bebia Coca-cola.)
Coke.

5. I always used to receive (Eu sempre recebia uma carta.) a letter.

Yara would never (A Yara nunca recebia carta.) receive a letter.

6. I would always go (Eu sempre ia ao centro.)
downtown.

Yara would never go (A Yara nunca ia ao centro.) downtown.

I always used to do (Eu sempre fazia isso.)

Yara never used to do (A Yara nunca fazia isso.)

### Practice IV (Recorded)

Do this question and answer practice either with your teacher or with a fellow student. This type of practice is designed for you to take the English of one column and put it into Portuguese while your partner does the same thing with the other column. Each of you can easily check the translation of the other by referring to your own column. When finished, trade columns with your partner.

<u>A</u> B

1. Did you use to eat a lot? (Você comia muito?)
(Comia, sim.) Yes, I did.

2.	Did you use to go out with Yara?	(Você saía com Yara?)
	(Saía, sim.)	Yes, I did.
3.	Did you use to know Sandra? (Conhecia, sim.)	(Você conhecia a Sandra?) Yes, I did.
4.	Would you sleep till noon? (Dormia, sim.)	(Você dormia até o meio-dia?) Yes, I would.
5•	Would you read till midnight? (Lia, sim.)	(Você lia até a meia-noite?) Yes, I would.
6.	Would you take a drive? (Fazia, sim.)	(Você fazia um passeio?) Yes, I would.
7.	Would John forget? (Esquecia, sim.)	(O João esquecia?) Yes, he would.
8.	Would Barbara go on Varig? (Ia, sim.)	(A Bárbara ia pela Varig?) Yes, she would.
9•	Would Sonia drink coffee? (Bebia, sim.)	(A Sônia bebia café?) Yes, she would.
10.	Would it rain a lot? (Chovia, sim.)	(Chovia muito?) Yes, it would.
	for the we-form.	ne we-form. Here is the ending
	28. Here are several ex	amples of the we-form.
	a. ( ) ( )x	( )×
	b. ( ) ( )x	
	c. ( ) ( )x d. ( ) ( )x	( )x ( )x
		kamples in print. Repeat again.
	a. dormíamos (	)x ( )x
	b. repetíamos (	)x ( )x
	c. comíamos (	)× ( )×
	d. bebiamos (	)x ( )x

		So, how would you say 'we used to eat'?
(comíamos		
		Verify: ( )x
		How would you say 'we used to repeat'?
(repetiam	,	
		Verify: ( )x
		How would you say 'we used to receive'?
(recebiam	•	' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' '
		Verify: ( )x
		How about 'we used to know? (conhecer)
(conhecía		
		Verify: ( )x
	34.	And how about 'we used to leave'? $(\underline{sa-ir})$ .
(saíamos)		
		Verify: ( )x
	35.	How would you say 'we used to read'? $(1-er)$
(líamos)		
		Verify: ( )x
	36.	Now let's look at the they-form. Here is just the
		ending for the they-form. Do not repeat yet.
	27	( ) ( )
	31.	Here are several examples of the they-form. Do not
		repeat yet.
		a. ( ) ( ) b. ( ) ( ) c. ( ) ( )
		d. ( ) ( )
	<b>3</b> 8.	The ending for these forms is composed of the
	JO.	stressed vowel <u>i</u> plus the unstressed diphthong ão.
		Standard spelling doesn't show us everything that
		we would like it to show us, so with a view towards
		good pronunciation let us temporarily visualize
		this ending as follows:
		<u>1 + ão = 1ão</u>
		<u> </u>

39.	Repeat this sequence from the tape. $(i)x \qquad (i)x \qquad (i)x \qquad (i)x$
	Slowly: (í ão)x (í ão)x Normal: (íão)x (íão)x
40.	This is what the ending looks like in standard spelling. Repeat as you just did. $\frac{\text{iam}}{\text{im}} \text{ ( )} x \text{ ( )} x \text{ ( )} x$
41.	Now repeat the following they-forms from the tape.  a. ( )x ( )x  b. ( )x ( )x  c. ( )x ( )x  d. ( )x ( )x
42.	Here are the same four forms in print. Repeat again.  a. dormiam ( )x ( )x  b. repetiam ( )x ( )x  c. comiam ( )x ( )x  d. bebiam ( )x ( )x
43. (dormiam)	What is the form for 'they used to/would sleep'?
	Verify: ( )x
44. (comiam)	What is the form for 'they used to/would eat'?
	Verify: ( )x
45. (abriam)	What is the form for 'they used to/would open'?
	Verify: ( )x
46.	How about the form for 'they used to know'?  (Neutral form = saber)
(sabiam)	Verify: ( )x

```
How about the form for 'they used to do, or make'?
     47.
          (Neutral form = fazer)
(faziam)
               Verify:
                         (
                             )_{\mathbf{x}}
     48.
          How about 'they would write'?
          (Neutral form = escrever)
(escreviam)
               Verify:
                         (
                             \mathbf{x}
          And, finally, what is the form for 'they would leave'?
     49.
          (Neutral form = sair)
(saíam)
               Verify: (
                             )x
Practice V
             (Recorded)
     Learn how to say the following short sentences.
                                    (Eles dormiam muito.)
     1.
         They used to sleep
         a lot.
                                    (Eles dormiam até o meio-dia.)
         They would sleep until
         noon.
         They used to eat a lot.
                                    (Eles comiam muito.)
     2.
         They would eat all day.
                                    (Eles comiam o dia todo.)
     3.
         They used to go out a
                                    (Eles saiam muito.)
         lot.
         They would go out
                                    (Eles saíam juntos.)
         together.
     4.
                                    (Nós íamos à praia.)
         We used to go to the
         beach.
                                    (Nós íamos lá todos os dias.)
         We would go there
         every day.
     5.
         We used to get lots
                                    (Nós recebíamos muitas notícias
         of news about him.
                                    dele.)
                                    (Nós recebíamos notícias todos
         We would get news
                                    os dias.)
         every day.
     6.
         We used to drink lots
                                    (Nós bebíamos muito café.)
         of coffee.
         We would drink [it]
                                    (Nós bebíamos todos os dias.)
         every day.
```

Practice VI (Recorded)

Now learn how to say these sentences which utilize negatives and 'always' and 'never'.

 We used to go directly to New York.

We wouldn't go through (por) Philadelphia.

(Nós íamos diretamente a Nova York.)

(Nós não íamos por Filadélfia.)

We used to always read 'O Jornal'.

We would never read 'The Post'.

(Nós sempre líamos 'O Jornal'.)

(Nós nunca líamos 'The Post'.)

3. They would always go to the mountains.

They would never go to the beach.

(Eles sempre iam às montanhas.)

(Eles nunca iam à praia.)

4. They would always open late.

They would never open before ten.

(Eles sempre abriam tarde.)

(Eles nunca abriam antes das dez.)

5. They would always drink coffee.

They would not drink Coke.

(Eles sempre bebiam café.)

(Eles não bebiam Coca-cola.)

We always used to leave at noon.

We would never leave earlier. (Nós nunca saíamos mais cedo.)

(Nós sempre saíamos ao meio-dia.)

(Eles sempre comiam em casa.)

7. They would always eat at home.

They would never eat in a restaurant.

(Eles nunca comiam no restaurante.)

# Practice VII (Recorded)

Practice these questions and answers so that you can do them in class without reference to the printed Portuguese. In this practice 'you' = os senhores.

- 1. Did you use to sleep late?
   - Yes, we did.
- (Os senhores dormiam até tarde?)
  (Dormíamos, sim.)
- 2. Did you use to go out a lot?- No, we didn't.
- (Os senhores saíam huito?) (Não, não saíamos.)
- 3. Would you eat in the restaurant across the street?
- (Os senhores comiam no restaurante em frente?)
- - Yes, we would.

(Comíamos, sim.)

4. Would you go on Pan Am?- - No, we wouldn't.

(Os senhores iam pela Pan Am?) (Não, não íamos.)

5. Did you (use to) know his daughter?- - - Yes, we did.

(Os senhores conheciam a filha dele?)
(Conhecíamos, sim.)

6. Would you go to the movies?- - No, we wouldn't.

(Os senhores iam ao cinema?)
(Não, não íamos.)

7. Did you (use to) write
 lots of letters?
 - - Yes, we did.

(Os senhores escreviam muitas
cartas?)
(Escrevíamos, sim.)

22.13

#### DIALOG

In this unit we are presenting not <u>one dialog</u> but rather a series of two line exchanges, all of which start out pretty much the same way. You are to work them all in the usual way then pick any that may be applicable to you and make them a part of you. We hope that by this time you feel free to check with your instructor or perhaps a dictionary for limited, additional vocabulary that you need in order to adapt the materials we give you to your own personal circumstances.

### Exchange No. 1

### Professor

fazia

used to do

Eduardo

Edward

O que é que você fazia

What did you use to do, Eduardo?

antes, Eduardo?

### <u>Eduardo</u>

a empresa

company, firm

private

particular

I used to work for a private

company.

vendia

used to sell

(neutral form = vender)

Eu trabalhava para uma

empresa particular.

insurance

os seguros

I sold (used to sell)

insurance.

Eu vendia seguros.

Exchange No. 2

Professor

O que é que você fazia lá em

What did you use to do there

Buffalo, Marcos?

in Buffalo, Mark?

Marcos

local

local

Eu escrevia para um jornal

I\_used to write for a local

<u>local</u>. <u>newspaper</u>.

Exchange No. 3

Professor

O que é que a senhora fazia em Minnesota, dona Lúcia?

What did you use to do in

Minnesota, Miss Barnes?

Dona Lúcia

eral

was, used to be

used to teach

ensinava

(neutral form = ensinar)

a história

history

Eu era professora. Eu ensinava

I used to be a teacher.

I taught history.

Exchange No. 4

história.

Professor

Ricardo

Richard

a Alemanha

Germany

O que é que você fazia na

What did you use to do in

Alemanha, Ricardo?

Germany, Dick?

Era is the 'used to/would' form for ser. Its shape is irregular. Often the most convenient English equivalent is simply 'was'.

Ricardo

o funcionário

consular

officer

consular

Eu era funcionário da Seção

Consular.

I was an officer in the

Consular Section.

Exchange No. 5

Professor

o departamento

department

O que é que você fazia no
Departamento de Estado, Ângela?

What did you do (used to do)

in the State Department, Angela?

Ângela

a secretária

. Decreeding

(neutral form = bater)

a máquina

batia

used to beat (type)

secretary

machine (typewriter)

Eu era secretária. Eu batia

<u>cartas à máquina o dia todo.</u>

I was a secretary. I'd type

letters all day long.

Exchange No. 6

Professor

O que é que vocês faziam nos

fins de semana, Inês?

What would you do on weekends,

Inez?

Inês

às vezes

VC2C.

at times

fora out (side)

<u>Nós íamos à praia e às vezes</u>

at times we'd eat out.

We would go to the beach and

comíamos fora.

### EXPANSION EXERCISES

### Common Names

First, review the following common names, all of which have already appeared in this book. Repeat aloud as you follow along with the tape.

<u>Male</u>
Paulo
José
Roberto
João
Jorge
Geraldo
Eduardo
Marcos
Ricardo
Luís
Carlos

Female
Yara
Maria
Sandra
Sônia
Bárbara
Luísa
Lúcia
Ângela
Inês
Glória
Ana

# Expansion Exercise 1 (Recorded)

Here are several more common names that you will run across sooner or later. Since these are new, they are recorded twice each. Repeat aloud.

<u>Male</u>
Sérgio
Antônio
Gustavo
Cláudio
Henrique
Alberto
Emílio
Mário
Fernando
Sebastião

Female
Tânia
Vânia
Carmen
Lourdes
Margarida
Regina
Cláudia
Beatriz

Raquel, Rachel

Denise

Francisco Alice
Jaime Marli
Ernesto Rosa
Júlio Vera
Leonardo Cristina
Afonso Helena

# Expansion Exercise 2 (Recorded)

Many times given names appear in pairs. Repeat the following common combinations.

Female Male Luís Sérgio Ana Maria Maria Lúcia Afonso Henrique Ana Helena João Carlos Francisco José Regina Lúcia Vera Maria Carlos Fernando Teresa Cristina Luís Antônio Maria Helena José Luís Maria Luísa Antônio Jorge Maria Teresa José Carlos

# Expansion Exercise 3 (Recorded)

Here are some opportunities to use some additional forms of the verb  $\underline{\text{vender}}$ . Practice saying these short sentences until you can translate them easily from the English.

I. A. O senhor vai vender Are you going to sell your car? o seu carro?

B. Eu já vendi. I already sold it.

A. Quando o senhor vendeu? When did you sell it?

B. Vendi ontem. I sold it yesterday.

II. A. Nós já vendemos a casa. We already sold our house.

B. Quando é que os When did you sell it?

senhores venderam?

A. Vendemos segunda-feira. We sold it Monday.

III. A. Luís vendia seguros.

B. Júlio vendia carros.

C. E eu, quando era menino, vendia jornais.

Luís used to sell insurance.
Júlio used to sell cars.
And I, when I was a lad, used
to sell newspapers.

### Translations

Be prepared to do this practice with another student or with your teacher. Each of you should take a column for your own and work within that column. As you transpose the English of your column into Portuguese you can also be checking the Portuguese responses being given by your partner.

1. What did you [use to] do
 in London?

(Eu era funcionário da Seção Consular.)

2. (O que é que o senhor fazia na Embaixada?)

I worked in the Political Section.

3. What did you [use to] do in Florida?

(Eu ia à praia todos os dias.)

4. (O que é que a senhora fazia em Buffalo?)

I was a teacher. I taught.

(O que é que o senhor fazia em Londres?)

I was an officer in the Consular Section.

What did you [use to] do in the Embassy?

(Eu trabalhava na Seção Política.)

(O que é que a senhora fazia na Flórida?)

I'd go to the beach everyday.

What did you [use to] do in Buffalo?

(Eu era professora. Eu ensinava.)

5. What did you [use to] do in the office?

> (Eu fazia de tudo. Trabalhava o dia todo.)

(O que é que o senhor fazia no escritório?)

I would do everything. I'd work all day.

6. (O que é que o senhor fazia nos fins de semana?) I wouldn't do anything. I'd rest.

What did you [use to] do on weekends?

(Eu não fazia nada. descansava.)

7. Mario was an Embassy official.

> (O que é que ele fazia?) He worked [used to] in the

(O Mário era funcionário da Embaixada.)

What did he do?

(Trabalhava na Seção Política.)

8. (O senhor Watson era professor.)

Political Section.

Where did he [use to] teach?

(Ensinava em Cornell.)

Mr. Watson used to be a teacher.

(Onde ele ensinava?)

He taught at Cornell.

9. Marcos was a teacher. (O que é que ele ensinava?)

He taught history.

(O Marcos era professor.) What did he [use to] teach? (Ele ensinava história.)

Alice was a secretary. 10. (O que é que ela fazia?) She'd type all day.

(Alice era secretária.) What did she do? (Ela batia à máquina o dia todo.) 11. (Raquel era secretária.
 Ela trabalhava na Seção
 Consular.)
 Did she [customarily]

Did she [customarily]
speak Spanish?

(Falava, sim.)

12. Tania used to be a
 secretary too. She worked
 in Brazil.

(Ela gostava?)

Yes, she did.

13. (Eu era professor. Eu
ensinava em Denver.)
Did you like it?
(Não, não gostava.)

14. I used to work for a private company.(O que é que você fazia?)I was the president.

15. He used to be good.
(E ele ainda é, viu?)

16. (Ele era solteiro.)
And he still is!

17. His English used to be terrible.

(E ainda é, viu?)

Raquel was a secretary. She used to work in the Consular Section.

(Ela falava espanhol?)

Yes, she did.

(Tânia era secretária também. Ela trabalhava no Brasil.)

Did she [use to] like it? (Gostava, sim.)

I used to be a teacher.
I taught in Denver.
(Você gostava?)

No, I didn't.

(Eu trabalhava para uma empresa particular.)

What did you [use to] do?
(Eu era o presidente.)

(Ele era bom.)
And he still is!

He was a bachelor.
(E ele ainda é, viu?)

(O inglês dele era péssimo.)

And it still is!

18. (O português dela era Her Portuguese was great. ótimo.) (E ainda é, viu?) And it still is! 19. Sergio was a sleepyhead. (Sérgio era dorminhoco.) (E ele ainda é, viu?) And he still is! 20. (Alberto era casado.) Albert was married. (E ainda é, viu?)

And he still is!

# **UNIT** 23

1.	In the last unit where we were	cont	inuing	, our	presentation
	of the 'used to/would forms, ye	ou lea	arned	the	irregular
	form <u>era</u> . We noted at that time	me tha	at thi	ls fo	orm is
	commonly translated as 'was'.	Repea	at the	ese e	examples.
	Ele era americano.	(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	) <b>x</b>
	Eu era solteiro.	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>
	Ela era casada.	(	)x	(	)x
2.	The form <u>era</u> is both the I-form	m and	the h	ne-fo	orm.
	Eu era professor.	(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	$\rangle \mathbf{x}$
	Ele era funcionário.	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>
3.	Here is the we-form. (Transla	tion:	'use	ed to	be', or
	'were')				
	<u>éramos</u>	(	)x	(	)x
4.	Here it is preceded by the pro-	noun <u>ı</u>	nós.		
	nós <u>éramos</u>	(	)x	(	)×
5.	So, this is the way you would	say 'V	we wer	e si	ngle'.
	Nós éramos solteiros.	(	) x	(	)x
6.	And this is the way you would	say 'V	ve wer	e of	ficers'.
	Nós éramos funcionários.	(	)x	(	)x
7.	How would you say 'We were sec:	retar	ies'?		
(Nós ér	amos secretárias)				
	Verify: $( )x ( )x$				
8.	And how would you say 'We were	Amer	icans'	?	
(Nós ér	amos american <b>o</b> s)				
	Verify: ( )x ( )x				

<pre>9. Now, here is the they-form.     or 'were')</pre>	(Tr	ansla	ation	: '	used to	o be',
<u>eram</u>	(	)×	(	)×		
10. Here it is preceded by sever	al a	approp	riat	e pr	onouns	•
<u>eles</u> <u>eram</u>	(	$)\mathbf{x}$	(	)x		
elas eram	(	)x	(	)x		
vocês eram	(	)x	(	)x		
os senhores eram	(	)x	(	)x		
11. So, this is the way you migh	t sa	ay 'Th	ney w	ere	single	٠.
Eles eram solteiros.	(	)×	(	) x		
12. And this is the way you migh	t sa	ay 'Th	ney w	ere	great'	
Eles eram ótimos.	(	) <b>x</b>	(	) <b>x</b>		
13. How would you say 'They were	: Ame	ericar	ıs'?			
(Eles eram americanos)						
Verify: ( )x (	)x					
14. How would you say 'They were	Bra	azilia	ans'?	,		
(Eles eram brasileiros)						
Verify: ( )x (	)x					
15. And how would you say 'They	wei	re fro	om Ri	.01?		
(Eles eram do Rio)						
Verify: ( )x (	)x					
16. This is a good time to intr						
the form which corresponds			to h	ave '	, or '	would
have'. (The neutral form i						
$\underline{\mathtt{tinha}}$ ( )x ( )	x	(	) <b>x</b>			

17.	This form is both the 1-form and the he-form, Repeat.
	$\underline{eu} \underline{tinha}$ ( )x ( )x
	$\underline{ele}\ \underline{tinha}\qquad ( )\mathbf{x}\qquad ( )\mathbf{x}$
	$\underline{\text{você}} \ \underline{\text{tinha}} \qquad ( ) x \qquad ( ) x$
	<u>José tinha</u> ( )x ( )x
18.	Notice the contrast between the present tense form,
	'I have', and this new form, 'I used to have'.
	a. <u>eu tenho</u> ( )x ( )x
	b. eu tinha ( )x ( )x
19.	This is the way you would say 'I used to have
	*[a] Chevrolet'.
	Eu tinha Chevrolet. ( )x ( )x
20.	And this is the way you would say 'She used to have
	*[a] Ford'.
	Ela tinha Ford. ( )x ( )x
21.	How would you say 'She used to have [a] house'?
(Ela tin	
(	Verify: ( )x ( )x
22	How would you say 'You used to have [an] accent'?
	nha sotaque)
(VOCE CI.	Verify: ( )x ( )x
_	
23.	How would you say 'I used to have two cars'?
(Eu tinh	a dois carros)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
24.	Now, what do you suppose is the we-form of this verb?
	Venture a guess, then check the tape to see if you are
	right.
	( )x  ( )x  ( )x
	You were right, right?
*Under s	ome circumstances it is normal to use the indefinite artic

\*Under some circumstances it is normal to use the indefinite article and say <u>Eu tinha um Chevrolet (Ford</u>). Do not be concerned right now about the presence or absence of the article.

25.	Here is the we-form preceded by the pronoun nos.
	$\underline{nós}\ \underline{tinhamos} \qquad \qquad (\qquad) \mathbf{x} \qquad (\qquad) \mathbf{x}$
26.	So, then, this is the way you will say 'We used to have two cars'.
	Nós tínhamos dois carros. ( )x ( )x
27.	And here is the way you will say 'We used to have a
	good view'.
	Nós tínhamos uma vista boa. ( )x ( )x
28.	How would you say 'We used to have a marvelous view'?
	hamos uma vista maravilhosa)
`	Verify: ( )x ( )x
	2
29.	Remember that the Portuguese equivalent of 'to be right
	is 'to have reason'. So, how would you say 'We were
	always right', i.e. 'We always had reason'?
(Nós sem	pre tínhamos razão)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
30.	How would you say 'We were always sure'? Literally,
	'We always had certainty.'
(Nós sem	pre tinhamos certeza)
•	Verify: ( )x ( )x
	- · · · · · · · ·
31.	What do you suppose is the they-form? Venture a guess,
	then check the tape for verification.
	( )x  ( )x  ( )x
	You were right again, weren't you?
32.	Here is the they-form preceded by two pronouns.
	$\underline{\texttt{eles}}\ \underline{\texttt{tinham}}\ \ (\ \ )\mathbf{x}\ \ (\ \ )\mathbf{x}$
	elas tinham ( )x ( )x

33.	So, this is the way you will say 'They used to have [a] Ford'.
	Eles tinham Ford. ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
34.	to be right.' (be right = have reason)
	Eles sempre tinham razão. ( )x ( )x
35.	How would you say 'They always used to be sure'? (be sure = <a href="have">have</a> certainty)
(Eles semp	pre tinham certeza)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
36.	And how would you say 'They used to have two houses'?
(Eles tinh	nam duas casas)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
37.	Now let's go back several units to look at one of the
	forms that is regular in its shape, the form <a href="estava">estava</a> .
	Do you remember it in this phrase?
	Eu estava com tanta pressa 'I was in such a
	hurry'
38.	Repeat:
	Eu estava com tanta pressa ( )x ( )x
39.	The form <pre>estava</pre> is from the infinitive <pre>estar</pre> 'to be'.
	Like $\underline{\text{era}}$ , which comes from the infinitive $\underline{\text{ser}}$ , $\underline{\text{estava}}$
	also translates as 'used to be', or, frequently, 'was'.
40.	Repeat the following phrases from the tape.
	1. I was hungry. ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	2. I was sleepy. ( ) $\mathbf{x}$ ( ) $\mathbf{x}$
	3. I was tired. ( )x ( )x

41.	Estava is also the he-form. Repeat these phrases
	from the tape.
	1. He was hungry. ( )x ( )x
	2. He was sleepy. ( ) $\mathbf{x}$ ( ) $\mathbf{x}$
	3. He was tired. ( )x ( )x
42.	Can you guess what the 'we-form' is? Try it, then
	check the tape for confirmation.
	( )   ( )
43.	This is what it looks like: estávamos. Be sure to
	stress it on the right syllable.
	( )x ( )x
44.	Now repeat these phrases.
	1. We were hungry. ( )x ( )x
	2. We were sleepy. ( )x ( )x
	3. We were tired. ( )x ( )x
45.	You should be able to guess what the they-form is.
	Try it, then verify with the tape.
	( )   ( )
46.	This is what it looks like: <a href="mailto:estavam">estavam</a> . Repeat these
	phrases.
	1. They were hungry. ( )x ( )x
	2. They were sleepy. ( )x ( )x
	3. They were tired. ( )x ( )x

# Comment

We must point out that in all of the above examples involving 'hungry', 'tired', and 'sleepy' we are not necessarily dealing with <u>recurring</u> situations. We might simply be describing how somebody felt <u>yesterday</u>, for example, or <u>at the concert last</u>

night, or when he got up this morning, with no thought whatsoever as to whether or not such feelings were of a recurrent nature. Hence in these cases we are not forced to think in terms of 'used to' or 'would' as we have had to do heretofore with most verbs in their ava (and ia) forms. Instead we can think in terms of 'past description', i.e. the description of conditions and circumstances that existed at some time in the past.

The concept of 'past description' offers another useful approach to all the verb forms we have been working with in the last several units. The term suggests another way of looking at and interpreting the range of meaning that these forms encompass. With some verbs, because of their very nature, it is quite easy to think of 'past description'. This is particularly true of ser, estar and ter, as we have just seen. With other verbs the association may not always be quite so easy to make.

# Practice 1. (Recorded)

Thinking in terms of 'past description', how would you say these brief thoughts in Portuguese? Practice these until you can say them easily.

## Group I

- 1. I was awake.
- I was tired.
- 3. I was sleepy.
- 4. He was in a hurry.
- 5. He was hungry.
- 6. I had a cold. (estava resfriado)
- 7. The traffic was terrible.

### Group II

- 1. I had [an] English accent.
- She had [a] Portuguese accent.
- I had [a] Ford.
- 4. She had [a] Chevrolet.

- 5. We were sure (had certainty).
- 6. They were right (had reason).
- 7. We had two.
- 8. They had three.

# Group III (Omit items in brackets.)

- 1. I was [an] officer.
- 2. She was [a] teacher.
- 3. We were Americans.
- 4. They were Brazilians.
- 5. She was [a] secretary.
- 6. She was single.
- 7. He was the president.
- 8. He was married.
- 9. They were from New York.
- 10. We were from Pennsylvania.

### Comment

The instances of 'past description' just given involve states of being or identification of some sort; the verbs are <u>not</u> verbs of action. The concept of 'past description' can also be applied to <u>action</u> verbs. Many of the action verbs of the past two units that we have translated as 'would/used to' offer past description. When we say, for example, that 'Roberto would/used to get up late' we are describing one aspect of Roberto's life in the past. Pay attention to how this operates in the next several practices.

# Practice 2. (Recorded)

Learn to give this 'past description' of Bill. Do not translate items in brackets.

- 1. Bill was [an] American.
- 2. He was an officer in the State Department.
- 3. He spoke Portuguese well.
- 4. He had a lot of chance to practice.
- 5. Why? Because he lived and worked in Rio.

Practice 3. (Recorded)

Now learn to give this 'past description' of Yara.
<ol> <li>Yara was [a] Brazilian.</li> </ol>
2. She was from São Paulo.
3. She spoke English well.
4. She spoke [it] without [an] accent.
5. She worked in Rio.
6. She travelled (would travel) a lot.
7. She spent (would spend) weekends at home.
8. She went (would go) to the beach.
9. She liked her work (work = <u>o trabalho</u> ).
(We continue now with our programming.)
47. This is the way you say 'I am planning to return'. Eu pretendo voltar ( )x ( )x
48. If you wish to say 'I was planning to return', thus describing your thoughts and desires at some time in the past ('past description'), you would use the form <a href="mailto:pretendia">pretendia</a> . <u>Eu pretendia voltar</u> ( )x ( )x
49. How would you say 'I was planning to sleep'? (Eu pretendia dormir) Verify: ( )x ( )x
50. How would you say 'He was planning to read'?  (Ele pretendia ler)  Verify: ( )x ( )x
51. How would you say 'She was planning to send'?  (Ela pretendia mandar)  Verify: ( )x ( )x

	52.	What	is	the	form	for	' <u>We</u>	were planning'?
(Nós	prete	endía	mos)	)				
			Ver	ify:	(	)x	(	)×
	-0					_	-	
, .				ls	the	iorm	ior	'They were planning'?
(Eles	s pre				,		,	
			Veri	Lfy:	(	) <b>x</b>	(	)×
	54.	So,	how	wou	ld yo	u say	y 'Tì	ney were planning to stay'?
(Eles	s pre	tendi	am f	ficar	r)			
			Ver:	ify:	(	)x	(	) x
	55	Δnd	how	70 v	zon s	av 'ī	We we	ere planning to leave'?
(NÁS	pret					ω <sub>γ</sub> ,	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	pruming to reave .
(NOS	prec				(	١~	1	١٠
			VCI.	rry.	(	) <b>^</b>	(	) *
	56.	We c	an j	perfo	orm s	imila	ar o	perations with forms of the
		verb	'wa	ant',	. We	can	beq:	in with the sentence 'I want
		to t					_	
			Eu c	quer	o lev	ar	(	)x ( )x
							•	,
	57.	Let'	s cl	nange	e the	end	ing :	in order to say 'I wanted to
		take	e', t	whicl	h is,	you	wil:	l agree, a kind of description
								es at some time in the past.
								)x ( )x
	-0							
/_							wan	ted to spend a week'?
(Eu c	queri	a pas				,	,	
			Ver:	ify:	(	) <b>x</b>	(	)×
	59•	Foll	owi	ng tl	he sa	me p	atte:	rn, say the following:
			a.	I w	anted	to	work	, ( )x
			b.	I w	anted	to	stop	, ( )x
			c.	He v	wante	d to	dri	/e. ( )x
			d.	<u>не</u> ч	wante	d to	res	t. ( )x
			e.	She	want	ed t	o ch	ange the subject. ( $){f x}$

23.10

60. What are the we-form and the they-form of 'wanted'? (nós queríamos)	
(eles queriam)	
Verify: ( )x ( )x Verify: ( )x ( )x	
61. So, this is the way you would say 'We wanted to stay'.  Nós queríamos ficar. ( )x ( )x	
62. And this is the way you would say 'They wanted to leave Eles queriam sair. ( )x ( )x	•
63. Continuing in the same vein, say the following:  a. They wanted to begin. ( )x  b. We wanted to begin. ( )x  c. We wanted to buy. ( )x  d. We wanted to sell. ( )x  e. They wanted to eat lunch. ( )x  f. They wanted to forget. ( )x	
64. We can perform similar operations with forms of the verb 'go'. We can begin with 'I am going to study'. <u>Eu vou estudar</u> . ( )x ( )x	
65. Let's put that sentence in the past and say 'I was going to study'. You already know the form ia.  Eu ia estudar. ( )x ( )x  66. How would you say 'I was going to send'?	
(Eu ia mandar)	
Verify: ( )x ( )x	
67. How would you say 'He was going to send'? (Ele ia mandar)  Verify: ( )x ( )x	
68. Do you recall the appropriate we-form? (iamos)	
Verify: ( )x ( )x	

(Nós		So how would you say 'We were going to stay'? Use <u>nós</u> . ficar)
(iam)		Verify: ( )x ( )x What is the corresponding they-form?
,		Verify: $( )x ( )x$
(Eles	71.	How do you say 'They were going to stay'? Use <u>eles</u> .  ficar)  Verify: ( )x ( )x
	72.	Continuing, say the following in Portuguese.  a. They were going to sell.  b. They were going to rest.  c. We were going to rest.  d. We were going to eat.  e. I was going to write.  f. He was going to prepare.  g. I was going to drive.  h. She was going to begin.
	73.	We can perform similar operations with the verb 'have'.  Remember the present tense construction 'I have to study': Eu tenho que estudar. This kind of construction obviously describes present circumstances; it describes what I feel obligated to do now.  Eu tenho que estudar ( )x ( )x
	74.	If I wish to describe what I felt obligated to do at some time in the past, I will use the form tinha 'I had' This is past description: it describes a certain set of circumstances (i.e. my feelings of obligation) that existed for me at some time in the past. Thus if I want to say 'I had to study', I will say it like this. <u>Eu tinha que estudar</u> ( )x ( )x

,		How would you say 'I had to work'?
(Eu 1	inha	que trabalhar)
		Verify: $( )x ( )x$
	76.	How about 'He had to work'?
(Ele		a que trabalhar)
(220		Verify: ( )x ( )x
	77.	Continuing, how would you say the following?
		a. He had to practice. ( )x
		b. He had to write. ( )x
		c. We had to speak. ( )x
		d. We had to sell. ( ) $x$
		e. They had to read. ( )x
		f. They had to prepare. ( )x
	78.	Another verb that is frequently used in the context
	10.	of past description is <u>sabia</u> 'knew'.
		sabia ( )x ( )x
		Sabia ( )x ( )x
	79.	If I say <u>Eu sabia a lição</u> 'I knew the lesson'
		I am describing a certain state of affairs that
		existed in the past.
		<u>Eu sabia a lição</u> . ( )x ( )x
	80.	What is the we-form?
(ash	íamos	
(sab.	Lanos	Verify: ( )x ( )x
		verity: ( )x ( )x
	81.	Using the pronoun nós, how would you say 'We knew the
		lesson'?
(Nós	sabía	amos a lição)
		Verify: ( )x ( )x
	82	Using the pronoun <u>eles</u> , how would you say 'They knew
	J. •	the lesson'?
/ E1 a	, a.h.	
(Ете:	s sabi	iam a lição)
		Verify: ( )x ( )x

PORTUGUESE 553

83.	It is very common to find sabia followed by que plus
	another verb which also gives past description. For
	example: 'I knew that José was Brazilian'.
	<u>Eu sabia que o José era brasileiro</u> . ( )x ( )x
84.	Another example: 'I knew that José spoke Portuguese.'
	<pre>Eu sabia que o José falava português. ( )x ( )x</pre>
85.	A further comment about José: 'I knew that José
	sold insurance'.
	<u>Eu sabia que o José vendia seguros</u> . ( )x ( )x
86.	And a final comment about the activities of our friend,
	Joe: 'I didn't know that José slept so much'.
	Eu não sabia que o José dormia tanto. ( )x ( )x
87.	Poor Joe! Still the sleepyhead! Soon to the
	dialog.

### Dialogs/Exchanges

Exchange No. 1

o sapato reparou

shoe

(vou) noticed

Você reparou o sapato que ele usava?

Did you notice the shoes he Α. was wearing?

В. Reparei, sim.

Yes, I did. В.

Exchange No. 2

o terno

suit

Por que é que o senhor não comprou o terno?

custava

suficiente

o dinheiro

A. Why didn't you buy the suit?

(it) cost

enough

money

tinha dinheiro suficiente.

B. Custava muito caro. Eu não B. It cost a lot. I didn't have enough money.

Exchange No. 3

procurou

o emprego

(he) looked for

dor

A. Por que é que ele procurou outro emprego?

Why did he look for another Α. job?

В. Porque ele não gostava do que tinha.

Because he didn't like the В. one he had.

Exchange No. 4

se perdeu

(he) got lost

Por que é que ele se perdeu? A. Α.

Porque ele não conhecia B.

bem a cidade.

Why did he get lost?

Because he didn't know the В. city well.

true (truth)

É verdade? Que pena! A. Α.

verdade

Is that right? What a shame!

# Expansion Exercises (Recorded)

I. The verb reparar 'to notice'

Practice these sentences aloud. Be sure you know what they mean.

- 1. O senhor reparou o sapato?
- 2. O senhor reparou o sotaque dela?
- 3. O senhor reparou que ele estava cansado?
- 4. O senhor reparou que ele não sabia?
- 5. O senhor reparou que ele não queria?
- Eu não reparei.
- 7. Eu não reparei isso.
- 8. Eu não reparei a Alice.
- 9. Eu não reparei que ela estava cansada.
- 10. Eu não reparei que você queria falar comigo.

## II. The verb procurar 'to look for'

Practice these sentences with the tape. Be sure you know what they mean.

- 1. Eu vou procurar outro emprego.
- 2. Eu vou procurar mais dinheiro.
- 3. Eu já procurei outro carro.
- 4. Ela já procurou casa.
- 5. Ele já procurou outra secretária.
- 6. Sérgio vai procurar a dona Regina.
- 7. Antônio procurava a dona Vera.
- 8. Eles procuravam outro presidente.
- 9. Nós estamos procurando a Seção Consular.
- 10. Eles estão procurando a Embaixada Francesa.
- 11. Ele está procurando outro sapato.
- 12. Eu estou procurando a minha secretária.

- III. The verb <u>perder-se</u> 'to get lost'
  Likewise, practice these with the tape and be sure you know what they mean.
  - 1. Eu me perdi.
  - 2. Ele se perdeu também.
  - 3. Você se perdeu também?
  - 4. Como é que você se perdeu?
  - 5. Ela nunca se perde.
  - IV. A. Remember the verb  $\underline{d\acute{a}}$ ? Notice how nicely it fits with  $\underline{dinheiro}$  in these sentences. Follow along with the tape. If you need to, check the English in B below.
    - 1. O dinheiro dá?
    - 2. O dinheiro dá para comprar dois?
    - 3. O dinheiro dá para ir à praia?
    - 4. O dinheiro dá para todos?
    - 5. O dinheiro dá para comer num restaurante?
    - 6. O dinheiro dá para ficar mais um dia?
    - 7. O dinheiro dá para ir e voltar?
    - B. Now, try putting these back into Portuguese.
      - 1. Is there enough money?
      - 2. Is there enough money to buy two?
      - 3. Is there enough money to go to the beach?
      - 4. Is there enough money for all?
      - 5. Is there enough money to eat in a restaurant?
      - 6. Is there enough money to stay one more day?
      - 7. Is there enough money to go and return? (make a round trip)
    - C. Practice repeating both roles in these exchanges.
      - O dinheiro dá?
         Dá. Não custa nada.
      - O dinheiro dá?
         Dá, sim. Custa muito pouco.

PORTUGUESE 557

- O dinheiro dá?
   Dá, sim. Custa um dólar só.
- 4. O dinheiro dá? Não, não dá. Custa muito caro. Que pena!
- 5. O dinheiro dá?
  Eu acho que dá.
- V. More practice with <u>ava</u> and <u>ia</u> forms. (Recorded) Note well the <u>ia</u> and <u>ava</u> forms in these sentences. Practice along with the tape.
  - 1. O senhor sabia que ele era solteiro?
  - 2. O senhor sabia que ele estava em Washington?
  - 3. O senhor sabia que ele ia ao cinema?
  - 4. O senhor sabia que ele ficava até tarde?
  - 5. O senhor sabia que ele falava Chinês?
  - 6. O senhor sabia que ele comia tanto?
  - 7. O senhor sabia que ele não se sentia bem?
  - 8. O senhor sabia que ele morava no Leme?
  - 9. O senhor sabia que ele trabalhava na seção política?
  - 10. O senhor sabia que ele não conhecia a cidade?
  - 11. Eu não sabia que você tinha tanto dinheiro.
  - 12. Eu não sabia que você era secretária.
  - 13. Eu não sabia que você estava com pressa.
  - 14. Eu não sabia que você estudava tanto!
  - 15. Eu não sabia que você pretendia ficar.
  - 16. Eu não sabia que você pretendia acordar cedo.
  - 17. Eu não sabia que você ia almoçar aqui.
  - 18. Eu não sabia que você ia morar em Copacabana.
  - 19. Eu não sabia que você tinha que fazer isso.
  - 20. Eu não sabia que você tinha que trabalhar amanhã.
  - 21. Eu não sabia que você queria ler.
  - 22. Eu não sabia que você queria ir comigo.
  - 23. Eu não sabia que você queria levar sanduíches.
  - 24. Eu não sabia que você falava francês.
  - 25. Eu não sabia que você podia sair cedo.

### VI. More Names (Recorded)

#### A. First Names

Practice these familiar looking first names which seem to be borrowed from English.

Milton

Édson

Gibson

Nélson

Wilson

#### B. Family Names

Here are just a few of the more common family names. We are limiting ourselves to one-syllable and two-syllable names. The longer ones will appear in the next unit.

### 1. Two-syllable names

Practice these with the tape.

Santos	Lopes	Silva	Prado
Campos	Gomes	Lima	Mello
Bastos	Fontes	Gama	Castro
Barros	Mendes	Costa	Lobo
Ramos	Neves	Rocha	
Mattos	Alves	Prata	
	Chaves	Cunha	
	Nunes	Braga	
	Marques	Fraga	
	Borges		

#### With Diphthongs

Moura Leite
Souto Freire
Sousa\* Freitas
Eiras
Queirós

<sup>\*</sup>This is the same name as that of the American bandmaster and composer John Philip Sousa, whose father was Portuguese. If you didn't recognize the name when you first heard it, it's because you are used to hearing it pronounced differently in English.

### With Nasal Diphthongs

Galvão

Leitão

Simão

Simões

### 2. One-syllable names

There are not many of these. Practice them with the tape.

Cruz

Reis (diphthong)

Vaz

# Translations (Recorded)

- I. Practice both roles in these exchanges. There is space on the tape for repetition after each sentence. The English equivalents appear in II below.
  - Por que é que você não comeu mais?
     Eu não estava com fome.
  - Por que é que você não deitou cedo?
     Eu não estava com sono.
  - 3. Por que é que você não estudou ontem à noite? Eu não tinha o livro.
  - 4. Por que é que você não foi lá ontem? Eu estava sem carro.
  - 5. Por que é que você não foi ao cinema? Porque eu estava sem dinheiro.
  - 6. Por que é que você não procurou outro emprego? Eu gostava do que eu tinha.
  - 7. Por que é que você não falou com Dona Tânia? Porque eu estava atrasado. ('late')
  - 8. Por que é que você não foi ao Rio? Ficava caro.
  - 9. Por que é que você não estudou a outra lição também? Era difícil.

- II. Now, practice putting these back into Portuguese. Check the tape or I above for confirmation.
  - 1. Why didn't you eat more?
     I wasn't hungry.
  - Why didn't you go to bed early? I wasn't sleepy.
  - 3. Why didn't you study last night? I didn't have my (the) book.
  - 4. Why didn't you go there yesterday?
    I didn't have my car. (Use <u>estar</u> sem)
  - 5. Why didn't you go to the movies?
    Because I didn't have the money. (Use estar sem)
  - 6. Why didn't you look for another job? I liked the one I had.
  - 7. Why didn't you talk to dona Tânia? Because I was late.
  - 8. Why didn't you go to Rio? It was expensive. (Use ficar.)
  - 9. Why didn't you study the other lesson too? It was difficult.
- III. Practice both roles in these exchanges.
  - Ele procurou outro emprego?
     Procurou. Ele não gostava do que tinha.
  - 2. Ele chegou atrasado? Chegou. Antes tarde do que nunca, não é?\*
  - 3. Você reparou o terno dele? Reparei. Era bonito, não era?
  - 4. Você ficou em casa? Fiquei. Eu estava cansado.
  - Você comprou o Chevrolet?
     Não, não comprei. Custava muito caro.
  - Você comprou o livro?
     Não, não comprei. Eu já tinha.

<sup>\*</sup>Better late than never.

- 7. Você reparou como a Vera estava bonita? Reparei, sim.
- 8. Você se perdeu?

  Me perdi. Eu não conhecia a cidade.
- 9. Você chegou atrasado? Chequei. Eu não sabia que horas eram.
- IV. Now, put these back into Portuguese. Check with III in case of doubt.
  - 1. Did he look for another job?
     He did. He didn't like the one he had.
  - 2. Did he get here late? He did. Better late than never, right?
  - 3. Did you notice his suit?
    I did. It looked nice, didn't it?
  - 4. Did you stay home? I did. I was tired.
  - 5. Did you buy the Chevrolet?
    No, I didn't. It cost too much.
  - 6. Did you buy the book?
    No, I didn't. I already had [it].
  - 7. Did you notice how pretty Vera was?
    Yes, I did.
  - 8. Did you get lost? Yes, I did. I didn't know the city.
  - 9. Did you get here late?
    Yes, I did. I didn't know what time it was.
  - V. Practice these very brief 'give and takes' with your teacher.

    The more expressive you are with these, the more fun they

    are.
    - 1. É verdade?
      Claro.
      Nossa!

- 2. É verdade?
   Não, não é.
   Que bom!
- 3. É verdade?
  É, sim.
  Que pena!
- 4. É verdade? É, sim. Ah, é?
- 5. É verdade? É, sim. Não pode ser! Mas é! Nossa!
- 6. É verdade?
   É mesmo!
   Opa!\*

<sup>\*</sup>Another one of those untranslatable Brazilian gems. This one shows surprise.

# Unit 24

-		_
D2	rt	

1.	In past units you have practiced a number of words whose singular forms end in stressed $-\underline{el}$ (open $\underline{E}$ ).
	a. papel ( )x ( )x b. pastel ( )x ( )x
	c. hotel ( )x ( )x
2.	In this unit you will practice several words in which the -el ending is unstressed. You already know one of these words.
	horrivel ( )x ( )x
3.	Notice that you hear the stress on the $\underline{i}$ , not the final $-\underline{el}$ . According to the conventions of spelling the stress is indeed written over the $\underline{i}$ .
	horrivel ( )x ( )x
4.	The $\underline{e}$ of $\underline{el}$ is unstressed and closed. Repeat again.
	horrivel ( )x ( )x
5•	Here is a new word. Can you guess what it means?
(pc	( ) ( ) pssible)
6.	Here it is again. This time repeat.
	<pre>possivel ( )x ( )x</pre>
7. (£	How would you say 'It is possible'? possivel)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
	24.1

8.	meaning too.
	( ) ( )
(im	possible)
9•	Now repeat.  impossivel ( )x ( )x ( )x
10.	So, how would you say 'It is impossible'?
(É i	mpossível)
	Verify: $( )x ( )x$
11.	Here is another word which you can also <u>probably</u> guess at.
	( ) ( )
(pro	bable)
12.	Now, listen again and repeat.
	provável ( )x ( )x
13.	Be sure to get the stress on the right syllable, that is,
	on the middle one.
	( )x ( )x ( )x
14.	So how would you say 'It's probable'?
(É p	rovável)
	Verify: $( )x ( )x$
15.	And how would you say 'It's not probable'?
(Não	é provável)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x

16.	Can you guess what this word means?  ( ) ( )
(impr	robable)
17.	Now, listen again and repeat. <u>improvável</u> ( )x ( )x
18.	How do you say 'It's improbable'?
(É in	mprovável)
	Verify: ( )x ( )x
-	You know the verb evitar which means 'avoid'. Therefore you should be able to guess what this word means.
(avoi	( ) ( ) Ldable)
20.	Now, listen again and repeat. $\underline{\text{evitável}}$ ( )x ( )x ( )x
21.	What does this one mean?  ( ) ( )
(Unav	voidable, inevitable)
22.	Listen again and repeat.  inevitável ( )x ( )x ( )x
23.	So how would you say 'It's inevitable'?
(É ir	nevitável)  Verify: ( )x ( )x
24.	The verb <u>aceitar</u> means 'accept'. Repeat.  ( )x ( )x

25.	What, then, does this word mean?
(acce	( ) ( ) eptable)
26.	Listen again and repeat.  aceitável ( )x ( )x ( )x
	How do you say 'It's acceptable'? ceitável) Verify: ( )x ( )x
28.	What do you suppose this word means?
(una	( ) ( ) cceptable)
29.	Listen again and repeat.  inaceitável ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
	Finally, then, how do you say 'It's unacceptable'? naceitável) Verify: ( )x ( )x
31.	The above items are all adjectives and they are in their singular forms. When they are used with plural nouns they will appear in their plural forms. Here, for example, is the plural form of 'horrible'.  ( )x ( )x ( )x
32.	Here it is again. The -eis diphthong has the closed $\underline{e}$ .  horríveis ( )x ( )x

33. Try the singular and the plural together. Be sure the stress is on the right syllable, that is, the middle one.
<pre>horrivel ( )x ( )x horriveis ( )x ( )x</pre>
34. This is the way you say 'horrible party'.  ( )x ( )x
35. And this is the way you say the plural, 'horrible parties'. ( )x ( )x
36. How would you say 'horrible cities'?
(cidades horríveis)
Verify: ( ) $x$ ( ) $x$
37. How would you say 'horrible machines'? (máquinas horríveis) Verify: ( )x ( )x
38. How about 'horrible dialogs'? (diálogos horríveis) Verify: ( )x ( )x
39. If the plural of <u>horrivel</u> is <u>horriveis</u> , you should be able to guess at the plural of <u>possivel</u> . What is it?
<pre>(possiveis)   Right! Now, verify just to be sure. ( )x ( )x</pre>
40. Likewise, what is the plural form of provável? (prováveis)
Verify: $( )x ( )x$

•							
41.	What is the plural of inevitave	<u>e1</u> ?					
(ine	vitáveis)						
•	Verify: ( )x ( )x						
42.	And what is the plural of acei	táve	1?				
(ace	itáveis)						
	Verify: $( )x ( )x$						
43.	Practice saying the following:						
	a. São possíveis	(	)x	(	)x		
	b. São prováveis	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>		
	c. São aceitáveis	(	)x	(	) <b>x</b>		
	d. São inevitáveis						
	e. São impossíveis		) <b>x</b>				
	f. São inaceitáveis	(	) <b>x</b>	(	<b>)</b> x		
44.	All of the above items are adjusted some nouns that follow the same word 'tunnel', which you probate (Sing.) <u>túnel</u> ()x (Pl.) <u>túneis</u> ()x	e pa bly (	remen	. Or		-	-
45.	Another is 'automobile'.						
	(Sing.) $automóvel$ (						
	(Pl.) <u>automóveis</u> (	) <b>x</b>	(	) <b>x</b>	(	) <b>x</b>	
46.	So, if you wanted to, you could the two automobiles have to poor dois automóveis tem que pas ( ) ( )x ( )x	ass sar	throu pelos	ıgh tl	ne ti	unnels'.	
47.	Now let us move to a related s	ubje	ect.	You v	vill	recall th	at
•	you have practiced saying seven	_					
	<u>-il</u> .						
	a. civil ( )x	(	) <b>x</b>				
	b. gentil ( )x	(	)x				

48. In this unit you will practice saying several words that end

	in unstressed <u>-il</u> . One of them is already familiar to you.
	dificil ( )x ( )x
49.	Perhaps you have already run across the word which means just the opposite of <a href="mailto:difícil">difícil</a> ; i.e. the word for 'easy'. They make a logical pair.
50.	Be sure that you get the stress on the next-to-the-last syllable of both words.  difícil ( )x ( )x fácil ( )x ( )x
51.	Here is another common word which is often cited along with <pre>fácil and difícil as another example of the same sort. It is certainly a useful item.</pre> <pre>útil ( )x ( )x</pre>
52. (use	Can you guess what this <u>useful</u> item means? Have we given you enough clues? ful)
53.	Even if we hadn't given you the clues, you might have guessed that $\underline{\text{útil}}$ means $\underline{\text{useful}}$ by association with the English word 'utilitarian'. Always give cognates a try! Now, repeat again Notice that the first syllable is $\underline{\text{ú}}$ , not $\underline{\text{you}}$ .  1. $\underline{\text{ú}}$ ( )x ( )x 2. $\underline{\text{til}}$ ( )x ( )x 3. $\underline{\text{útil}}$ ( )x ( )x

54.	Pract	tice	sayi	ng tl	nese	short	utter	ances	3, 8	all of	which	begin
	with	'It	is	. ' .								
		1.	É fác	<u>cil</u>	(	)x	(	)x				
							(	)x				
		3.	É út:	<u>i1</u>	(	)x	(	)x				
55.	The a	above	e word	ds ei	nd in	unst	ressed	<u>eis</u>	in	their	plural	forms.
		<u>fáce</u>			)x	-	-					
						(						
		<u>útei</u>	Ĺs	(	)×	(	)x					
56.	Now ]	pract	cice s	sayir	ng th	e fol	lowing	:				
			a.	<u>São</u>	fáce	is	(	)x	(	)×		
			b.	<u>São</u>	difí	ceis	(	)x	(	)x		
			c.	<u>São</u>	<u>útei</u>	s	(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	)x		
57•	This						fficul <sup>.</sup>		log )x	gs'.		
58.	How v	vould	d you	say	'eas	y dia	logs'?					
(diál	Logos	fáce	eis)									
		Veri	fy:	(	) <b>x</b>	(	)x					
59.	How w	vould	l you	say	use	ful d	ialogs	1 ?				
(diál	Logos	útei	.s)									
		Veri	fy:	(	)x	(	)x					
	How v		_	say	'use	ful b	ooks'?					
,		•		(	$\mathbf{x}$	(	)x					
61.	How a	about	: 'eas	sy bo	ooks'	?						
(livr	os fá	áceis	;)									
		Veri	fy:	(	$\rangle x$	(	)x					

62. And 'difficult books'?
(livros difíceis)
Verify: ( )x ( )x

Note: The practices that follow will give you additional experience using some of the above adjectives in their singular forms.

### Practice 1. (Recorded)

Practice saying these sentences.

- 1. É fácil trabalhar com ele.
- 2. É fácil bater à máquina.
- 3. É difícil falar português.
- 4. É difícil conhecer o Jorge.
- 5. É possível sair cedo.
- 6. Não é possível fazer isso.
- 7. É impossível saber a verdade.
- 8. Não é impossível voltar hoje.
- 9. É útil saber isso.
- Não é muito útil falar inglês.
- 11. É horrível morar lá!
- 12. É horrível viajar com ele.

### Practice 2.

You can form various interesting combinations by putting the items on the left together with the items on the right. Experiment a bit. All combinations are possible and most are likely. Just a few of them have been recorded for you.

- 1. É fácil
- 2. É difícil
- 3. É possível
- 4. É impossível
- a. trabalhar com ele
- b. vender o carro
- c. bater à máquina
- d. morar em Recife
- e. ensinar história
- f. ser bom funcionário
- g. comprar as passagens aqui
- h. falar com Alice
- i. fazer isso
- i. voltar cedo
- k. levar sanduíches
- 1. falar português

# Practice 3. (Recorded)

Combinations of the sort practiced above can also be cast into the past. Repeat these short phrases.

- 1. Foi fácil sair cedo.
- 2. Foi difícil preparar o diálogo.
- Foi possível fazer tudo.
- 4. Foi impossível voltar ontem.
- 5. Foi útil falar com ela.
- 6. Foi horrível trabalhar para essa empresa.
- 7. Foi fácil escrever essa carta.
- 8. Foi muito difícil acordar cedo.

# Practice 4. (Recorded)

Such combinations are also commonly cast into the future mold, i.e. in terms of 'It's going to be.....' Repeat the following sentences.

- 1. Vai ser impossível falar com ele.
- 2. Vai ser fácil sair cedo.
- 3. Vai ser muito difícil esquecer isso.
- 4. Vai ser útil conhecer o Presidente.
- 5. Vai ser horrível ficar em casa hoje.

Vai ser possível sair cedo amanhã.
 Não vai ser fácil levantar às cinco.
 Não vai ser possível começar hoje.

Practice participating in these very brief exchanges.

Practice 5. (Recorded)

l. É difícil?

	Não, é muito fácil.						
2.	É difícil?						
	É, sim. Muito difícil.						
3.	É fácil?						
	Não, não é. É difícil.						
4.							
	É, sim. Mas é possível.						
5•	£ possível?						
_	É, sim. Mas é difícil.						
6.	•						
	Não, não é. Mas é muito difícil.						
7.	É fácil?						
	Não, não é. Mas é possível.						
0							
8.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						
	Foi, mesmo. Muito fácil!						
9.	Foi difícil?						
10	Foi, mesmo. Difícil demais!						
10.	Foi possível?						
	Não, não foi. Foi impossível!						
Part II							
rait ii							
l Rec	all this item from a previous dialog.						
r. Rec	vistas maravilhosas ( )x ( )x						
	VISCUS MATAVITHOSAS ( )A ( )A						
2. Not	Notice the open O in maravilhosas.						
_, _,,	maravilhosas ( )x ( )x						
	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,						
	24.11						

3.	Now look at the singular form: 'marvelous view'.  vista maravilhosa ( )x ( )x
4.	Again, notice the open $\underline{o}$ in $\underline{\text{maravilhosa}}$ . $\underline{\text{maravilhosa}}$ ( )x ( )x
5•	Now, examine the item 'marvelous state'. Remember, 'state' is masculine. <u>estado maravilhoso</u> ( )x ( )x
6.	Did you notice that the first o of -oso is the closed o, and not the open o? Listen again, and repeat.  estado maravilhoso ( )X ( )X
7.	Compare the open <u>O</u> with the closed <u>o</u> .  maravilh <u>O</u> sa ( )x ( )x  maravilh <u>o</u> so ( )x ( )x
8.	A number of adjectives that have the open $\underline{O}$ in their feminine forms will have the closed $\underline{O}$ in their masculine forms. Here is the adjective 'famous' used with a feminine noun. $\underline{senhora} \ \underline{famosa} \ ( \ )X \ ( \ )X$
9.	Notice the open <u>O</u> in <u>famosa</u> . <u>senhora famOsa</u> ( )X ( )X
10.	Now, here is 'famous' used to describe 'book', a masculine noun.  livro famoso ( )X ( )X
11.	Notice the closed o in famoso.  livro famoso ( )x ( )x

12.	You will hear another new adjective in this item: 'tasty (or 'delicious') food'. <pre>comida gostosa ( )X ( )X</pre>
13.	Listen to the open $\underline{O}$ in $\underline{gostosa}$ . $\underline{gostOsa}$ ( )X ( )X
14.	In 'tasty sandwich' the $\underline{o}$ is closed since sandwich is masculine. $\underline{\text{sanduiche gostoso}}  (  ) \text{X}  (  ) \text{X}$
15.	You have had the adjective 'new' in the phrase novo professor.*  novo professor ( )X ( )X
16.	Notice the closed o.  novo professor ( )X ( )X
17.	Listen to what happens when you say 'new ( <u>lady</u> ) teacher'. <u>nova professora</u> ( )X ( )X
18.	Did you notice the open <u>O</u> of <u>nova</u> ? Here it is again. <u>nova professora</u> ( )X ( )X
19.	Now, listen to and repeat these contrasting forms again.  a. novo ( )X nova ( )X  b. famoso ( )X famosa ( )X  c. gostoso ( )X gostosa ( )X  d. maravilhoso ( )X maravilhosa ( )X

 $<sup>\</sup>mbox{\ensuremath{\star}}$  'New' is one of those adjectives that sometimes comes before the noun.

# Practice 1. (Recorded)

Repeat the following items several times until you feel comfortable with them.

- 1. americano famoso
- 2. livro famoso
- 3. jornal famoso
- 4. americana famosa
- 5. praia famosa
- 6. casa famosa

\_\_\_\_\_

- 7. livro maravilhoso
- 8. sanduíche maravilhoso
- 9. feriado maravilhoso

10. cidade maravilhosa (otherwise known as Rio de Janeiro)

- 11. praia maravilhosa
- 12. máquina maravilhosa

\_\_\_\_\_

13. dia gostoso\*

- 14. café gostoso
- 15. passeio gostoso

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_\_

- 16. comida gostosa
- 17. praia gostosa
- 18. vista gostosa

19. novo presidente.

- 20. novo funcionário
- 21. novo consulado

22. nova idéia

- 23. nova amiga
- 24. nova professora

<sup>\*</sup> gostoso/a can also mean 'pleasant, agreeable'.

(We r	etur	n now	to our	prog	ramme	ed fo	ormat.)			
20.	How v	would y	you sa	y 'fa	mous	rest	aurant	1 ?		
(restau	rante	e famos	so)							
	7	Verify	: (	)x	(	)x				
21.	How v	would y	you sa	y 'fa	mous	aver	ue'?			
(avenid	la far	mosa)								
	7	Verify	: (	)x	(	)x				
22.	How v	would y	you sa	y 'ma	rvelo	ous p	arty'?			
(festa	mara	vilhos	a)							
	•	Verify	: (	)x	(	)x				
23.	How a	about	'marve	lous	Porti	ugues	se'?			
(portug	uês 1	maravi	lhoso)							
	•	Verify	: (	) X	(	)x				
				y 'de	lici	ous s	soft-dr	ink'?		
(refrig	eran	te gos	toso)							
	•	Verify	: (	)x	(	)x				
		how abo	out 'd	lelici	ous i	meal'	?			
(comida										
	1	Verify	: (	)x	(	)x				
26.								he stres	sed <u>o</u> cl	osed.
	<u>.</u>	sanduí	che qo	stosc	2	( )	) X (	)x		
				appen	s if	we n	nake it	plural.	Do not	
		at yet						_		
	<u> </u>	sanduí	ches g	ostos	os	(	) (	)		
28.						-		Listen	and repe	at.
	(	gost <u>o</u> s	os	( )	X	( )	X			

29.	Now, again, listen and repeat. sanduíches gost $\underline{O}$ sos ( )X ( )X
30.	Here is the way you say 'famous books'.  livros famosos ( )x ( )x
31.	And here is 'marvelous restaurants'.  restaurantes maravilhosos ( )X ( )X
32.	What we are showing you here is that adjectives of this type have the open <u>O</u> in the masculine <u>plural</u> forms, even though they have the closed <u>o</u> in the masculine <u>singular</u> . Compare the following.
	1. livro famoso ( )X 2. livros fam <u>o</u> sos ( )X
	3. americano famoso ( )X 4. americanos fam <u>o</u> sos ( )X
	<ul><li>5. refrigerante gostoso</li><li>6. refrigerantes gost<u>o</u>sos ( )x</li></ul>
	7. novo professor ( )x 8. n <u>o</u> vos professores ( )x
33.	It may be easier to look at it this way: adjectives of the above sort have the open <u>O</u> except in the masculine singular form. Compare.  1. praia fam <u>O</u> sa ( )X
	2. praias fam <u>o</u> sas ( )X 3. livros fam <u>o</u> sos ( )X

34.	Examine	this series.						
	1.	(	)x					
	2.	(	)x					
	3.	3. feriados maravilh <u>O</u> sos						
	4.	(	)x					
35.	Now, exa							
	1.	comida gost <u>o</u> s	a	(	)x			
	2.	comidas gost <u>o</u>	sas	(	)x			
	3.	dias gost <u>O</u> sos		(	)x			
		(but)						
	4.	dia gostoso		(	)x			
36.	Finally	, examine this	ser	ies.				
	1.	n <u>O</u> va casa	(	)x				
	2.	n <u>O</u> vas casas	(	)x				
	3.	n <u>O</u> vos livros	(	)x				
		<b>(</b> but)						
	4.	novo livro	(	)x				

37. On to the dialog!

#### DIALOG

Aluno A

o senhor vai para Porto Alegre,
não é?

You're going to Porto Alegre, aren't you?

Aluno B

Não. <u>Eu ia, mas agora eu vou para o Rio</u>.

No. I was going, but now I'm going to Rio.

Aluno A

Por quê? O que é que aconteceu?

Why? What happened?

Aluno B

chefe

boss

telefonou

telephoned

(neutral form = telefonar)

Bom, o meu chefe me telefonou ontem à noite.

Well, my boss phoned me last night.

Aluno A

aî.

there

E daí?

And so? (And from there?)\*

<u>Aluno B</u>

precisam

they need

(neutral form = precisar)

alguém comercial someone commercial

Eles precisam de alquém na

They need someone in the

seção comercial de lá!

Commercial Section there.

<sup>\*</sup> de + aí = contraction daí.

### Aluno A

vai ver

maybe

acabar

to end (up), to finish

indo (neutral form  $= \underline{ir}$ )

going

<u>Vai ver que EU vou acabar indo</u> para Porto Alegre! Maybe I'll end up going to Porto Alegre.

Aluno B

pois

so, then

<u>Pois é</u>.

That's right.

### Expansion Exercises (Recorded)

- I. The verb acabar + -ndo form
  - 1. Eu vou acabar estudando mais.
  - 2. Eu vou acabar praticando menos.
  - 3. Eu vou acabar comprando outro.
  - 4. Eu vou acabar esquecendo tudo.
  - 5. Ele vai acabar morando no Rio.
  - 6. Ele vai acabar almoçando em casa.
  - 7. Ele vai acabar bebendo só água ('water').
  - 8. Ele vai acabar trabalhando para uma empresa particular.

### II. The verb precisar

3.

- 1. Eles precisam de uma secretária.
- 2. Eles precisam de outro carro.
  - Eu precisava de outro livro.

\_\_\_\_\_\_

- 4. Eu precisava dum refrigerante.
- \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. Ela vai precisar dum emprego.
- Ela vai precisar de outra passagem.
  - \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 7. Nós precisamos de outro presidente.
- 8. Nos precisamos de mais dinheiro.

### III. Last Names

A. Practice saying these 3-syllable last names. All but the last two are stressed on the next-to-the-last syllable.

Andrade Fernandes

Aranha Fonseca

Barbosa Gonçalves

Botelho Tavares

Cardoso Amaral (last syllable stressed)

Carvalho Avelar (last syllable stressed)

Castelo

Coelho

B. These also have three syllables but we have grouped them together because they all have the  $\underline{ei}$  diphthong.

Almeida Carneiro
Silveira Monteiro
Moreira Ribeiro
Ferreira Pinheiro
Pereira Medeiros
Siqueira Peixoto

Nogueira Teixeira Caldeira Bandeira Correia Vieira

C. These have the stressed nasal diphthong  $\underline{\tilde{a}e}$ . Magalhães Guimarães

```
D. Now practice these 4-syllable last names.
Albuquerque
Alvarenga
Azevedo
Cavalcante
Oliveira (ei diphthong again)
Figueiredo (ei diphthong again)
Vasconcelos
D'Alcântara (stressed on third-from-last syllable)
```

#### Brief Exchanges

- I. A. Practice these exchanges with the tape. Check B on the next page for the English.
  - Você acha que ele vai trabalhar na Seção Comercial?
     Bom, é bem possível.
  - Vocês vão jantar no restaurante em frente?
     É bem provável.
  - Vocês vão chegar lá às sete horas?
     É impossível. É cedo demais.
  - 4. O vocabulário\* desta\*\* lição é bom, não é?
     É. É muito útil.
  - Ela gosta de estudar francês?
     Gosta, sim. Mas é difícil.
  - O senhor sabe chegar na nossa casa?
     Sei, sim. É fácil.

<sup>\*</sup> A new word, but a cognate!

<sup>\*\*</sup> Another contraction: de + esta = desta.

- O senhor leu os livros?
   Li, sim. São muito úteis.
- B. Now put these into Portuguese.
  - Do you think he's going to work in the Commercial Section?
     Well, it's quite possible.
  - 2. Are you (all) going to have dinner in the restaurant across the street?
    It's very probable.
  - 3. Are you (all) going to get there at seven? It's impossible. It's too early.
  - 4. The vocabulary of this lesson is good, isn't it? Yes. It's very useful.
  - 5. Does she like to study French? Yes, she does. But it's difficult.
  - Do you know how to get to our house?Yes, I do. It's easy.
  - 7. Did you read the books?
    Yes. They're very useful.
- II. A. Practice these with the tapes. The English is in B. below.
  - Você acha que ele já está aqui?
     Não, eu não acho possível.
  - Você acha que ele já saiu?
     Eu acho muito possível, sim.

- Você acha que eu vou gostar?
   Eu acho muito provável, sim.
- 4. Você acha que a gente pode? Bom...eu acho muito difícil.
- 5. Você acha que a gente tem que viajar <u>hoje</u>? Eu acho inevitável.
- Você acha que o dinheiro dá?
   Não, não acho. É impossível.
- B. 1. Do you think he's already here? No, I don't think [it's] possible.
  - 2. Do you think he has left already? I think [it's] very possible, yes.
  - 3. Do you think I'm going to like [it]? I think you probably will, yes.
  - 4. Do you think we can? Well....I think it's very difficult.
  - 5. Do you think we'll have to travel <u>today</u>? I think it's inevitable.
  - Do you think there's enough money?
     No, I don't. It's impossible.

- III. A. Now try these. Numbers 4-10 deal with the construction não + verb + mais. This translates as 'any more', 'any longer' or 'not now', depending on the sentence. See B. below for the English.
  - Eu achava que ela ia para o Rio.
     Ela ia, mas agora ela vai para São Paulo.
  - Eu achava que a gente ia a Baltimore.
     A gente ia, mas o pneu furou.
  - Eu achava que a gente ia à praia.
     Ia, mas agora parece que vai chover.
  - 4. Eu achava que ela ia à festa. Ela ia, mas não vai mais. Ela vai ficar em casa.
  - Eu achava que você ia estudar.
     Ia, mas não vou mais. Eu vou ao cinema.
  - Nós achávamos que a senhora morava no Leblon.
     Eu morava, sim. Mas não moro mais.
  - A gente achava que o senhor trabalhava na seção comercial.
     Trabalhava. Mas eu não trabalho mais.
  - 8. Eu achava que a festa ia ser na sua casa. Ia, sim. Mas não vai ser mais.
  - Eu achava que ela era solteira.
     Era. Mas não é mais. Ela é casada.
  - 10. Eu achava que vocês tinham uma casa na praia. Tínhamos, sim. Mas não temos mais. Nós vendemos.

- B. 1. I thought she was going to Rio.
  She was, but now she's going to São Paulo.
  - 2. I thought we were going to Baltimore. We were, but the tire blew out.
  - 3. I thought we were going to the beach.
    We were, but now it looks like it's going to rain.
  - 4. I thought that she was going to the party.

    She was, but she isn't any longer. She is going to stay home.
  - 5. I thought that you were going to study.
    I was going to, but not now. I'm going to the movies.
  - 6. We thought you lived in Leblon. I did, but I don't live there any more.
  - 7. We thought you worked in the Commercial Section.
    I did, but I don't work there any more.
  - 8. I thought the party was going to be at your place. It was, yes, but not now.
  - 9. I thought she was single.
    She used to be, but she's not any more. She's married.
  - 10. I thought you had a house on the beach.
    We used to, but we don't have [it] any longer.
    We sold [it].

- IV. These will give you some more insight into the use of 'e dai?', meaning 'and so?'.
  - 1. Vai chover amanhã.

E daí?

A gente não vai poder ir à praia.

Ele só vai me dar o dinheiro sexta-feira.
 E daí?
 Eu preciso do dinheiro hoje.

Nós só vamos ao Rio.
 E daí?
 Nós queríamos ir a São Paulo também.

4. O pneu furou.E daí?A gente não vai.

5. Eu tenho só cinco cruzeiros.E daí?A gente não come hoje.

6. Eu não gosto de levantar cedo nos fins de semana. E daí? Eu tenho que levantar muito cedo amanhã.

# Unit 25

### REVIEW

This review has been divided into five sections.

Section I. Nouns, Contractions, Adjectives

Section II. Verbs

Section III. The Verbs Ser, Estar, Ter, Ir

Section IV. Asking Questions with Question Words

Section V. <u>Miscellaneous Exchanges</u>

All practices are recorded unless otherwise indicated.

### Section I

# Nouns, Contractions, Adjectives

## Nouns

## Practice 1. The definite articles

Be sure you know the gender of the following items. Translate these aloud.

- 1. the newspaper
- 2. the examination
- 3. the beach
- 4. the book
- 5. the ticket
- 6. the door
- 7. the daughter
- 8. the soft drink
- 9. the mountain
- 10. the officer
- 11. the company
- 12. the section
- 13. the sandwich
- 14. the night
- 15. the hour
- 16. the opportunity
- 17. the weekend
- 18. the post card
- 19. the holiday
- 20 the heat

### Practice 2. The indefinite articles

Be sure you know the gender of these. Translate aloud.

- 1. a party
- 2. a park
- 3. a tunnel
- 4. an avenue
- 5. a week
- 6. a city
- 7. an idea
- 8. a restaurant
- 9. a sleepyhead
- 10. a bridge
- 11. a letter
- 12. a lady
- 13. a gentleman
- 14. a secretary
- 15. a house
- 16. a school
- 17. a suit
- 18. a day

## Practice 3. 'Some'

Go through the above list of words (those in Practice 2) and make them plural, i.e. be sure you can say 'some parties, some parks, some tunnels', etc. Do them aloud.

# Practice 4. 'This' and 'that'; 'these' and 'those'

Now try these. Do them aloud.

- 1. this lesson
- 2. this view
- 3. this car
- 4. this state
- 5. this office
- 6. this embassy

- 7. that word
- 8. that idea
- 9. that accent
- 10. that coffee
- 11. that letter
- 12. that girl

- 13. these mountains
- 14. these beaches
- 15. these days
- 16. these matters
- 17. these houses
- 18. these lessons
- \_\_\_\_\_ 19. those gentlemen
- 20. those books
- 21. those sandwiches
- 22. those machines
- 23. those words
- 24. those tunnels

# Practice 5. Possessives: 'my', 'your', 'our'

Do these aloud too.

- 1. my house
- 2. my book
- 3. my mother
- 4. my money
- 5. my accent
- 6. my son
- 7. my shoes (singular)

-----

- 8. your English
- 9. your coffee
- 10. your wife

- 11. your tire
- 12. your grammar
- 13. your office
- 14. your friend

. -

- 15. our son
- 16. our daughter
- 17. our embassy
- 18. our money
- 19. our door
- 20. our teacher (masc.)
- 21. our teacher (fem.)
- 22. our school
- 23. our car
- 24. our hour!

The following all deal with plural items.

- 25. my ideas
- 26. my windows
- 27. my friends (masc.)
- 28. my parents
- 29. my books
- 30. my daughters
- 31. my sons

\_\_\_\_\_

- 32. your parties
- 33. your letters
- 34. your parents
- 35. your newspapers
- 36. your opportunities
- 37. your words
- 38. your teachers (masc.)

------

- 39. our tickets
- 40. our machines
- 41. our sandwiches

- 42. our tables
- 43. our friends
- 44. our cities
- 45. our weekends

# Practice 7. Possessives: 'his', 'her'

Remember that you can say 'his car' by rephrasing it as 'the car of him' — o carro dele. The dele is a contraction of de + ele. Likewise, 'her car' is phrased as 'the car of her' — o carro dela. The dela is a contraction of de + ela. With this in mind, try the following.

- 1. His money
- 2. His accent
- 3. His wife
- 4. His daughter
- 5. His son
- 6. His shoes (singular)
- 7. His Chevrolet

8. Her party

- 9. Her typewriter (machine)
- 10. Her coffee
- 11. Her breaktime
- 12. Her letter
- 13. Her job
- 14. Her Ford

The following are plural, so you will begin each one either with os for masculine items or as for feminine items.

- 15. His cars
- 16. His sandwiches
- 17. His daughters
- 18. His parents
- 19. His sons
- 20. His words

- 21. Her cars
- 22. Her sandwiches
- 23. Her daughters
- 24. Her parents
- 25. Her words

## Practice 8. Possessives with names

Remember that you can say 'Paul's car' by rephrasing it as 'the car of Paul' = o carro do Paulo. Likewise, 'Mary's car' = o carro da Maria. With this in mind, do the following.

- 1. Paul's book
- 2. Paul's accent
- 3. Paul's secretary
- 4. Paul's ticket

\_\_\_\_\_\_

- 5. Luís's wife
- 6. Luís's money
- 7. Luís's house
- 8. Luís's shoes (singular)

\_\_\_\_\_

- 9. Sonia's son
- 10. Sonia's idea
- ll. Sonia's English
- 12. Sonia's letter

\_\_\_\_\_\_

- 13. Inês's coffee
- 14. Inês's ticket
- 15. Inês's food
- 16. Ines's Chevrolet

The following are plural.

Example: os carros do Bill = Bill's cars

Example: as crianças do Bill = Bill's children

- 17. Antônio's books
- 18. Antônio's friends
- 19. Antônio's tickets
- 20. Antônio's sons

\_\_\_\_\_

- 21. Angela's children
- 22. Angela's letters
- 23. Angela's parents
- 24. Angela's friends (fem.)

Contractions: ao and à

## Practice 9. (Warm-up)

Practice saying these items containing the contractions ao and à.

- ao Rio
- ao parque
- ao centro
- ao restaurante
- ao escritório
- ao Consulado
- ao funcionário
- ao departamento

\_\_\_\_\_

ao meio-dia

à secretária

- à empresa
- à cidade
- à Embaixada
- à Seção Consular
- à professora
- à Alemanha
- à Dona Lúcia

## Practice 10.

Now, translate these.

- 1. I'm going to Rio.
- 2. I'm going downtown.
- 3. I'm going to the office.
- 4. I'm going to the Embassy.
- 5. I'm going to the Political Section.
- 6. I'm going at noon.

- 7. Let's go to the restaurant.
- 8. Let's go to the park.
- 9. Let's go to the city.
- 10. Let's go to the Consulate.
- 11. Let's go to England.
- 12. Let's go to Joe's house.

- 13. We sent [him] to the Consulate.
- 14. We sent [him] to the Embassy.
- 15. We sent [him] downtown.
- 16. We sent [him] to Germany.
- 17. We sent [him] to Rio.
- 18. We sent [him] to Brazil.
- 19. We sent [him] to her house.

- 20. I went to bed at 11:00. (deitar)
- 21. I fell asleep at midnight. (cair no sono)

(sair)

- 22. I awoke at 6:30. (acordar)
- 23. I got up at 7:00. (levantar)
- 24. I left at 8:00.
- 25. I arrived at 8:30. (chegar)
- 26. I began at 9:00. (começar)
- 27. I ate lunch at noon. (almoçar)

Contractions: plural aos and as

## Practice 11. (Warm-up)

Repeat these examples.

aos pais

aos filhos

aos funcionários

aos escritórios

aos brasileiros

aos americanos

aos senhores

às cidades

às senhoras

às festas

às sete

às oito

às professoras

às montanhas

# Practice 12.

Now, translate these sentences.

- 1. I am going to the mountains.
- 2. He is going to the cities.
- 3. We are going to the parties.
- 4. She is going at seven.
- 5. We went to the parks.
- 6. He went to the offices downtown.
- 7. They are going to the restaurants.
- 8. I went at ten.
- 9. She went yesterday at three.
- 10. They went to the schools.

Contractions: do, da, dos, das

# Practice 13. (Warm-up)

First, warm up with these examples.

- do senhor
- do funcionário
- do jornal
- do fim de semana
- do sanduíche
- do José

- dos senhores
- dos funcionários
- dos jornais
- dos fins de semana
- dos sanduíches
- dos meninos

\_\_\_\_\_

- da senhora
- da secretária
- da Seção Política
- da máquina
- da professora
- da Vera

das senhoras

- das secretárias

\_\_\_\_\_

- das seções
- das máquinas
- das professoras
- das crianças

# Practice 14.

Now, practice saying these sentences as you hear them on the tape. Pay attention to the contractions.

- 1. Eu gosto do Brasil.
- 2. Eu não gosto da cidade.
- 3. Eu gosto do Senhor Campos.
- 4. Eu não gosto da Dona Vânia.
- 5. Eu gosto muito do Senhor Gomes.
- 6. Eu não gosto da secretária dele.
- 7. Nós falamos muito dos professores
- 8. Eles falam muito dos alunos.
- 9. Ela falou bem da empresa.
- 10. Ele falou bem da secretária.
- 11. O que é que o senhor acha da Seção Consular?
- 12. O que é que o senhor acha do Departamento de Estado?
- 13. O que é que o senhor falou da Dona Regina?
- 14. O que é que o senhor falou do Senhor Lopes?
- 15. O que é que ele achou das crianças?
- 16. O que é que ele achou dos pais?
- 17. Ela é da Inglaterra.
- 18. Ele é da Alemanha.
- 19. O senhor precisa da máquina?
- 20. A senhora precisa do carro?

- 21. Este sapato é do Luís.
- 22. E este terno, é do Marcos?
- 23. A senhora é do Brasil?
- 24. Sou. Sou do Rio.

Contractions: no, na, nos, nas

# Practice 15. (Warm-up)

Repeat these examples after the voice on the tape.

- no departamento
- no carro
- no feriado
- no fim de semana
- no Rio
- no sanduíche
- no jornal

na máquina

na terça-feira

na Seção Consular

na empresa

na montanha

na ponte

na praia

nos jornais

nos departamentos

nos carros

nos feriados

nos fins de semana

nos escritórios

nos passeios

nas notícias

nas máquinas

nas montanhas

nas praias

nas pontes

nas embaixadas

nas cidades

# Practice 16.

Now, participate in these exchanges as you hear them on the tape.

- 1. Onde é que ele está?
- 2. Está no escritório.
- 3. Ele estava na praia?
- 4. Não, estava nas montanhas.
- 5. Onde o senhor trabalhava antes?
- 6. Trabalhava na Embaixada Americana.
- 7. Onde o senhor leu isso?
- 8. Li nos jornais.
- 9. Onde a gente fala mais?
- 10. Na Seção Política.
- 11. A gente vai segunda-feira?
- 12. Não, o feriado cai na terça.
- 13. Onde está a minha carta?
- 14. Ainda está na máquina.
- 15. Onde é que ele ficou?
- 16. Ficou no centro.

# Adjectives

# Practice 17. (Warm-up)

Repeat these adjectives in their masculine and feminine forms.

bom bonito casado solteiro muito atrasado cansado resfriado acordado ót i mo péssimo caro

brasileiro americano português gostoso famoso maravilhoso

fácil

boa

bonita casada solteira muita atrasada cansada resfriada acordada ótima péssima

cara

brasileira americana portuguesa gostosa famosa maravilhosa

Now repeat these that do not change their forms for gender.

difícil útil horrível possível impossível provável azul

```
particular
local
legal
formal
```

comercial

# Practice 18.

Now, taking the first sentence in each group as a model, translate the following sentences.

- A. l. O carro dele é bonito.
  - 2. " " (expensive).
  - 3. " " " (blue).
  - 4. " " (useful).
  - 5. " " " (horrible).
  - 6. " " (famous).
- B. l. Tânia é brasileira.
  - 2. " " (pretty).
  - 3. " " (single).
  - 4. Vânia é portuguesa.
  - 5. " " (married).
  - 6. " " (old).
- C. 1. O senhor Mattos trabalha numa empresa particular.
  - 2. " " " (American).
  - 3. " " " " " (Brazilian).
  - 4. " " " " (old).
  - 5. " " " " (local).
  - 6. " " " " (famous).
  - 7. " " " (commercial).

```
O trabalho dele é fácil.
D.
                        11
                             " (difficult).
    2.
         11
               11
                        11
                               (good).
    3.
         11
               11
                        11
    4.
                             " (useful).
               "
                        11
                            " (terrible).
    5.
               11
                        11
    6.
                             " (political).
Ε.
    1.
         Marli tem uma vista maravilhosa.
                                  (good).
    2.
    3.
                       "
                                  (horrible).
    4.
                       11
                                  (pretty).
                       11
                                  (great). Use ótima.
    5.
                              um sapato brasileiro.
F.
    1.
         Cláudia comprou
                                          (pretty).
    2.
    3.
             **
                                          (blue).
             11
    4.
                                          (expensive).
             11
                              11
                                          (American).
     5.
             11
                     11
                              **
                                     **
                                          (good).
    6.
         Vai ser um dia difícil.
G.
    1.
                            (pretty).
    2.
    3.
                            (easy).
                    11
    4.
                            (wonderful).
           **
                    **
                           (useful).
     5.
    6.
                    11
                           (terrible).
               "
                    "
    7.
                            (great).
           **
               11
                    **
                            (pleasant). Use gostoso.
    8.
```

### Section II

### Verbs

## Practice 1.

Take each verb form given below, repeat it, then give the corresponding form in the past (the <u>did</u> form). For example, in Number 1, after saying <u>eu compro</u> 'I buy', you should say <u>eu comprei</u> 'I bought'. Follow along and verify your responses with the tape. Be careful! You will find <u>-ar</u>, <u>-er</u> and <u>-ir</u> type verbs, all three.

- 1. eu compro
- 2. eu trabalho
- 3. eu dirijo
- 4. eu mando
- 5. eu escrevo
- 6. eu saio
- 7. eu acho
- 8. eu vendo
- 9. eu durmo ('sleep')
- 10. eu gosto
- 11. eu almoço
- 12. eu leio
- 13. eu fico
- 14. eu aceito
- 15. eu vou

- 17. ele pratica
- 18. ele bebe
- 19. ele sai
- 20. ele muda
- 21. ele 1ê
- 22. ele deita

<sup>16.</sup> ele estuda

- 23. ele começa
- 24. ele acorda
- 25. ele prepara
- 26. ele recebe
- 27. ele lembra
- 28. ele dirige
- 29. ele deixa
- 30. ele vai

#### \_\_\_\_\_

- 31. nós gostamos
- 32. nós moramos
- 33. nós recebemos
- 34. nós compramos
- 35. nós dormimos
- 36. nós descansamos
- 37. nós batemos
- 38. nós ensinamos
- 39. nós voltamos
- 40. nós procuramos
- 41. nós perdemos
- 42. nós reparamos
- 43. nós viajamos
- 44. nós comemos
- 45. nós vamos

# 46. eles saem

- 47. eles viajam
- 48. eles dormem
- 49. eles gostam
- .,,
- 50. eles chegam
- 51. eles falam
- 52. eles lêem
- 53. eles praticam
- 54. os senhores vendem

- 55. os senhores ensinam
- 56. os senhores esquecem
- 57. os senhores dirigem
- 58. os senhores almoçam
- 59. os senhores vão

# Practice 2.

Now, practice these brief exchanges with your teacher or a fellow student. Each time the response is 'I already did'.

- Eu vou estudar.
   Eu já estudei.
- Eu vou almoçar.Eu já almocei.
- Eu pretendo ler.Eu já li.
- 4. Eu pretendo ir. Eu já fui.
- 5. Eu quero esquecer. Eu já esqueci.
- Vamos jantar.Eu já jantei.
- Vamos comer.
   Eu já comi.
- 8. Vamos tomar café. Eu já tomei.

- Vamos mandar a carta.Eu já mandei.
- 10. Vamos comprar o livro. Eu já comprei.
- 11. Vamos vender o sapato.
  Eu já vendi.
- 12. Vamos lá agora. Eu já fui.

# Practice 3.

Answer (and ask) these questions.

- O senhor jantou?
   Jantei, sim.
- 2. O senhor tomou?
  Tomei, sim.
- 3. O senhor leu?
   Li, sim.
- 4. O senhor comeu? Comi, sim.
- 5. O senhor preparou?
  Preparei, sim.
- 6. O senhor notou?
  Notei, sim.
- 7. O senhor saiu?
  Saí, sim.

- 8. O senhor comprou? Comprei, sim.
- 9. O senhor recebeu? Recebi, sim.
- 10. O senhor começou?
   Comecei, sim.
- 11. Os senhores jantaram? Não, não jantamos.
- 12. Os senhores já receberam as notícias? Não, ainda não recebemos.
- 13. Os senhores já começaram? Não, ainda não começamos.
- 14. Os senhores já leram o jornal? Não, ainda não lemos.
- 15. Os senhores dormiram? Não, não dormimos.
- 16. Os senhores já saíram? Não, ainda não saímos.
- 17. Os senhores já foram? Não, ainda não fomos.
- 18. Os senhores descansaram? Não, não descansamos.

- 19. Os senhores repetiram? Não, não repetimos.
- 20. Os senhores esqueceram? Não, não esquecemos.

## Practice 4.

Go through this sequence with your tape and/or your teacher. You should be able to add several more of your own.

- 1. Ele ainda não comeu. Vai comer às sete.
- 2. Ele ainda não chegou. Vai chegar às oito.
- 3. Ele ainda não começou. Vai começar às nove.
- 4. Ele ainda não saiu. Vai sair às dez.
- 5. Ele ainda não jantou. Vai jantar mais tarde.
- 6. Ele ainda não almoçou. Vai almoçar ao meio-dia.
- 7. Ele ainda não deitou. Vai deitar à meia-noite.
- 8. Ele ainda não levantou. Vai levantar agora!

### Practice 5.

Practice saying these sentences which illustrate the 'used to/would' forms of verbs.

- 1. João saía muito porque ele tinha carro.
- 2. Alberto comia muito porque ele sempre estava com fome.
- 3. Ana não jantava no centro porque era caro demais.
- 4. Jorge ia muito ao cinema porque gostava.
- 5. Tom falava espanhol porque ele não sabia português.
- 6. Júlio deitava cedo porque levantava às seis.
- 7. Nélson sempre estava cansado porque trabalhava demais.
- 8. Edson nunca estudava porque não gostava.
- 9. Yara levantava cedo porque trabalhava longe.
- 10. Marcos não lia 'The Post' porque ele achava que o inglês era muito difícil.
- 11. Luís não viajava muito porque não tinha muita oportunidade.
- 12. Wilson voltava cedo porque trabalhava perto.

- 13. Vânia escrevia bem à máquina porque era secretária.
- 14. Sandra viajava muito porque trabalhava para a Varig.
- 15. Beatriz sempre chegava atrasada porque nunca sabia que horas eram.
- 16. Eduardo almoçava no escritório porque morava longe.
- Sebastião trabalhava aos domingos porque precisava do dinheiro.

18. Sam morava perto mas ele sempre chegava atrasado.

- 10. Dani mozava pozot mas ozo sompro emegava aczasade.
- 19. Lúcia sempre estava cansada mas ela nunca deitava cedo.
- 20. Ângela trabalhava longe mas ela sempre saía tarde.
- 21. Geraldo precisava de dinheiro mas ele não trabalhava muito,
- Marli sempre queria comprar mais mas o dinheiro nunca dava.
- 23. Antônio era português mas ele falava inglês sem sotaque.
- 24. Cristina morava em Copacabana mas nunca ia à praia.

- 25. Eu sempre saía cedo e voltava tarde.
- 26. Eu sempre almoçava no centro e jantava em casa.
- 27. Yara sempre deitava tarde e levantava cedo.
- 28. Inês lia inglês bem e falava sem sotaque.
- 29. Roberto conhecia a cidade e não se perdia.
- 30. João era casado e passava os fins de semana em casa.
- 31. Bill era americano e gostava da comida americana.
- 32. Marcos era de Fortaleza e ia muito a Fortaleza.
- 33. Paulo era o chefe e fazia tudo.
- 34. Fazia calor e chovia muito no Panamá.

# Practice 6. (More on 'used to/would')

Following the models given, have some fun putting these into Portuguese.

- 1. Nossa! Eu achava que ele era solteiro.
- (Gosh! I thought he had money.)
- 3. (Gosh! I thought you knew that.)
- 4. (Gosh! I thought Marcos was going too.)
- 5. (Gosh! I thought Yara was at home.)

Eu achava que o senhor se sentia bem.

6.

Desculpe.

```
7.
     (Excuse me.
                  I thought you knew Paul.
8.
     (Excuse me.
                  I thought you spoke English.)
                  I thought you lived in Leme.)
 9.
     (Excuse me.
                  I thought you worked here.)
10.
     (Excuse me.
                   Eu achava que você saía agora.
11.
     Sinto muito.
                   I thought we (a gente) were going to the
12.
     (I'm sorry.
                   beach.
                   I thought the party was today.)
13.
     (I'm sorry.
14.
                   I thought it was a good idea.)
     (I'm sorry.
     (I'm sorry.
                   I thought it was ten o'clock.)
15.
16.
                   I thought you were taking the soft drinks.)
     (I'm sorry.
17.
                 Eu não sabia que você ia hoje.
     Hoje?
18.
                 I didn't know you were practicing today.)
     (Today?
                 I didn't know you were leaving tomorrow.)
19.
     (Tomorrow?
20.
     (Now?
                 I didn't know you were planning to go now.)
     (At 5?
                 I didn't know the party was at five.)
21.
22.
                 I didn't know you had to work tonight.)
     (Tonight?
23.
     Ah, é?
                   Eu não sabia que ele era o chefe.
24.
     (Oh, really?! I didn't know she was Portuguese.)
25.
     (Oh, really?! I didn't know Recife was (ficava) so far.)
26.
     (Oh, really?! I didn't know Júlio had so much money.)
27.
     (Oh, really?! I didn't know Maria got home so late.)
28.
     Já?!
                 Eu não sabia que ele estava com tanta fome.
     (Already?!
                 I didn't know he was in such a hurry.)
29.
30.
     (Already?!
                 I didn't know he knew so much.)
                 I didn't know what time it was.)
31.
     (Already?!
                 I didn't know it was time to stop.)
32.
     (Already?!
```

#### Section III

A. The verb ser 'to be'

## Practice 1. (Warm-up)

Repeat these examples of the é form of ser.

# <u>Identification</u> and <u>Classification</u>

- 1. Jack é americano.
- 2. Luís é espanhol.
- 3. Afonso é brasileiro.
- 4. Tom é inglês.
- 5. Gustavo é português.
- 6. Alberto é francês.
- 7. Roberto é funcionário.
- 8. Sérgio é presidente.
- 9. Júlio é professor.
- 10. Jaime é aluno.
- 11. Leonardo é chefe.
- 12. Ernesto é amigo.
- 13. Francisco é solteiro.
- 14. Alberto é bonito. (good-looking)
- 15. Emílio é casado.
- 16. Cláudio é dorminhoco.
- 17. Mário é famoso.

- 18. Luísa é espanhola.
- 19. Inês é brasileira.
- 20. Margarida é portuguesa.
- 21. Sandra é americana.
- 22. Rosa é professora.
- 23. Cristina é aluna.
- 24. Bárbara é secretária.
- 25. Helena é solteira.
- 26. Lúcia é casada.

- 27. Regina é bonita.
- 28. Glória é famosa.
- 29. Denise é chata.
- 30. Beatriz é impossível!

#### \_\_\_\_\_\_

- 31. Paris é uma capital famosa.
- 32. Londres é uma cidade velha.
- 33. Alaska é um estado novo.
- 34. Braniff é uma empresa particular.
- 35. Recife é uma cidade brasileira.
- 36. Copacabana é uma praia bonita.

## Origin

- 37. Marcos é do Rio.
- 38. Angela é de São Paulo.
- 39. Antônio é do Brasil.
- 40. Ricardo é de Portugal.
- 41. A carta é do Rio.
- 42. O cartão é de São Paulo.

## Possession

- 43. O Chevrolet é do Luís.
- 44. O Ford é da Angela.
- 45. Este terno é do Luis Sérgio.
- 46. Este sapato é da Maria Lúcia.
- 47. Este sanduíche é dele.
- 48. Este refrigerante é meu.

### Permanent, fixed location

- 49. A Embaixada é em Brasília.
- 50. A Seção Consular é na Embaixada.
- 51. O Leme é no Rio.

- 52. A empresa é na cidade.
- 53. A casa é na praia.
- 54. O Departamento de Estado é em Washington.
- 55. Buffalo é em Nova Iorque.
- 56. O túnel é muito perto.
- 57. A praia é muito longe.

## Time

- 58. É meia-noite.
- 59. É meio-dia.
- 60. É uma hora.

# Practice 2.

Participate in this quick question and answer session with various forms of <u>ser</u>. Warning: the tenses are mixed.

	Person A	Person B
1.	O senhor é americano?	Sou, sim.
2.	O senhor era funcionário?	Era, sim.
3.	Ela era secretária?	Não, não era.
4.	Ele é professor?	Não, não é.
5.	Eles eram brasileiros?	Não, não eram.
6.	Eles eram solteiros?	Eram, sim.
7.	Ela é casada?	Não, não é.
8.	Elas são portuguesas?	São, sim.
9.	Ela é a Dona Bárbara?	É, sim.
10.	Ela é bonita?	Não, não é.
11.	A carta é da Dona Ana?	É, sim.
12.	Este carro é do Sérgio?	É, sim.
13.	Este sanduíche é o meu?	É, sim.
14.	Estes livros são meus?	São, sim.
15.	É uma hora?	É, sim.
16.	Afonso era o chefe?	Não, não era.
17.	É uma empresa particular?	Não, não é.

18. O João é o presidente?

É, sim.

19. A escola é longe?

Não, não é.

20. É perto?

É, sim.

21. O restaurante é em frente?

É.

B. The verb estar 'to be'

# Practice 1. (Warm-up)

Repeat these examples of the está form of estar.

# Non-fixed location

- 1. Eduardo está em casa.
- 2. A Yara está na Embaixada.
- 3. A Cláudia está no Consulado.
- 4. O Luís está no Brasil.
- 5. Vera está na escola.
- 6. Antônio está comigo.
- 7. Angela está com a mãe dela.
- 8. O carro está no centro.
- 9. A comida está em cima da mesa.
- 10. O dinheiro não está aqui.

## Non-permanent state or condition

- 11. Vera está resfriada
- 12. Sonia está cansada.
- 13. Paulo está atrasado.
- 14. A Regina está com fome.
- 15. O Henrique está com pressa.
- 16. Sebastião está acordado.
- 17. Glória está com sono.

# With the -ndo form of verbs

- 18. Raquel está trabalhando.
- 19. Carmem está dormindo.
- 20. Lourdes está lendo.
- 21. Fernando está praticando.
- 22. Júlio está almoçando.
- 23. João está lembrando.
- 24. Ana está saindo.
- 25. Luísa está procurando.
- 26. Margarida está falando.
- 27. Francisco está levantando.
- 28. Tânia está comendo.
- 29. Vânia está esquecendo.
- 30. Édson está começando.
- 31. Gibson está viajando.
- 32. Nélson está estudando.
- 33. Está chovendo.
- 34. Está fazendo calor.
- 35. Quem está preparando e escrevendo tanto?

### Practice 2.

Participate in this quick question and answer session with estar.

	Person A	<u>Person B</u>
1.	Você está com sono?	Estou, sim.
2.	Você está com fome?	Estou, sim.
3.	Você estava cansado?	Estava, sim.
4.	Você estava com pressa?	Estava, sim.
5.	Ele estava aqui?	Estava, sim.
6.	Ele está no Consulado?	Está, sim.
7.	Ela estava resfriada?	Estava, sim.
8.	Eles estão acordados?	Estão, sim.
9.	Vocês estão no restaurante?	Estamos, sim.
10.	Os senhores estão em casa?	Estamos, sim.

11.	Yara está na escola?	Está, sim.
12.	Marcos estava lá?	Estava, sim.
13.	Wilson está na praia?	Está, sim.
14.	Eles estão no escritório?	Estão, sim.
15.	Eu estou com fome?	Não, não está!
16	Já estamos chegando?	Estamos, sim.
	Você está lembrando?	•
		Não, não estou.
18.	Jorge está dirigindo?	Está.
19.	Maria está jantando?	Não, não está.
20.	O senhor está gostando?	Estou, sim.
21.	As moças estão gostando?	Estão.
22.	Está chovendo?	Está, sim.
23.	Você está se sentindo bem?	Estou.
24.	Ele está caindo!?	Não, não está!
25.	Estamos voltando?	Estamos.
26.	Os meninos estão descansando?	Estão, sim.
27.	O senhor Lopes está morando no Rio?	Está, sim.
28.	O espanhol está atrapalhando?	Está!
29.	Milton está procurando outro emprego?	Não, não está.
30.	O senhor está acabando?	Estou! (Finalmente!)

# C. The verbs ser and estar mixed.

Translate these items. Take them in order and they make up a brief narrative. Omit items in brackets.

- 1. Gloria is [an] American; she's from Duluth.
- 2. She's [a] secretary.
- 3. She's pretty, and [she] is married.
- 4. She's not at the office today.
- 5. She's at home.
- 6. Her home is in Copacabana.
- 7. She has a cold.
- 8. She's not hungry.
- 9. She's not in a hurry now.
- 10. She's resting.

- 11. George is Brazilian.
- 12. He is from Bahia.
- 13. He's single, and he's good-looking.
- 14. He's [a] teacher.
- 15. George is my friend, and he's [a] sleepyhead!
- 16. It's nine o'clock, and he's here in the Consulate.
- 17. But he's not awake yet.
- 18. He's still sleepy.
- 19. He's hungry too.
- 20. He's drinking coffee and eating a sandwich.
- 21. At times he's impossible!
- D. The verb ir 'to go'

# Practice 1. (Warm-up)

Run over these brief couplets designed for rapid review of the forms of ir.

- Eu vou agora.
   Ela vai amanhã.
- Nós vamos às cinco.
   Eles vão às oito.
- Você vai ao Rio?
   Eu vou a São Paulo.
- 4. Eu ia ao parque.
  Mas eles iam ao centro.
- Eu fui ontem.E o Paulo foi hoje.
- Roberto vai começar.
   E Marli vai acabar.

- Nós vamos sair.
   Mas eles vão ficar.
- 8. Você vai esquecer, claro!
  Mas eu vou lembrar.
- Yara ia estudar.
   E as outras iam descansar.
- 10. As meninas iam às montanhas. Nós íamos à praia.

# Practice 2.

Participate in this quick question and answer session dealing with the verb <u>ir</u>. Warning: The tenses are mixed. You should be able to respond to these without referring to the printed page.

<u>P</u>	erson A	Person B
1.	Ele vai?	Vai, sim.
2.	Você foi?	Fui, sim.
3.	Nós vamos?	Vamos.
4.	Eles foram?	Foram, sim.
5.	Eles vão hoje?	Não, não vão.
6.	Eu vou também?	Não, não vai.
7.	Nós vamos?	Não, não vão.
8.	Ela foi ontem?	Foi.
9.	O senhor ia?	Ia, sim.
10.	Vocês iam?	<pre>famos, sim.</pre>

E. The verb ter 'to have'

## Practice 1. (Warm-up)

Run through these brief couplets designed for rapid review of the forms of ter.

- Eu tenho um.
   Ele tem dois.
- Nós temos muitos.Eles têm poucos.
- Yara tem Chevrolet.Eu tenho Volkswagen.
- Jorge tem mais.
   Os meninos têm menos.
- 5. Nós temos muito trabalho.
  Os senhores têm que sair agora?
- Luís tem tudo.
   Eu não tenho nada.
- Maria tem que sair.
   Yara tem que ficar.
- Roberto tem que trabalhar.
   Eu tenho que descansar.
- 9. Nós tínhamos cinco.
  Quantos os senhores tinham?
- 10. Eu tinha um Ford.
  0 que é que você tinha?

- José tinha muito dinheiro?
   Não, ele não tinha nada.
- 12. Os senhores tinham casa? Não, nós não tinhamos.
- 13. Eu tive que praticar. E Ângela teve que estudar.
- 14. Nós tivemos que fazer tudo. Eles não tiveram que fazer nada.
- 15. Emílio teve que comprar um carro novo. Sérgio e Bárbara tiveram que vender o deles.

## Practice 2.

Using the models as guides, put the following sentences into Portuguese. These should be fun as well as challenging.

- 1. Quantos carros você tem?
- 2. (How many children do you have?)
- 3. (How many sandwiches does he have?)
- 4. (How many tickets do they have?)
- 5. (How many bosses do we have!?)
- 6. (How much money do you have?)
- 7. É verdade. Eduardo tem três carros.
- 8. (It's true. Henrique has a lot of money.)
- 9. (It's true. I have a letter for you.)
- 10. (It's true. We have a good opportunity.)
- 11. (It's true. Carlos has another job.)
- 12. (It's true. They have only one.)
- 13. (It's true. You have to remember everything.)
- 14. (It's true. We have to study more.)

```
15.
     (It's not true! I don't have to eat less!!
16.
     Que pena!
                     Eles tiveram que sair.
17.
     (What a shame! They had to work today.)
18.
    (What a shame! We had to sell the car.)
19.
    (What a shame! I had to write another letter.)
    (What a shame! Glória had to stay home.)
20.
    (What a shame! You had to begin again.)
21.
22.
     (What a shame! Fernando had to do everything.)
     Que amanhã!
23.
                                  Eu tenho que sair hoje.
     (What do you mean, at seven! I have to get up at six.)
24.
25.
     (What do you mean, later!
                                  I have to go now.)
26.
     (What do you mean, Spanish!
                                  He has to speak Portuguese.)
27.
     (What do you mean, rest!
                                  We have to work.)
28.
     (What do you mean, on Varig! They have to travel on Pan Am
     (What do you mean, me! (<u>Eu</u>) <u>You</u>* have to eat less!)
29.
30.
     (What do you mean, me!
                                  My boss** has to do that!)
```

<sup>\*</sup> Use <u>Você é que tem</u> (etc.)
\*\* Use Meu chefe é que (etc.)

#### Section IV

## Asking Questions with Question Words

Using the models as guides, practice asking the following questions.

## A. Model: O que é que ele quer?

```
1. What does he have?
```

- 2. " " do?
- 3. " " plan?
- 4. " " speak?
- 5. " " know?
- 6. " " think?
- 7. " " " teach?
- 8. " " read?
- 9. " " prefer? (prefEre)

## B. Model: Quem é essa moça?

- 1. Who is she?
- 2. " " Dona Alice?
- 3. " " the married one? (masculine)
- 4. " " the single one? (feminine)
- 5. " " the good looking one? (masculine)
- 6. " " the pretty one? (feminine)
- 7. " " the Spanish one? (masculine)
- 8. " " the American one? (feminine)
- 9. " " the older one? (feminine)

## C. Model: Onde é que ele dorme?

- 1. Where does he work?
- 2. " " live?
- 3. " " practice?
- 4. " " go?

```
5. " " teach?
```

- 6. " " eat lunch?
- 7. " " eat?
- 8. " " spend the weekends?
- 9. " " drink (take) coffee?

## D. Model: Quando é que o senhor lembrou?

```
1. When did you study?
```

- 2. " " remember?
- 3. " " " go?
- 4. " " arrive?
- 5. " " sell?
- 6. " " practice?
- 7. " " get lost?
- 8. " " " notice?
- 9. When were you born?

## E. Model: Por que é que o senhor não estudou?

- 1. Why didn't you go?
- 2. " " come back?
- 3. " " leave?
- 4. " " write the letter?
- 5. " send the money?
- 6. " " work yesterday?
- 7. " " stay until midnight?
- 8. " " buy the suit?
- 9. " " take sandwiches?

## F. Model: Como é que ela sabe?

- 1. How does she sleep?
- 2. " " speak?
- 3. " " remember?
- 4. " " buy?
- 5. " " sell?

- 6. " " travel?
- 7. " " go?
- 8. " " feel?
- 9. " " do that?

#### Section V

## Miscellaneous Exchanges

Of all the many thousands of exchanges that are possible with the limited Portuguese you have had thus far, we have selected the following few. Practice them with your teacher or a fellow student.

- Vamos fazer um passeio?
   Não, não podemos. Está chovendo.
- Nós vamos trabalhar segunda-feira?
   Não, não vamos. Segunda-feira é feriado.
- Sinto muito. O senhor tem razão.
   Está bom. A senhora não sabia...
- 4. Sinto muito. Não posso.
  O senhor não pode, ou não quer?
- O senhor não foi?
   Não, não fui. Eu não gostei da idéia.
- O senhor não almoçou?
   Não, não almocei. Eu não estava com fome.
- 7. Que cidade bonita!
  Você gosta?
- Que idéia!
   Você não gosta? Eu achei que era uma boa idéia.
- 9. A. A Vânia está aqui.
  - B. E daí?
  - A. Você não vai ao cinema com ela?

- 10. A. A Glória já chegou.
  - B. E daí?
  - A. O senhor não quer falar com ela?
- 11. Ela gosta de comer. Aliás, ela come demais. Parece, não é?
- 12. A Glória é a mais bonita.
  Ah, é?! Eu achava que era a Vera.
- 13. Eu preciso dormir oito horas. Pois é! Quem não precisa?
- 14. Eu vou acabar morando em Copacabana. Que bom! Você vai gostar da praia. É ótima.
- 15. João vai acabar trabalhando amanhã. Que pena! Amanhã é feriado.
- 16. Onde é que o senhor dorme?
  Por que é que o senhor quer saber?
- 17. É muito difícil trabalhar aqui.0 senhor já procurou outro emprego?
- 18. As vezes o George inventa palavras. Eu sei. Ele sempre está fazendo isso.
- 19. Você saiu?
   Não, não saí. Eu estava sem carro.
- 20. O senhor não quer ser o chefe?
  Não, não quero. É muito difícil ser chefe.

- 21. Que dia gostoso! É, mesmo. Quem é que quer trabalhar hoje?
- 22. Ela nasceu na Bahia mas mora no Rio.
  Eu já notei que ela fala com sotaque do Rio.
- 23. Opa! Aqui está a nossa professora!

  Iiii... A gente tem que falar só português.
- 24. Quem vai comer lá fora? (outside)
  Eu não vou. Está fazendo muito calor.
- 25. A. O dinheiro dá para jantar no restaurante Lucas?
  - B. Eu sei lá. Deixe-me ver. Um, dois, três.... Nossa!
  - A. Dá?
  - B. Não, não dá!

#### VOCABULARY

## Portuguese - English

This listing does not include the various groups of close cognates which are given special treatment in several of the units.

(A)		<b>(</b> B)	
<u>a</u>	<pre>- feminine article 'the'</pre>	<pre>barril (m) bater</pre>	- barrel
<u>à</u>	<pre>- at, to - to the, at the; contraction: article a + preposition a = a</pre>	bater à máquina beber bem boa bocêjo	<pre>- to type - to drink - well; very, quite - good - yawn</pre>
abril abrir acabar	- April - to open - to finish	due bom!	<pre>- good - that's good, I'm glad</pre>
aceitar achar	<ul><li>to accept</li><li>to think, to find</li></ul>	bonito	- good looking, pretty, attrac- tive
acontecer acordar acordado	<ul><li>to happen</li><li>to wake up</li><li>awake</li></ul>	<u>Brasil</u> <u>brasileiro</u>	- Brazil - Brazilian
agosto aí	- now - August - there	(c)	
ainda ainda não	- yet, still - not yet	cada cada uma	- each - the darnedest
Alemanha alguém aliás	<ul><li>Germany</li><li>anyone, someone</li><li>in fact, as a matter of fact,</li></ul>	café (m)	things - coffee - to fall
almoçar alô aluno amanhã	actually - to have lunch - hello, hi - student - tomorrow	calor (m) que calor! cansado cão (m) capital (m) caro	<pre>- heat - it surely is hot! - tired - dog - capital - expensive, dear</pre>
americano (-a) amigo anel (m) antes	<pre>- friend - ring - before, pre-</pre>	carro carta cartão casa	- car - letter - card - home, house
<u>ao</u>	viously - contraction: preposition a + article o = ao	casado catorze cedo centro	<ul><li>married</li><li>fourteen</li><li>early</li><li>downtown, center</li></ul>
aquele aqui assunto até	- that - here - subject, topic - until, as far as	<pre>chamar-se chefe (m) chegar</pre>	<ul><li>certainty</li><li>to be sure</li><li>to be called</li><li>boss</li><li>to arrive</li></ul>
atrapalhar atrasado	<ul><li>to confuse</li><li>late, behind schedule</li></ul>	chinês (m) que chinês!	- Chinese - what do you mean Chinese?
avenida azul	- avenue - blue	<pre>chover cidade cinco</pre>	<ul><li>to rain</li><li>city</li><li>five</li></ul>

			_
cinema (m)	- cinema, movies	dia (m)	- day
civil	- civil	<u>diálogo</u> difícil	<ul><li>dialog</li><li>difficult</li></ul>
<u>claro</u>	<ul><li>of course</li><li>with</li></ul>	dinheiro	- money
com comigo	- with me	diretamente	- directly
começar	- to begin, to	dirigir	- to drive
Começar	start	do	- contraction:
comemorar			<u>de</u> + <u>o</u> = <u>do</u>
comemorado	- celebrated	domingo	- Sunday
comer	- to eat	Dona	- Miss, Mrs.
comercial	<ul><li>commercial</li></ul>	dorminhoco	<ul><li>sleepyhead</li></ul>
<u>comida</u>	- food	<u>dormir</u>	- to sleep
como?	- how?	<u>doze</u>	- twelve
comprar	- to buy	dum	- contraction:
conhecer	- to know	J.,	$\frac{de + um}{de} = dum$
consular	- consular	duma	- contraction:
crianças	<ul><li>children</li><li>to cost</li></ul>		$\underline{de} + \underline{uma} = \underline{duma}$
custar	- to cost		
		(E)	
(D)		<b>\</b> /	
` '		•	- and
da.	- contraction:	<u>e</u> ela	- she
<u>da</u>	$\frac{de}{d} + \underline{a} = \underline{da}$	ele	- he
dançar	- to dance	em	- in, on, at
dar	- to give	em cima de	- on top of
<u>dá</u> para	- there's enough	Embaixada	- Embassy
<del></del>	(something) to	embaixo	- downstairs
<u>de</u>	- from, of	emprego	- job, work
<u>deitar-se</u>	<ul><li>to go to bed,</li></ul>	empresa	- company
	to lie down	empresa par	
<u>deixar</u>	- to let, to	<u>ticular</u>	<ul> <li>private company</li> </ul>
, ,	leave	ensinar	- to teach
<u>deixe-me</u>	- let me	então	- then
<u>dela</u>	- contraction:	<u>entrar</u>	- to enter, to come in, to go in
dele	<u>de + ela = dela</u> - contraction:	entre	- come in
dere	de + ele = dele	escrever	- to write
demais	- too, too much	escritório	- office
departamento	- department,	espanhol (m)	- Spanish
	section	esposa	- wife
depois	- after, later	esquecer	- to forget
logo depois	- right after-	essa, esse	- that
	wards	<u>esta, este</u>	- this
descansar	- to rest	<u>estado</u>	- state
desculpar		<u>estar</u>	- to be
desculpe	- excuse me	está	- he is
desde quand	- since	<u>estou</u> estão	- I am - they are
desde quano	<u>lo</u> - since when - ten	estudar	- to study
dezembro	- December	eu	- I
	2000		-

<pre>evitar evitável exame (m)</pre>	<ul><li>to avoid</li><li>avoidable</li><li>test, exam</li></ul>	gostoso gramática	<pre>- tasty; delightful - grammar</pre>
<b>(</b> F)		(H)	
fácil falar favor por favor fazer fazendo fazemos faz fazemos um passeio	- easy - to speak - please - to do, to make - doing, making - we do, we make - he makes, he does - we take a trip	haver há  história hoje hora que horas são? horrível hotel (m)	<pre>- there is, there are - history - today - hour - what time is it? - awful, terrible, horrible - hotel</pre>
está fazen- do calor a gente faz feriado festa fevereiro ficar filha filho filhos fim (m) fim de se- mana fome (f) fora formatura francês (-cesa) frente em frente  funcionário furar  (G)	- it is hot - we do, we make - holiday - party - February - to stay, to be - daughter - son - children - end - weekend - hunger - out, outside - graduation - French - front - across the - street, in - front - officer - to puncture	idéia iqualmente improvável inevitável Inglaterra inglês intervalo inventar ir vai vou vamos vão foi fui fomos indo ia vai ver que isso	- idea - likewise - improbable - unavoidable - England - English, English- man - break - to invent - to go - he goes - I go - we go - they go - he went - I went - we went - I went - we went - going - used to/would go, was going - maybe - that
gente (m)	<pre>- we, the people - we do, we make - kind, polite - to like</pre>	(J)  já janeiro	- already, yet - January

janela jantar jornal julho junho juntos  (L)	- window - to dine - newspaper - July - June - together	mesmo isso mesmo e mesmo meu minha môça montanha morar motel mudar muito	- that's right - he is indeed - my - my - girl, young woman - mountain - to live, to dwell - motel - to change - very, much
lá lá pela/pel	<pre>- there o- around about</pre>		
legal	- great!		
lembrar-se	- to remember	(N)	
lembre	- remember		
<u>ler</u>	- to read	<u>na</u>	- contraction:
<u>li</u>	- I read	_	$\underline{em} + \underline{a} = \underline{na}$
levantar	- to get up	<u>nada</u>	- nothing
levar	<ul><li>to take</li><li>lesson</li></ul>	não nascor	<ul><li>no, not</li><li>to be born</li></ul>
lição (f)	- book	<u>nascer</u> nela	- contraction:
local	- local		em + ela = nela
lógico		nele	- contraction:
<u>é lógico!</u>	- of course! no		em + ele = nele
_	wonder!	<u>no</u>	- contraction:
<u>logo</u>	- soon; right,	noite (f)	$\frac{\text{em} + \text{o}}{\text{night}} = \frac{\text{no}}{\text{o}}$
Londres	exactly - London	<u>noite</u> (f) nós	- night - we
longe	- far away	nos	- us, ourselves
201.90		nosso, -a	- our
		Nossa!	- Gee!
(M)		notar	- to notice
		notícias	- news
mãe	- mother	Nova York	<ul><li>New York</li><li>nine</li></ul>
maio	- May	<u>nove</u> novembro	- November
<u>mais</u>	- more	novo	- new
mandar	- to send	num	- contraction:
manhã (f)	<ul><li>morning</li><li>machine</li></ul>	<del></del>	em + um = num
<u>máquina</u> maravilhoso	- machine	numa	- contraction:
março	- March		em + uma = numa
mas	- but	nunca	- never
me	- me, myself		
meia-noite	- midnight	(o)	
meio-dia	- noon	V = /	
menino	- boy - girl	0	- the
menina menos	- giri - less	<u>o</u> obrigado	- thank you
mesa	- table	oi!	- hi!
		<del></del>	

```
- eight
                                     por que?
                                                    - why?
oito
olhar
                - to look
                                     porque
                                                    - because
  olhe
               - look
                                     porta
                                                    - door
                                     português
                                                    - Portuguese
onde
                where
                                                    - possible

    yesterday

                                     possível
ontem
                                                    - (a) little
               - eleven
onze
                                     pouco
                                     praia
oportunidade
               - opportunity
                                                    - beach
  (f)
                                                    - to practice
                                     praticar
ótimo
               - great, excellent prazer (m)
                                                    - pleasure
ou
               - or
                                     precisar
                                                    - to need
                - other
                                                    - to prefer
outro
                                     preferir
               - again
                                                    - to prepare
  outra vez
                                     preparar
outubro
                - October
                                     presidente (m)- president
                                                    - haste
                                     pressa
                                       <u>estar com</u>
(P)
                                        pressa

    to be in a hurry

                                     pretender
                                                    - to intend, plan
                                     procurar
                                                    - to look for
pais (m)
               - parents
                                     professor (-a) - teacher, professor
                 word
palavra
                                     proposito
pão (m)
                bread
                                       a proposito - by the way
papel (m)
                paper
                                     prova
                                                     - test, exam
                - to, for
para
                                     provável

    probable

parar
               - to stop
parecer
               - to seem
parque (m)
               park
                                     (Q)
particular
               private
passagem (f)
               ticket
               - to spend, to
                                                    - which?
                                     qual?
passar
                                     quando?
                                                    - when?
                  pass

    pleasure trip

                                     quantos (-as)?- how many?
passelo
                                                    - forty
pastel (m)
               - pastry, pie
                                     quarenta
                                     quarta-feira
                                                    - Wednesday
pela
               - contraction:
                                     quarto
                  por + a = pela
                                                    - quarter (hour)
pelo
               - contraction:
                                      <u>seis e um</u>
                                      quarto
                                                    - six-fifteen
                  por + o = pelo
pena
                 penalty
                                     quatro
                                                    - four

    What a shame!

  <u>Que pena</u>
                                     Que?
                                                    - What?
perder-se

    to get lost

                                       <u>0 que (é</u>
perto
                                         que)
                                                    - What?
               nearby
                                       Que tal?
péssimo
                 very bad, ter-
                                                    - How (about)?
                  rible
                                       Que bom
                                                    - How good!
pneu (m)
               tire
                                    que
                                                    - which, that
               - to be able
poder
                                                    - who?
                                    quem?
                                                    - to want, to wish
  posso
               - I can, I may
                                    querer
pois
               - so, then
                                       se você
político

    political

                                        quiser
                                                    if you wish
                                      quer
                                                    he wants
ponte (f)
               - bridge
                                    quinta-feira
                                                    - Thursday
ponto
  <u>as oito em</u>

    at eight o'clock quinze

                                                    - fifteen
    ponto
                 sharp
por
                - by, for
  <u>por</u> <u>favor</u>
               please
```

razão (f) ter razão receber refrigerante (m) reparar repetir reservar resfriado estar res- friado restaurante (m)	- reason - to be right - to receive - soft drink - to notice - to repeat - to reserve - cold - to have a cold - restaurant	sete setembro seu (o seu)  sexta-feira sim só solteiro (-a)  sono estar com sono sotaque (m) sua (a sua)  suficiente	- seven - September - your (masculine items) - Friday - yes - only - bachelor; single, unmarried - sleep - to be sleepy - accent - your (feminine items) - enough, sufficient
(s)		(T)	
sábado saber sei eu sei lá sair saio sala sanduíche (m) sapato se se seção (f) secretária seguro seis sem semana sempre senhor o senhor senhora a senhora sentar sente sentir  sinto muito ser é sou somos são era	- Saturday - to know - I know - I don't know - to leave - I leave - room - sandwich - shoes - oneself - if - section - secretary - Monday - insurance - six - without - week - always - mister - you - you - you - to sit - sit down - to regret, to feel - I am sorry - to be - he is - I am - we are - they are - used to/would be	também tanto tão tarde (f) tarde telefonar telefonema (m dar um telefonema ter tem tenho tenho que tive que tive que tiveram tinha  terça-feira terno todo (-s) tomar trabalhar trabalho tráfego três treze trinta tudo túnel (m)	- to make a phone

```
(U)
```

 um
 - one; a, an (with masculine items)

 uns
 - plural: some

 uma
 - one; a, an (with feminine items)

 umas
 - plural: some

 usar
 - to wear, to use

 útil
 - useful

## (v)

velho old vender - to sell - to see <u>ver</u> viu - he saw verdade (f) - truth vez (f) - time, turn outra vez - again às vezes - at times - to travel viajar vinte - twenty seis e vinte- 6:20 (time) <u>vinte e seis-</u> twenty six - to come vir - he comes vem vi<u>sit</u>ar - to visit vista - view viu? - you know? vocabulário - vocabulary você - you - to return voltar

## INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL

## AND TOPICAL FEATURES

Adjectives	Unit Number
demonstrative	3, 20
descriptive	10
ending in:	
- <u>ável</u> , - <u>ível</u>	24
- <u>oso</u> , - <u>osa</u>	24
stressed - <u>al</u>	17
stressed $-\underline{el}$ , $-\underline{ol}$	
- <u>il</u> , - <u>ul</u>	21
unstressed - <u>el</u> , - <u>il</u>	24
gender agreement	1, 2, 3, 10
possessive	
meu, minha	3, 11
nosso, nossa	3
Adverbs	
<u>jā</u> vs. <u>ainda</u> <u>não</u>	15
Articles	
definite	1, 9
with possessive pronouns	18
indefinite	7, 9
contractions with prepositions	10, 11, 13, 14, 16

Cognates	12
Ending in $-\underline{\tilde{a}o}$ and $-\underline{al}$	17, 20
False or misleading	20
Contractions	
prepositions with articles	10, 11, 13, 14, 16
Days of the week	18
Demonstratives	3, 20
Exclamations	20, 21
Exclamations	20, 21
Gender Agreement	1, 2, 3, 9, 10, 11
	2, 2, 3, 3, 20, 22
<u>gente</u>	18
gostar de	12
Greetings	1, 2, 20
Infinitive (neutral form)	5
<u>ir</u> plus infinitive	5

Leavetaking	2
mesmo	1, 19
Months	18
Names	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 22, 23
Negatives	
double	15
não	1
Numbers	11
Number agreement	11
Plurals	
articles and nouns	11
- <u>ão</u> to - <u>ões</u>	17, 20
-al to -ais	17, 20
stressed $-\underline{el}$ , $-\underline{ol}$ , $-\underline{il}$ , $-\underline{ul}$	21
unstressed -el, -il	24

Prepositions	
contractions	4, 10, 11, 13, 14, 16
<u>de</u>	
after <u>saır</u>	17
after <u>longe</u> , <u>perto</u>	13
Pronouns	
possessive	3, 11, 18
<u>ele, ela</u>	3, 8
eles, elas	8
o senhor, a senhora	2
<u>você</u>	7
<u>eu</u>	5
<u>nős</u>	7
Questions	7, 17
negative	12
with <u>é</u> <u>que</u>	7, 11
Reflexives	16
<u>ser/estar</u> contrast	10, 15
Tenses (see Verbs)	

ter que	12
Time expressions	5, 16
Verbs	
irregular forms	
cair	19
estar	10
ir	2, 8, 15
poder	6
querer	6
saber	15
sair	19
sentir	19
ser	2, 9, 15
ter	2, 11, 14, 15
I-, he-, we- forms (present)	7
They-forms (present)	8
- <u>ndo</u> forms	19
neutral forms (infinitives)	5
with <u>ir</u>	5
with <u>pretender</u>	5
with <u>querer</u>	6
with <u>poder</u>	6
reflexive forms	16

open <u>O</u> in - <u>ar</u> verbs						13	
open $\underline{E}$ and open $\underline{O}$ in $-\underline{ar}$							
and $-\underline{er}$ verbs						20	
quiser						7	
tenses							
present	7,	8,	12,	13,	15,	19	
past			14,	15,	16,	17	
'used to/would' forms				21,	22,	23	
Word Order							
Descriptive adjectives						10	
Verb + sim						1	

# An Instructor's Guide to the Accompanying Recordings

Much of the Portuguese that we have recorded on the accompanying tapes appears on the pages of the 25 units of this volume, but much does not. In order that instructors may have a visual reference to all taped material, we are offering on the following pages a guide to those recorded portions which do not appear in the units and which are not evident from context. For the most part, these portions consist of comprehension drills and practice exercises. The comprehension drills are given in their entirety. The practice exercises are occasionally abbreviated. We begin with Unit 8.

## Unit 8

#### A Look at the Grammar

## Part I.

## Practice 1:

1. pretendem 6. comem
2. querem 7. escolhem
3. devem 8. vendem
4. bebem 9. parecem
5. conhecem 10. descem

## Practice 2:

- 1. pretende/pretendem
- 2. deve/devem
- 3. conhece/conhecem
- 4. bebe/bebem
- 5. parece/parecem
- 6. desce/descem
- 7. vende/vendem
- 8. escolhe/escolhem
- 9. come/comem
- 10. quer/querem

## Practice 3:

1.	desce	6.	come
2.	descem	7.	querem
3.	pretendem	8.	vendem
4.	comem	9.	vende
5.	parece	10.	escolhem

## Practice 4:

- 1. comem
- 2. vendem
- 3. querem
- 4. parecem
- 5. pretendem
- 6. descem
- 7. bebem
- 8. devem
- 9. escolhem
- 10. conhecem

## Practice 5:

See Text

## Practice 6:

- A. 1. Eles querem comer.
  - 2. Eles querem sair.
  - 3. Eles querem levantar.
  - 4. Eles querem evitar o tráfego.
- B. 1. Elas pretendem comer.
  - 2. Elas pretendem sair.
  - 3. Elas pretendem chegar.
  - 4. Elas pretendem evitar o tráfego.
- C. 1. Vocês pretendem ficar?
  - 2. Vocês pretendem sair?
  - 3. Vocês pretendem levantar?
  - 4. Vocês pretendem falar?

- D. 1. Vocês podem vir.
  - 2. Vocês podem levantar.
  - 3. Vocês podem sair.
  - 4. Vocês podem comer.
- E. 1. Paulo e Yara pretendem sair cedo.
  - 2. Paulo e Roberto pretendem chegar cedo.
  - 3. Paulo e Roberto pretendem vir cedo.
  - 4. Yara e Maria pretendem levantar cedo.

### Practice 7:

- 1. Vocês pretendem ficar?
- 2. Vocês pretendem sair?
- 3. Vocês querem evitar o tráfego?
- 4. Vocês querem levantar cedo?
- 5. Eles querem ficar.
- 6. Eles querem comer.
- 7. Elas querem visitar o parque também.
- 8. Paulo e Yara querem visitar Washington também.
- 9. Yara e Maria podem levantar cedo.
- 10. Yara e Maria podem chegar cedo.
- 11. Yara e o Santos querem dar um telefonema.
- 12. Yara e o Santos podem evitar o tráfego.

#### Part II.

## Practice 8:

- A. 1. Nós vamos sair.
  - 2. Nós vamos chegar.
  - 3. Nós vamos ficar.
  - 4. Nós vamos falar.
- B. 1. Eles vão evitar o tráfego.
  - 2. Eles vão visitar.

- 3. Eles vão levantar.
- 4. Eles vão chegar.
- C. l. Eles vão visitar o parque.
  - 2. Elas vão visitar o parque.
  - 3. Eles vão evitar todo o tráfego.
  - 4. Elas vão evitar todo o tráfego.
- D. 1. Vamos dar um telefonema?
  - 2. Vamos evitar o tráfego?
  - 3. Vamos levantar tarde?
  - 4. Vamos ficar?

## Practice 9:

- 1. Nós vamos sair.
- 2. Nós vamos levantar.
- 3. Eles vão levantar.
- 4. Eles vão sair.
- 5. Nós vamos ficar.
- 6. Eles vão chegar.
- 7. Nós vamos levantar.
- 8. Eles vão ficar.
- 9. Eles vão sair.
- 10. Nós vamos chegar.
- 11. Eles vão levantar.
- 12. Eles vão chegar.

## Practice 10:

- 1. Nós vamos sair.
- 2. Nós vamos sair amanhã.
- 3. Nós vamos ficar.
- 4. Nós vamos ficar áte as dez.
- 5. Eles vão visitar o parque também.
- 6. Eles vão levantar às oito e meia.

- 7. Eles vão comer.
- 8. Eles vão dar um telefonema.
- 9. Nós vamos evitar o tráfego.
- 10. Nós vamos chegar lá bem cedo.
- 11. Nós vamos chegar às sete.
- 12. Eles vão chegar às oito e meia.

## Practice 11:

- A. 1. vou
  - 2. vou dar
  - 3. vou dar um telefonema
- B. l. vai
  - 2. vai comer
  - 3. você não vai comer?

## Practice 12:

- A. 1. Eu vou dar um telefonema.
  - 2. Eu vou sair cedo.
  - 3. Eu vou ficar.
  - 4. Eu vou visitar o parque.
- B. l. Ele vai falar.
  - 2. Ele vai comer.
  - 3. Ele vai levantar.
  - 4. Ele vai visitar o parque.
- C. 1. Yara vai chegar amanhã.
  - 2. Yara vai sair amanhã.
  - 3. Yara vai ficar.
  - 4. Yara vai dar um telefonema.

- D. 1. Você vai sair?
  - 2. Você vai levantar?
  - 3. Você vai visitar o parque?
  - 4. Você vai dar um telefonema?
- E. 1. Eu vou falar com o Santos.
  - 2. Eu vou sair com Yara.
  - 3. Eu vou ficar com você.
  - 4. Eu vou evitar o tráfego.
- F. 1. O Santos vai ficar?
  - 2. O Santos vai levantar?
  - 3. O Santos vai falar?
  - 4. O Santos vai visitar o parque?

## Practice 13:

- 1. Eu vou ficar.
- 2. Eu vou chegar.
- 3. Ele vai levantar.
- 4. Eu vou levantar.
- 5. Ele vai sair.
- 6. Ele vai ficar.

- 7. Eu vou sair.
- 8. Ele vai levantar.
- 9. Ele vai chegar.
- 10. Eu vou ficar.
- 11. Eu vou chegar.
- 12. Eu vou levantar.

## Practice 14:

- 1. Vou sair.
- 2. Vou sair agora.
- 3. Ele vai ficar.
- 4. Ele vai ficar até às dez.
- 5. Ele vai chegar tarde.
- 6. Vou chegar cedo.
- 7. Vou dar um telefonema.
- 8. Paulo vai evitar o tráfego.
- 9. Vou falar com Yara também.

- 10. Yara vai falar comigo.
- 11. Você vai falar com Paulo.
- 12. Você vai falar com Paulo?
- 13. Maria vai sair às oito e meia da manhã.
- 14. Maria vai sair com Roberto.
- 15. Maria vai levantar cedo?

#### Part III.

#### Practice 15:

1. É casada.

2. É solteira.

3. Éstá em casa.

4. Posso.

5. Conheço.

6. Vamos sair.

7. Pretendo levantar.

8. Quero visitar.

9. Ele quer ficar.

10. Eu vou comer.

11. Paulo pretende chegar.

12. Ela pode falar.

Não é casada.

Não é solteira.

Não está em casa.

Não posso.

Não conheço.

Não vamos sair.

Não pretendo levantar.

Não quero visitar.

Ele não quer ficar.

Eu não vou comer.

Paulo não pretende chegar.

Ela não pode falar.

## Practice 16:

1. Ouero.

Ouero levantar.

3. Posso.

4. Posso sair

5. Vamos.

6. Vamos ficar.

7. É o Santos.

8. Estou com fome.

9. Você conhece.

Não quero

Não quero levantar.

Não posso.

Não posso sair.

Não vamos.

Não vamos ficar.

Não é o Santos.

Não estou com fome.

Você não conhece.

10. Eu conheço.

ll. Ela quer.

12. Paulo está dançando.

Eu não conheço.

Ela não quer.

Paulo não está dançando.

## Practice 17:

- 1. Ele não está em casa.
- 2. Ela não é casada.
- 3. Ela não é a mais velha.
- 4. Eu não estou com fome.
- 5. Eu não posso.
- 6. Eu não posso sair.
- 7. Paulo não pode sair.
- 8. Paulo não pode levantar.
- 9. Ela não pode ficar.
- 10. Ela não quer ficar.
- 11. Ela não pretende ficar.
- 12. Ela não vai ficar.
- 13. Ela não vai comer.
- 14. Ele não vai chegar.
- 15. Eles não vão chegar.
- 16. Eles não vão falar.

#### Part IV.

#### Practice 18:

## Instructor A

- 1. Você quer?
- 2. Você quer sair?
- 3. Você pode?
- 4. Você pode ficar?
- 5. Você vai bem?
- 6. Você vai levantar?

#### Instructor B

Não, não quero.

Não, não quero.

Não, não posso.

Não, não posso.

Não, não vou.

Não, não vou.

7.	Você vai dar um telefonema?	Não, não vou.
8.	Você conhece Maria?	Não, não conheço.
9.	Você pretende visitar?	Não, não pretendo.
10.	Você pretende ficar?	Não, não pretendo.

## Practice 19: Repeat the questions above.

## Practice 20:

1.	José quer sair?	Não, não quer.
2.	José pretende sair?	Não, não pretende.
3.	José pretende dar um telefonema?	Não, não pretende.
4.	Maria está em casa?	Não, não está.
5.	Maria é solteira?	Não, não é.
6.	Maria vai levantar?	Não, não vai.
7.	Maria pode falar?	Não, não pode.
8.	Maria e José podem ficar?	Não, não podem.
9.	Maria e José querem sair?	Não, não querem.
10.	Eles querem levantar?	Não, não querem.
11.	Eles pretendem levantar?	Não, não pretendem.
12.	Elas vão chegar?	Não, não vão.
13.	Elas vão evitar o tráfego?	Não, não vão.
14.	José e Paulo pretendem falar?	Não, não pretendem.

Practice 21: Repeat the questions above.

## Comprehension

- 1. Eu vou visitar o parque amanhã.
- 2. Pretendo sair cedo.
- 3. Vou sair às sete da manhã.
- 4. Vou levantar muito cedo.
- 5. Isso mesmo. Vou levantar às cinco.
- 6. Não quero sair tarde.
- 7. Quero evitar todo o tráfego.
- 8. Vou evitar todo o tráfego.
- 9. Vou chegar cedo.
- 10. Quero chegar às oito e meia.
- 11. Não quero chegar tarde.
- 12. Não quero chegar às dez.
- 13. Vocês querem visitar o parque comigo?
- 14. Vocês podem levantar cedo também?
- 15. Vocês querem sair às sete da manhã?
- 16. Não, não queremos.
- 17. Não queremos levantar às cinco da manhã.
- 18. Não podemos levantar cedo.
- 19. Não vamos sair amanhã.
- 20. Não pretendemos visitar o parque.
- 21. Claro. Vocês não querem sair.
- 22. Vocês pretendem ficar em casa.
- 23. Vocês não querem levantar às cinco.
- 24. Maria e Yara querem levantar às cinco?
- 25. Não, não querem.
- 26. Elas não vão levantar cedo.
- 27. Porque não pretendem visitar o parque.

#### Translations

## I. Responding Affirmatively and Negatively

- Você vai levantar cedo?
   Vou, sim.
- Você vai levantar às sete?Não, não vou.
- Você var sair agora?Vou, sim.
- 4. A Yara vai ficar? Vai, sim.
- 5. A Yara vai falar com o José? Vai, sim.
- A Yara vai levantar cedo?
   Não, não vai.
- 7. Nós vamos comer bem? Vamos, sim.
- 8. Nós vamos evitar o trafego? Não, não vamos.
- Nós vamos chegar cedo? Vamos, sim.
- 10. Eles vão visitar o parque? Vão, sim.

- 11. Eles vão falar com você?
   Vão, sim.
- 12. Eles vão ficar?
   Não, não vão.
- 13. Eles pretendem ficar?
   Pretendem, sim.
- 14. Eles pretendem visitar o parque? Não, não pretendem.
- 15. Eles querem sair?
   Não, não querem.
- 16. Eles querem comer agora? Querem, sim.
- 17. Eles podem levantar cedo? Não, não podem.
- 18. Mas eles querem levantar cedo? Querem, sim.
- 19. Eles podem evitar o tráfego? Podem, sim.
- 20. Eles querem?
  Querem, sim.

II.

- 1. A. Você pretende sair cedo?
  - B. Não, não pretendo. Eu pretendo sair às dez.
- 2. A. Você vai sair agora?
  - B. Não, não vou. Eu vou ficar até às cinco.
- 3. A. A Yara vai levantar cedo?
  - B. Não, não vai. Ela vai levantar às dez.
- 4. A. Você quer visitar o parque?
  - B. Não, não quero. Eu quero ficar aqui.
- 5. A. Você quer falar com o Paulo?
  - B. Quero, sim. E eu quero falar com a Yara, também.
- 6. A. Você quer falar com a Yara?
  - B. Quero, sim. A Yara quer falar comigo?
- 7. A. O José vai sair com você?
  - B. Não, não vai. Ele vai sair com a Yara.
- 8. A. O José vai evitar o tráfego?
  - B. Vai, sim. Ele pretende sair cedo.
- 9. A. O José pode levantar cedo?
  - B. Não, não pode. Ele vai chegar tarde.
- 10. A. O José quer dar um telefonema?
  - B. Quer, sim. Ele quer falar com a Yara.

- 11. A. Nós vamos comer agora?
  - B. Não, não vamos. Nós vamos comer mais tarde.
  - A. Mas eu estou com fome agora.
- 12. A. Nós vamos comer agora?
  - B. Vamos, sim. Por que?
  - A. Porque eu estou com fome.
- 13. A. Nós vamos levantar às cinco e meia?
  - B. Não, não vamos. Por que?
  - A. Porque eu não posso levantar às 5, 30.
- 14. A. Nós podemos sair agora?
  - B. Não, não podemos. Nós vamos comer agora.
  - A. Eu não quero comer. Eu não estou com fome.

## Unit 9

## A Look at the Grammar

# Practice 1:

- 1. casa
- 2. festa
- 3. moça
- 4. filha
- 5. solteira
- 6. sala
- 7. comida
- 8. Maria

# Practice 2:

- 1. casa
- 2. festa
- 3. moça
- 4. filha.
- 5. solteira
- 6. sala
- 7. comida
- 8. Maria

# Practice 3:

- 1. carro
- 2. amigo
- 3. estado
- 4. Paulo
- 5. Roberto
- 6. americano
- 7. tráfego

# Practice 4:

- 1. carro
- 2. amigo
- 3. estado
- 4. Paulo
- 5. Roberto
- 6. americano
- 7. tráfego

# Practice 5:

- 1. festa
- 2. comida
- 3. solteira
- 4. amigo
- 5. estado
- 6. livro
- 7. casa
- 8. casaco
- 9. predio
- 10. rua
- 11. palestra
- 12. palacio
- 13. carro

# Practice 6:

- 1. a festa
- 2. a comida
- 3. a solteira
- 4. a moça
- 5. a filha
- 6. a mesa
- 7. a casa

- 14. amiga
- 15. terno
- 16. baia
- 17. janela
- 18. piloto
- 19. mesa
- 20. borracha
- 21. professora
- 22. ministro
- 23. bolo
- 24. jeito
- 25. cadeira
- 26. mala

# Practice 7:

- 1. o carro
- 2. o estado
- 3. o amigo
- 4. o saco
- 5. o americano
- 6. o medo
- 7. o tráfego

# Practice 8:

1. mesa

2. festa

3. comida

4. carro

5. amigo

6. solteira

7. americano

8. filha

9. estado

10. saco

11. casa

12. sala

13. medo

14. bolo

15. ano

16. tráfego

**1**7. bomba

18. moça

19. coisa

20. moço

21. lama

22. santa a mesa

a festa

a comida

o carro

o amigo

a solteira

o americano

a filha

o estado

o saco

a casa

a sala

o medo

o bolo

o ano

o tráfego

a bomba

a moça

a coisa

o moço

a lama

a santa

## Practice 9:

- 1. o carro
- 2. Ele quer o carro.
- 3. a casa
- 4. Ele quer a casa também.
- 5. Ele quer o carro e a casa.
- 6. a mesa
- 7. Ele quer a mesa também.
- 8. Quando é a festa?
- 9. A festa é amanhã.
- 10. Onde é que está a comida?
- 11. A comida está em cima da mesa.
- 12. Vamos evitar o tráfego.
- 13. O senhor conhece a moça?
- 14. O senhor conhece o americano?
- 15. O senhor conhece a Yara?
- 16. O senhor conhece o Paulo?
- 17. A Yara quer falar comigo.
- 18. O Paulo quer falar comigo.
- 19. O Santos está em Nova York.

# Practice 10:

- 1. uma comida
- 2. uma festa
- 3. uma solteira
- 4. uma moça
- 5. uma filha
- 6. uma mesa
- 7. uma casa

# Practice 11:

- 1. um carro
- 2. um amigo
- 3. um estado
- 4. um americano
- 5. um saco
- 6. um medo

# Practice 12:

- 1. um carro
- 2. um amigo
- 3. um estado
- 4. um americano
- 5. um saco
- 6. um medo
- 7. um tráfego

# Practice 13:

- 1. um carro
- 2. um amigo
- 3. o saco
- 4. o passo
- 5. o tráfego
- 6. um bairro
- 7. o estado
- 8. um bolo
- 9. um pico
- 10. o ovo
- 11. o ano
- 12. um americano

# Practice 14:

- 1. um carro
- 2. um estado
- 3. um amigo
- 4. um americano
- 5. um moço
- 6. um saco
- 7. o carro
- 8. o estado
- 9. o amigo
- 10. o americano
- 11. o moço
- 12. o saco

#### Practice 15:

- 1. uma sala
- 2. um amigo
- 3. uma filha
- 4. uma casa
- 5. Ele quer uma casa.
- 6. um carro
- 7. Ele quer um carro.
- 8. Ele quer um carro e uma casa.
- 9. uma mesa
- 10. Ele quer uma mesa também.
- 11. Nova York é um estado.
- 12. Nova York é uma cidade também.
- 13. um telefonema
- 14. Ele vai dar um telefonema.

## COMPREHENSION

- 1. Este é o meu carro.
- 2. Este é o meu estado.
- 3. Este é o meu amigo, Bill.
- 4. Bill é um bom amigo.
- 5. Bill é americano.
- 6. É do estado de Nova York.
- 7. Você conhece o estado?
- 8. Conheço, sim. Eu sou de lá também.
- 9. E Susana, de onde ela é?
- 10. Ela é de Boston.
- 11. E Bob, de onde ele é?
- 12. Éle é de Miami.
- 13. E eu? Eu sou de Pennsylvania.
- 14. Estou com fome. Não quero falar mais agora.

#### Translations

- A. 1. De onde o senhor é? Sou de Minnesota.
  - 2. De onde o Paulo é? Ele é de Minnesota também.
  - 3. De onde a Alice é? Ela é de Utah.
  - 4. E Kathy, de onde ela é? Ela é de Maryland.
  - 5. E o Bill, de onde ele é? Ele é de Vermont.
  - 6. O senhor é de Nova York? Sou, sim.
  - O Bill é de Nova York?
     É, sim.
  - 8. O Frank é de Nova York também? Não, não é.
  - 9. Ela é de Boston? Não, não é. Ela é de Detroit.

#### Unit 10

#### A Look at the Grammar

## Practice 1:

festa na festa casa na casa sala na sala

embaixada na embaixada cidade na cidade avenida na avenida manhã na manhã na mesa mesa casa na casa

Embaixada Americana na Embaixada Americana

semana na semana

# Practice 2:

carro no carro centro no centro tráfego no tráfego Rio no Rio Brasil no Brasil parque no parque estado no estado

# Practice 3:

carro no carro Brasil no Brasil casa na casa centro no centro embaixada

na embaixada

cidade Embaixada Americana na Embaixada Americana tráfego no tráfego sala na sala festa na festa mesa na mesa Rio no Rio parque no parque

na cidade

estado no estado telefonema no telefonema

semana na semana avenida na avenida

## Practice 4:

A

Onde você está? 1. Estou na sala. Onde você está? 2. Estou na Embaixada. 3. Onde você está? Estou no centro. 4. Onde você está? Estou no Brasil.

5. Onde você está? Estou na festa. 6. Onde você está? Estou no parque.

Onde você está? 7. Estou na Avenida Presidente Wilson.

В

8. Onde você está? Estou na cidade.

9. Onde você está? Estou aqui!

#### Practice 5: Repeat the above questions and answers.

## Practice 6:

1. Onde está o Paulo? Está no centro. 2. Onde está Yara? Está na festa.

3. Onde está o Senhor Silva? Está na Embaixada.

4. Onde está o Santos? Está aqui.

5.	Onde está a mesa?	Está na sala.
6.	Onde está o carro?	Está na avenida Presidente Wilson.
7.	Onde está a Maria?	Está no parque.
8.	Onde está o Carlos?	Está no Rio.
9.	Onde está José?	Está na cidade.

## Pra

10.	Onde	está	Roberto?	Está	no	Brasil.
cactice	<u>7</u> :					
1.	Onde	está	Yara?	Está	no	parque.
2.	Onde	está	Roberto?	Está	na	Embaixada.
3.	Onde	está	Paulo?	Está	na	sala.
4.	Onde	está	o Santos?	Está	na	cidade.
5.	Onde	está	o carro?	Está	no	centro.
6.	Onde	está	Carlos?	Está	aqı	ıi.
7.	Onde	está	José?	Está	no	Rio.
8.	Onde	está	a mesa?	Está	na	sala.
9.	Onde	está	o Senhor Silva?	Está	na	festa.
10.	Onde	está	Maria?	Está	no	Brasil.
11.	Onde	está	o carro?	Está Wil		Avenida Presidente

# Practice 8: (Not recorded)

# Practice 9:

- 1. Onde está o Paulo?
- 2. Onde está o carro?
- 3. Onde está o José?
- 4. Onde é a Embaixada?
- 5. Onde é a Avenida Presidente Wilson?
- 6. Onde está a Maria?
- 7. Onde está o meu amigo?
- 8. Onde é o Brasil?
- 9. Onde é a sala?
- 10. Onde está o tráfego?
- 11. Onde está a comida?

#### Practice 10:

- 1. Onde é que está o Paulo?
- 2. Onde é que está o carro?
- 3. Onde é que está o José?
- 4. Onde é que é a Embaixada?
- 5. Onde é que é a Avenida Presidente Wilson?
- 6. Onde é que está a Maria?
- 7. Onde é que está o meu amigo?
- 8. Onde é que é o Brasil?
- 9. Onde é que é a sala?
- 10. Onde é que está o tráfego?
- 11. Onde é que está a comida?

## Practice 11:

- 1. Onde é que está o Paulo?
- 2. Onde é que está o carro?
- 3. Onde é que está o José?
- 4. Onde é que é a Embaixada?
- 5. Onde é que é a Avenida Presidente Wilson?
- 6. Onde é que está a Maria?
- 7. Onde é que está o meu amigo?
- 8. Onde é que é o Brasil?
- 9. Onde é que é a sala?
- 10. Onde é que está o tráfego?
- 11. Onde é que está a comida?

## Practice 12: (Not recorded)

#### Practice 13:

1.	Você é americano?	Sou, sim.
2.	Você é de Washington?	Sou, sim.
3.	Você está em Washington?	Estou, sim.
4.	Você está em casa?	Eston sim

5. Você está com fome?

6. Yara está aqui?

7. Yara está na sala?

8. A Embaixada é no centro?

9. Essa moça é solteira?

Practice 14:

1. Você é americano?

2. Você é de Washington?

3. Você está em Washington?

4. Você está em casa?

5. Você está com fome?

6. Yara está aqui?

7. Yara está na sala?

8. A Embaixada é no centro?

9. Essa moça é solteira?

Estou, sim.

Está, sim.

Está sim.

É, sim.

É, sim.

Não, não sou.

Não, não sou.

Não, não estou.

Não, não estou.

Não, não estou.

Não, não está.

Não, não está.

Não, não é.

Não, não é.

## Practice 15:

1. numa casa

2. numa cidade

3. num carro

4. num estado

5. numa festa

6. numa avenida

7. numa embaixada

8. num parque

#### COMPREHENSION

- 1. Desde quando você está no Rio?
- 2. Desde quando você está na embaixada?
- 3. Estou aqui há cinco semanas.
- 4. Trabalho aqui há cinco semanas.
- 5. Estou no Rio há uma semana.
- 6. Estou em Washington há uma semana.
- 7. Paulo está em Washington há dez semanas.
- 8. Yara está no Rio há oito semanas.
- 9. Yara está na cidade há oito semanas.
- 10. Yara trabalha na cidade?
- 11. Yara trabalha no Rio?
- 12. Trabalha, sim. Há uma semana.
- 13. Bill é americano.
- 14. Bill é americano e trabalha na Embaixada Americana.
- 15. Eu sou americano e trabalho na Embaixada Americana.
- 16. Eu estou no Brasil e eu trabalho no Brasil.
- 17. Também Bill está no Brasil e ele trabalha no Brasil.
- 18. Bill trabalha no centro, e eu também trabalho no centro.

#### Translations

- I. Desde quando o senhor está em Washington? Estou aquí há uma semana.
  - Desde quando o senhor está no Brasil?
     Estou aqui há cinco semanas.
  - Desde quando a senhora está no Rio?
     Estou aqui há oito dias.
  - 4. A senhora trabalha na Embaixada Americana? Trabalho, sim.
  - 5. O senhor trabalha no centro? Trabalho, sim. A Embaixada é no centro.
  - O senhor trabalha com José?
     Não. Eu trabalho com Paulo.
  - 7. A Yara trabalha em Washington?

    Trabalha, sim. Ela trabalha no centro.
  - 8. O Bill trabalha em Washington?
    Não. Ele trabalha em Nova York.
  - 9. Eu trabalho em Washington. Onde é que a senhora trabalha? Eu trabalho em Washington também.
  - 10. Paulo trabalha na Embaixada. Onde é que a Yara trabalha? Ela trabalha na Embaixada também.
  - 11. O senhor vai trabalhar no Brasil?
     Claro! Eu vou trabalhar na Embaixada.
  - 12. Onde é que o senhor vai trabalhar? Eu vou trabalhar na Embaixada também.
  - 13. Eu vou trabalhar em São Paulo. Ah, sim? O senhor não vai trabalhar na Embaixada?
  - 14. A senhora também vai trabalhar em Brasília? Não, não vou. Eu vou trabalhar no Rio.

- 15. Nós vamos trabalhar no Rio, no Consulado Geral. Ah, é!? Eu vou trabalhar lá também.
- 16. Eles não vão ficar no Rio??!! Não, não vão.
- 17. Eles não vão trabalhar hoje.
  Por que não?
  Eles não querem.
- 18. Onde é a Embaixada Americana? É em Brasília.
- 19. Onde é que o José está? Ele está em casa.
- 20. Onde é que o Paulo está? Ele está numa festa.
- 21. Maria não está aqui. Onde é que ela está? Ela vai ficar em casa hoje.
- 22. O Bill vai chegar amanhã? Vai, sim. Muito cedo.
- 23. Quando é que a Sandra vai chegar? Ela vai chegar hoje.

#### II.

- A. l. Nós não vamos sair agora.
  - 2. Nós vamos sair mais tarde.
  - 3. Nós vamos sair ás dez horas.
  - 4. Nós vamos evitar o tráfego.
- B. 1. Nós não vamos chegar às oito.
  - 2. Nós vamos chegar cedo.
  - 3. Nós vamos chegar às sete e meia.

- C. 1. Eu quero ficar aqui.
  - 2. Eu vou ficar aqui até amanhã.
  - 3. Eu vou sair amanhã.
  - 4. E eu vou sair cedo, às sete e meia.
- D. 1. Yara quer visitar o parque.
  - 2. Mas ela não quer visitar o parque hoje.
  - 3. Ela não pode visitar o parque hoje.
  - 4. Mas ela pode visitar o parque amanhã.
  - 5. E ela vai visitar o parque amanhã.
- E. 1. Eu não quero levantar cedo.
  - 2. Eu não quero levantar às sete!
  - 3. Eu não posso levantar às sete!
  - 4. Eu quero levantar às dez.
  - 5. E eu vou levantar às dez!
- F. l. Eu quero evitar o tráfego, claro.
  - 2. Mas eu não quero levantar às sete.
  - 3. Eu vou levantar às dez.
  - 4. Eu vou sair às dez e meia.
  - 5. E eu vou evitar o tráfego!
- G. 1. Eles querem sair agora.
  - 2. Eles não querem sair mais tarde.
  - 3. Eles vão sair agora.

## Unit 11

## A Look at the Grammar

# Part I

# Practice 1:

- as festas
- as casas
- os carros
- os parques
- as cidades
- as crianças
- os telefonemas
- as semanas
- as filhas
- os filhos
- as salas

# Practice 2:

- os amigos
- os americanos
- as embaixadas
- as mesas
- as moças
- os estados
- as vistas
- as esposas
- os meninos
- as meninas
- as avenidas
- as manhãs

## Practice 3:

- 1. o carro
- 2. o telefonema
- 3. a filha
- 4. a cidade
- 5. a semana
- 6. o parque
- 7. a casa
- 8. a sala
- 9. o centro
- 10. o filho
- 11. a mesa
- **--**: a mosa
- 12. o estado
- 13. a embaixada
- 14. a avenida
- 15. o menino
- 16. a vista
- 17. a manhã
- 18. a moça
- 19. o amigo
- 20. o americano

# Practice 4:

# Group 1.

uns parques
umas salas
umas festas
uns carros
umas cidades
uns telefonemas
umas casas
umas filhas
uns centros

## Group 2.

uns estados
umas avenidas
umas vistas
umas moças
uns amigos
umas embaixadas
umas esposas
uns meninos
uns americanos

# Practice 5:

- 1. uma festa
- 2. um carro
- 3. uma cidade
- 4. uma semana
- 5. um parque
- 6. uma filha
- 7. uma casa
- 8. um telefonema
- 9. uma sala

- 10. um estado
- 11. uma embaixada
- 12. uma vista
- 13. um menino
- 14. uma esposa
- 15. um amigo
- 16. um americano
- 17. uma mesa
- 18. uma menina

# Practice 6:

- 1. os parques
- 2. os estados
- 3. as casas
- 4. as mesas
- 5. os amigos
- 6. os americanos
- 7. as vistas
- 8. as cidades
- 9. os telefonemas
- 10. umas festas
- 11. uns carros
- 12. umas cidades
- 13. umas meninas
- 14. umas esposas
- 15. uns parques
- 16. uns estados
- 17. umas manhãs
- 18. uns amigos

# Practice 7:

- 1. nos estados
- 2. nas embaixadas
- 3. nas cidades
- 4. nas festas
- 5. nos carros
- 6. nos parques
- 7. nas mesas
- 8. nuns estados
- 9. numas embaixadas
- 10. numas cidades
- 11. numas festas
- 12. nuns carros
- 13. nuns parques
- 14. numas casas

# Practice 8:

- 1. na festa
- 2. no carro
- 3. na casa
- 4. no parque
- 5. no estado
- 6. na embaixada
- 7. na avenida
- 8. numa festa
- 9. num carro
- 10. numa casa
- 11. numa avenida
- 12. num parque
- 13. numa embaixada
- 14. num estado

## Part II

## Practice 9:

## Instructor A

- 1. Quantos filhos você tem?
- 2. Quantos carros você tem?
- 3. Quantas filhas você tem?
- 4. Quantas casas você tem?
- 5. Quantas semanas você tem?
- 6. Ouantos meninos você tem?
- 7. Quantos amigos você tem?

## Instructor B

Tenho quatro.

Tenho dois.

Tenho três.

Tenho uma.

Tenho duas.

Tenho um.

Tenho muitos.

## Practice 10:

- 1. Quantos filhos você tem?
- 2. Quantos carros você tem?
- 3. Quantas filhas você tem?
- 4. Quantas casas você tem?
- 5. Quantas semanas você tem?
- 6. Ouantos meninos você tem?
- 7. Quantos amigos você tem?

## Practice 11:

- 1. Ouantas filhas você tem?
- Quantas crianças você tem?
- 3. Quantos carros você tem?
- 4. Quantos amigos você tem?
- 5. Quantas salas você tem?
- 6. Quantas casas você tem?
- 7. Quantos meninos você tem?
- 8. Quantas festas você tem?

## Practice 12:

A. o meu amigo

o meu carro

o meu filho

o meu menino

a minha esposa

a minha filha

a minha sala

a minha casa

o meu telefonema

a minha vista

B. os meus amigos

os meus carros

os meus filhos

os meus meninos

as minhas filhas

as minhas casas

as minhas vistas

# Practice 13:

1. a minha festa

2. a minha sala

3. o meu carro

4. a minha filha

5. a minha esposa

6. o meu amigo

7. os meus amigos

8. o meu menino

9. os meus meninos

10. a minha menina

11. as minhas meninas

12. a minha casa

13. os meus carros

14. o meu estado

15. as minhas crianças

16. a minha vista

17. a minha cidade

18. o meu telefonema

# Practice 14:

dois filhos

dois carros

dois parques

dois estados

dois americanos

duas cidades

duas salas

duas casas

duas semanas

duas embaixadas

# Part III

# Practice 15:

- 1. da embaixada
- 2. da filha
- 3. do carro
- 4. do amigo
- 5. da semana
- 6. do americano
- 7. das crianças
- 8. das cidades
- 9. dos estados
- 10. das esposas
- 11. das embaixadas
- 12. dos parques
- 13. dum amigo
- 14. duma embaixada
- 15. duma esposa
- 16. dum menino
- 17. duma cidade
- 18. duma filha
- 19. dumas moças
- 20. dumas esposas
- 21. duns amigos
- 22. duns americanos
- 23. duns estados
- 24. dumas crianças

# Practice 16:

- O que é que você acha do Rio?
- O que é que você acha da sala?

## Practice 17:

- 1. O que é que você acha do Rio?
- 2. O que é que você acha do carro?
- 3. O que é que você acha da sala?
- 4. O que é que você acha da cidade?
- 5. O que é que você acha da embaixada?
- 6. O que é que você acha do centro?
- 7. O que é que você acha do parque?
- 8. O que é que você acha das crianças?
- 9. O que é que você acha dos americanos?
- 10. O que é que você acha das moças?
- 11. O que é que você acha das vistas?
- 12. O que é que você acha das cidades?
- 13. O que é que você acha dos meninos?
- 14. O que é que você acha das festas?

#### Comprehension

- 1. O José é casado?
- 2. A Yara é casada?
- 3. O Jošé não é casado.
- 1. O Santos é casado.
- 5. Ele tem esposa e quatro filhos.
- 6. Ele tem três meninos e uma menina.
- 7. Ele não tem filhos.
- 8. Ela também não tem filhos.
- 9. E você? Quantos filhos você tem?
- 10. Não tenho. Não sou casado.
- 11. O que é que você acha do Rio?
- 12. Você gosta?
- 13. Não, não gosto.
- 14. A cidade é muito velha.
- 15. A minha esposa está em Nova York agora.
- 16. Ela vai chegar amanhã.
- 17. Tenho dois filhos.
- 18. Tenho duas filhas.
- 19. A minha menina está aqui.
- 20. O meu menino está em casa.
- 21. A minha esposa quer ficar com as crianças.

- As crianças querem ficar com a minha esposa . 22.
- As crianças podem ficar com a minha esposa. 23.
- 24. O menino pode ficar com a minha esposa.
- A menina não pode ficar comigo.
- 25. 26. A minha esposa quer ficar só até às dez.
- 27. O que é que você acha do Brasil?
- 28. O que é que você acha da minha festa?
- 29. O que é que você acha das minhas crianças?
- O que é que ele acha do meu carro?
- 30. 31. O que é que ela acha de Nova York?
- 32. O que é que ela acha da casa?
- 33. O que é que ela acha do Senhor Silva?

## Unit 12

## A Look at the Grammar

## Part I.

# Practice 1:

posso tenho pretendo quero falo trabalho gosto

## Practice 2:

A. fala trabalha nota gosta atrapalha

acha

B. pretende
 pode

## Practice 3:

ficar
falar
levantar
visitar

chegar evitar praticar

# Practice 4:

fico falo levanto visito

chego evito pratico

# Practice 5:

fica chega fala evita levanta pratica

visita

# Practice 6:

l. ficar fico fica

- 2. falar falo fala
- 3. levantar levanto levanta
- 4. visitar visito visita
- 5. chegar chego chega
- 6. evitar evito evita
- 7. praticar pratico pratica
- 8. trabalhar trabalho trabalha

## Practice 7:

7. evito

8. pratica 1. chego 2. chega 9. fico 3. visita 10. falo 4. praticar 11. levanta 5. evitar 12. trabalho 6. levanto 13. fica

14. visitar

# Practices 8 - 11: See Text.

## Practice 12:

# Instructor A

- 1. Você fala português?
- 2. Você pratica português?
- 3. Você pratica inglês?
- 4. Você trabalha aqui?
- 5. Você fica na cidade?
- 6. Você levanta cedo?
- 7. Você chega tarde?
- 8. Você gosta?
- 9. Você evita o tráfego?
- 10. Você nota um sotaque?

## Instructor B

Falo, sim.

Pratico, sim.

Não, não pratico.

Trabalho, sim.

Não, não fico.

Não, não levanto.

Não, não chego.

Gosto, sim.

Evito, sim.

Não, não noto.

#### Practice 13:

## Instructor A

- 1. Yara fala inglês?
- 2. O Paulo fica na cidade?
- 3. A Maria levanta tarde?
- 4. O Santos fala espanhol?
- 5. O senhor Silva trabalha no Rio?
- 6. Ele gosta?
- 7. Ela pratica muito?
- 8. Carlos visita o Paulo muito?
- 9. O espanhol atrapalha muito?
- 10. A Maria chega cedo?

#### Instructor B

Não, não fala.

Não, não fica.

Não, não levanta.

Fala, sim.

Trabalha, sim.

Não, não gosta.

Pratica, sim.

Visita, sim.

Atrapalha, sim.

Não, não chega.

## Practice 14:

- 1. Você fala português?
- 2. Você fica até às dez?
- 3. Você levanta cedo?
- 4. Você gosta?
- 5. Você trabalha em Washington?
- 6. Você nota um sotaque?
- 7. Você pratica muito?
- 8. Você evita o tráfego?
- 9. Você chega às nove?
- 10. Você fica com o Paulo?

## Practice 15:

Example: Ask me if I speak English.

Você fala inglês?

- 1. Ask me if I practice English.
- 2. Ask me if I practice a lot.
- 3. Ask me if I like it.
- 4. Ask me if I get up at seven.
- 5. Ask me if I notice an accent.
- 6. Ask me if I work here.
- 7. Ask me if I arrive early.
- 8. Ask me if I am staying until five.
- 9. Ask me if Paul is staying until five.
- 10. Ask me if Paul works in Rio.
- 11. Ask me if Paul speaks English.
- 12. Ask me if Paul gets up early.
- 13. Ask me if Paul avoids the traffic.
- 14. Ask me if Paul practices a lot.
- 15. Ask me if Paul arrives at eight.

Você pratica inglês?

Você pratica muito?

Você gosta?

Você levanta às sete?

Você nota um sotaque?

Você trabalha aqui?

Você cheqa cedo?

Você fica até às cinco?

Paulo fica até às cinco?

Paulo trabalha no Rio?

Paulo fala inglês?

Paulo levanta cedo?

Paulo evita o tráfego?

Paulo pratica muito?

Paulo chega às oito?

## Practice 20:

- 1. Gosto de falar.
- 2. Gosto de comer.
- 3. Gosto de sair cedo.
- 4. Gosto de ficar até tarde.
- 5. Gosto de falar português.
- 6. Gosto de evitar o tráfego.
- 7. Gosto de chegar cedo.
- 8. Gosto de visitar Washington.
- 9. Gosto de praticar português.
- 10. Gosto de trabalhar aqui.

## Practice 21:

- 1. Não gosto de levantar cedo.
- 2. Não gosto de falar espanhol.
- 3. Não gosto de praticar inglês.
- 4. Não gosto de chegar às sete.
- 5. Não gosto de visitar o Paulo.
- 6. Não gosto de sair cedo.
- 7. Não gosto de falar com um sotaque espanhol.
- 8. Não gosto de trabalhar em Washington.
- 9. Não gosto de ficar em Nova York.
- 10. Não gosto de atrapalhar você.

## Practice 22:

- 1. Paulo gosta da embaixada.
- 2. Paulo gosta da cidade.
- 3. Paulo gosta do centro.
- 4. Paulo gosta da Maria.
- 5. Paulo gosta do Carlos.
- 6. Paulo gosta do Rio.
- 7. Paulo gosta do Brasil.

- 8. Paulo gosta dos meus amigos.
- 9. Paulo gosta da minha vista.
- 10. Paulo gosta da minha casa.
- 11. Paulo gosta do carro.
- 12. Paulo gosta da minha filha.
- 13. Paulo gosta do menino.

## Practice 23:

- 1. A Maria não gosta do Bill.
- 2. A Maria não gosta da Yara.
- 3. A Maria não gosta do tráfego.
- 4. A Maria não gosta da festa.
- 5. A Maria não gosta do meu carro.
- 6. A Maria não gosta da minha esposa.
- 7. A Maria não gosta da comida.
- 8. A Maria não gosta do parque.
- 9. A Maria não gosta da sala.
- 10. A Maria não gosta da vista.
- 11. A Maria não gosta do meu filho.
- 12. A Maria não gosta das minhas festas.
- 13. A Maria não gosta da menina.

## Practice 24:

- 1. Você gosta do Brasil?
- 2. Você gosta da cidade?
- 3. Você gosta de falar português?
- 4. Você gosta de chegar cedo?
- 5. Você gosta de levantar cedo?
- 6. Você gosta da vista?
- 7. Você gosta das crianças?
- 8. Você gosta do carro?
- 9. Você gosta de trabalhar aqui?
- 10. Você gosta da comida?

#### Part III.

## Practice 25:

- 1. Tenho que falar.
- 2. Tenho que praticar.
- 3. Tenho que levantar.
- 4. Tenho que ficar.
- 5. Tenho que trabalhar.
- 6. Tenho que sair.
- 7. Tenho que visitar.
- 8. Tenho que comer.
- 9. Tenho que dar um telefonema.

## Practice 26:

- 1. A Maria tem que levantar.
- 2. A Maria tem que praticar.
- 3. O Paulo tem que falar português.
- 4. O Paulo tem que ficar.
- 5. O Santos tem que sair cedo.
- 6. Ele tem que trabalhar.
- 7. Bill tem que comer.
- 8. Ela tem que evitar o tráfego.
- 9. Ela tem que chegar cedo.

#### Practice 27:

- 1. Você tem que sair?
- 2. Você tem que trabalhar?
- 3. Você tem que praticar?
- 4. Você tem que ficar?
- 5. Você tem que levantar?
- 6. Você tem que falar inglês?
- 7. Você tem que dar um telefonema?
- 8. Você tem que vir?
- 9. Você tem que chegar cedo?

## Practice 28:

- 1. Tenho que trabalhar mais.
- 2. Tenho que praticar mais.
- 3. Tenho que levantar às seis.
- 4. Ela tem que levantar às sete.
- 5. Ela tem que sair cedo.
- 6. Eu tenho que sair cedo também.
- 7. Eu tenho que comer menos.
- 8. O Paulo tem que comer mais.
- 9. O Paulo tem que praticar espanhol.
- 10. Yara tem que trabalhar hoje.
- 11. Você tem que trabalhar amanhã?
- 12. Tenho que chegar cedo amanhã.
- 13. Tenho que falar português na Embaixada.
- 14. O Carlos tem que vir às cinco.
- 15. Mas ele tem que ficar até às dez.

#### Part IV.

## Practice 29:

- A. l. Ela não é casada?
  - 2. Ele não é americano?
  - 3. Você não é a mais velha?
- B. l. Ela não é solteira?
  - 2. Ele não é de Nova York?
  - 3. Ele não é português?
  - 4. Ele não é inglês?
  - 5. Você não é casado?
  - 6. Você não é solteira?
  - 7. Ele não está em casa?
  - 8. Ela não está na Embaixada?

## Practice 30:

- A. 1. Você não vai comer?
  - 2. Você não vai trabalhar?
  - 3. Você não pretende sair?
  - 4. Ele não pretende chegar cedo?
  - 5. Ele não quer chegar cedo?
  - 6. Ele não tem que chegar amanhã?
- B. 1. Você não vai sair?
  - 2. Você não vai levantar?
  - 3. Você não vai dar um telefonema?
  - 4. Éle não vai trabalhar?
  - 5. Ele não quer trabalhar?
  - 6. Ela não quer ficar?
  - 7. Ela não tem que ficar?
  - 8. Yara não tem que trabalhar?
  - 9. Yara não pretende trabalhar?

## Practice 31:

- A. 1. Você não nota um sotaque espanhol?
  - 2. Você não trabalha em Washington?
  - 3. Você não fala espanhol?
  - 4. Ele não fala português?
  - 5. Ela não pratica muito?
- B. 1. Você não chega cedo?
  - 2. O Bill não chega cedo?
  - 3. O Paulo não fica até às cinco?
  - 4. O Paulo não gosta do Rio?
  - 5. Você não gosta da Yara?
  - 6. A Yara não gosta de você?
  - 7. O espanhol não atrapalha?
  - 8. Voce não nota um sotaque inglês?

## Comprehension

- 1. Você não tem um sotaque americano.
- 2. Você não fala com um sotaque inglês.
- 3. Ela fala com muito sotaque.
- 4. Ela fala com pouco sotaque.
- 5. Ela tem pouco sotaque.
- 6. Ela tem que praticar mais.
- 7. Ela não tem muita oportunidade de falar.
- 8. Mas o Bill pode falar todos os dias.
- 9. Ele tem que falar na Embaixada.
- 10. Ele também fala espanhol.
- 11. E o espanhol atrapalha um pouco.
- 12. A grámatica atrapalha, e as palavras também.
- 13. Eu tenho que levantar cedo todos os dias.
- $1^{\frac{1}{4}}$ . Eu não quero levantar cedo mas eu tenho que levantar cedo.
- 15. Eu levanto cedo porque eu tenho que sair cedo.
- 16. Eu não gosto de sair cedo.
- 17. Eu tenho que chegar no escritório às oito.
- 18. Eu trabalho na Embaixada Americana no Rio.
- 19. E tenho muita oportunidade de falar português.
- 20. Também tenho muita oportunidade de falar inglês.
- 21. Mas eu não posso falar espanhol na Embaixada.
- 22. Eu não noto sotaque espanhol.
- 23. Yara só fala um pouco de inglês.
- 24. Ela não gosta de falar inglês.
- 25. Ela evita falar inglês.
- 26. Mas o Santos não evita falar inglês. Ele fala muito.
- 27. Se você quiser você pode falar inglês com ele.
- 28. Eu chego no escritório todos os dias às nove.
- 29. Maria chega às oito.
- 30. Ela trabalha até às cinco.
- 31. Ela tem que trabalhar até às cinco.

#### Unit 13

#### A Look at the Grammar

# Part I

# Practice 1:

fala

mora

gosta

levanta

pratica

trabalha

ele fala

ele evita

ela mora

ela nota

o senhor chega

o senhor visita

# Practice 2:

2.

chega 1.

3. moram

falam

4.

evita

5. notam 6. trabalham

7. mora

8. fala

falam 9.

10. practicam

B

Gostam, sim.

# Practice 3:

### A

Eles gostam da cidade?

Elas falam bem? Falam, sim. 1. 2. Elas trabalham muito? Trabalham, sim. 3. Elas moram perto? Moram, sim. 4. Elas chegam cedo? Não, não chegam. 5. Eles praticam aqui? Praticam, sim. 6. Eles levantam cedo? Não, não levantam. 7. Eles ficam no Rio? Não, não ficam.

# Practice 4:

8.

1. Eles gostam da vista? Gostam, sim. 2. Eles trabalham na cidade? Trabalham, sim. 3. Eles moram em Washington? Moram, sim. 4. Eles praticam muito? Praticam, sim. 5. Eles levantam às sete? Levantam, sim. 6. Éles falam inglês em casa? Falam, sim. 7. Eles ficam aqui? Ficam, sim.

## Practice 5:

- 1. Eles moram no Rio?
- 2. Eles gostam do Rio?
- 3. Eles trabalham no Rio?
- 4. Eles falam português?
- 5. Eles levantam tarde?
- 6. Eles chegam cedo?
- 7. Éles praticam em casa?
- 8. Éles ficam no escritório?

# Part II Practice 6

# <u>A</u>

Os senhores trabalham aqui? Trabalhamos, sim. 2. Os senhores praticam muito? Praticamos, sim. 3. Os senhores falam inglês? Falamos, sim. 4. Os senhores notam um sotaque? Notamos, sim. 5. Os senhores chegam cedo? Não, não chegamos. 6. Os senhores evitam o túnel? Evitamos, sim. 7. Os senhores moram com José? Não, não moramos. 8. Os senhores gostam da gramática? Não, não gostamos.

<u>B</u>

В

Levantamos às sete.

Ficamos em Nova York.

## Practice 7

#### A

Os senhores trabalham em Nova 1. York ou em Washington? Trabalhamos em Washingto 2. Os senhores chegam cedo ou tarde? Chegamos tarde, 3. Os senhores praticam muito ou pouco? Praticamos pouco. Os senhores moram longe ou perto? Moramos perto. 5. Os senhores gostam de falar ou de comer? Gostamos de comer. Os senhores falam espanhol ou inglês? Falamos inglês. 7. Os senhores levantam às oito

# Practice 8 (Not Recorded)

Os senhores ficam aqui ou em

ou às sete?

Nova York?

#### Part III

## Practice 9:

- 1. Acho que vou sair.
- 2. Acho que ele está cansado.
- 3. Acho que vou gostar dela.
- 4. Acho que está chovendo outra vez.
- 5. Acho que vai chover.
- 6. Acho que ele está resfriado.
- 7. Acho que eles moram no Leme.
- 8. Acho que eles trabalham no Leme.

## Practice 10:

- 1. Acho que ela está com fome.
- 2. Acho que ele é casado.
- 3. Acho que ele é americano.
- 4. Acho que ele conhece a Maria.
- 5. Acho que ele trabalha em Washington.
- 6. O senhor acha que ela fala portugês?
- 7. O senhor acha que ela é casada?
- 8. O senhor acha que ela tem sotaque?
- 9. O senhor acha que ela tem que praticar?
- 10. O senhor acha que ela pretende ficar?
- 11. Achamos que eles moram perto.
- 12. Achamos que eles falam inglês.

- 13. Achamos que ela é casada.
- 14. Achamos que ela é do Texas.
- 15. Achamos que vai chover.

## Practice 11:

- 1. Parece que a festa é amanhã.
- 2. Parece que Yara está com fome.
- 3. Parece que Yara conhece a cidade bem.
- 4. Parece que Yara pode falar bem.
- 5. Parece que Yara não pode chegar cedo.
- 6. Parece que não vai chover hoje.
- 7. Parece que está chovendo agora.

#### Part IV

#### Practice 12:

- a. 1. Onde é que o senhor mora?
  - 2. Onde é que o senhor trabalha?
  - 3. Onde é que o senhor pratica?
  - 4. Onde é que o senhor fica?
  - 5. Onde é que o senhor pretende ficar?
  - 6. Onde é que o senhor pretende estar?
  - 7. Onde é que o senhor quer estar?
- b. 1. Porque é que o senhor trabalha em Washington?
  - 2. Porque é que o senhor mora no Leme?
  - 3. Porque é que o senhor pratica todo o dia?
  - 4. Porque é que o senhor evita o túnel?
  - 5. Porque é que o senhor chega cedo?
  - 6. Porque é que o senhor quer chegar cedo?
  - 7. Porque é que o senhor vai chegar cedo?
- c. 1. Quando é que o senhor pratica?
  - 2. Quando é que o senhor levanta?
  - 3. Quando é que o senhor chega?

- 4. Quando é que o senhor pretende chegar?
- 5. Quando é que o senhor quer chegar?
- 6. Quando é que o senhor quer sair?
- 7. Quando é que o senhor tem que sair?
- d. 1. O que é que o senhor acha?
  - 2. O que é que o senhor acha da comida?
  - 3. O que é que o senhor acha do Rio?
  - 4. O que é que o senhor quer?
  - 5. O que é que o senhor quer ser?
  - 6. O que é que o senhor tem?
  - 7. O que é que o senhor tem que praticar?
  - 8. O que é que o senhor gosta?
  - 9. O que é que o senhor gosta de comer?

# Practice 13:

- 1. perto do carro
- 2. perto da avenida
- 3. perto das embaixadas
- 4. perto do túnel
- 5. perto dum túnel
- 6. perto duma cidade
- 7. perto das cidades
- 8. perto dumas cidades
- 9. perto do Rio
- 10. longe do Rio
- 11. longe do Brasil
- 12. longe da cidade
- 13. longe da minha esposa
- 14. longe das crianças
- 15. longe dos americanos
- 16. longe do meu carro
- 17. longe dos meus amigos
- 18. longe da embaixada

#### Comprehension

- Estou um pouco resfriado.
- José está um pouco resfriado.
- José se sente um pouco cansado.
- Eu estou muito cansado.
- O senhor se sente bem?
- 5. 6. O senhor se sente cansado?
- O senhor ainda está resfriado?
- 8. O senhor está com fome?
- 9. Está chovendo ainda?
- 10. Parece que está chovendo outra vez.
- 11. Parece que vai chover amanhã.
- 12. Parece que não vai chover hoje.
- **1**3. O senhor acha que vai chover hoje?
- 14. O senhor acha que eles moram longe?
- **1**5. Moram perto do túnel.
- 16. Trabalham longe da cidade.
- 17. O túnel fica perto.
- 18. O túnel fica perto da Embaixada Americana.
- Eu moro perto da Yara. **1**9.
- 20. £ perto?
- 21. Não, não é perto. É longe.
- Onde as senhoras trabalham? 22.
- 23. Onde a senhora pratica inglês?
- 24. Onde a senhora está?
- 25. 26. Estou no Leme.
- É lógico. O tráfego está horrível hoje.

Unit 14

#### A Look at the Grammar

# Part I.

## Practice 1:

- 1. estudei
- 2. falei
- 3. pratiquei
- 4. notei
- 5. gostei
- 6. levantei

- 7. evitei
- 8. visitei
- 9. chequei
- 10. trabalhei
- 11. passei
- 12. preparei

## Practice 2:

- 1. estudou
- 2. falou
- 3. praticou
- 4. notou
- 5. gostou
- 6. levantou

- 7. evitou
- 8. visitou
- 9. chegou
- 10. trabalhou
- 11. passou
- 12. preparou

# Practice 3:

- 1. cheqou
- 2. chequei
- 3. estudou
- 4. levantou
- 5. trabalhei
- 6. falei
- 7. notou

- 8. gostou
- 9. trabalhou
- 10. pratiquei
- ll. visitei
- 12. morou
- 13. achei
- 14. achou

# Practice 4:

- 1. falou
- 2. falo
- 3. trabalhou
- 4. levanto
- 5. chego
- 6. chegou
- 7. visitou

- 8. visito
- 9. fico
- 10. ficou
- 11. estudo
- 12. estudou
- 13. chego
- 14. gostou

# Practice 5:

- 1. eu falei
- 2. eu chequei
- 3. ele chegou
- 4. Paulo chegou
- 5. Paulo levantou
- 6. Maria levantou
- 7. Yara estudou
- 8. ela trabalhou
- 9. eu trabalhei
- 10. eu estudei
- 11. a menina estudou
- 12. a menina ficou
- 13. você falou
- 14. o senhor falou
- 15. o senhor praticou
- 16. eu pratiquei
- 17. eu morei
- 18. o espanhol atrapalhou
- 19. ěle gostou
- 20. eu gostei
- 21. eu preparei
- 22. eu passei
- 23. José achou
- 24. José morou

# Practice 6:

- 1. Tell me that you arrived.
- 2. Tell me that you worked.
- 3. Tell me that you studied.
- 4. Tell me that you stayed.
- 5. Tell me that you got up.
- 6. Tell me that you spoke.
- 7. Tell me that you spent.
- 8. Tell me that you practiced.
- 9. Tell me that you practiced the lesson.
- 10. Tell me that you studied the lesson.
- 11. Tell me that you prepared the lesson.
- 12. Tell me that you lived in Rio.

#### Eu chequei.

Eu trabalhei.

Eu estudei.

Eu fiquei.

Eu levantei.

Eu falei.

Eu passei.

Eu pratiquei.

Eu pratiquei a lição.

Eu estudei a lição.

Eu preparei a lição.

Eu morei no Rio.

## Practice 7:

- 1. Tell me that Yara arrived.
- 2. Tell me that Yara arrived yesterday.
- 3. Tell me that Yara worked.
- 4. Tell me that Yara worked today.
- 5. Tell me that Yara studied today.
- 6. Tell me that Paulo spoke yesterday.
- 7. Tell me that José spoke today.
- 8. Tell me that Maria stayed.
- 9. Tell me that Maria practiced.
- 10. Tell me that Maria practiced a lot.
- 11. Tell me that he prepared.
- 12. Tell me that he prepared the dialog.
- 13. Tell me that she studied.
- 14. Tell me that she studied the lesson.

- A Yara chegou.
- A Yara chegou ontem.
- A Yara trabalhou.
- A Yara trabalhou hoje.
- A Yara estudou hoje.
- O Paulo falou ontem.
- O José falou hoje.
- A Maria ficou.
- A Maria praticou.
- A Maria praticou muito.
- Ele preparou.
- Ele preparou o diálogo.
- Ela estudou.
- Ela estudou a lição.

# Practice 8:

#### <u>A</u>

O senhor falou?
 O senhor estudou?

3. O senhor gostou?

4. O senhor chegou?

5. O senhor ficou?

6. O senhor trabalhou?

7. O senhor levantou?

8. O senhor praticou?

# <u>B</u>

Falei, sim.

Estudei, sim.

Não, não gostei.

Não, não chequei.

Fiquei, sim.

Não, não trabalhei.

Levantei, sim.

Pratiquei, sim.

# Practice 9:

1. O senhor falou?

2. O senhor levantou?

3. O senhor praticou?

4. O senhor gostou?

5. O senhor trabalhou?

6. O senhor notou?

7. O senhor praticou?

8. O senhor chegou?

9. O senhor morou?

10. O senhor falou?

11. O senhor visitou?

12. O senhor ficou?

Falei, sim.

Levantei, sim.

Pratiquei, sim.

Gostei, sim.

Trabalhei, sim.

Notei, sim.

Não, não pratiquei.

Não, não chequei.

Não, não morei.

Não, não falei.

Não, não visitei.

Não, não fiquei.

## Practice 10:

#### Α

1. Ele estudou?

2. Ela praticou?

3. O Paulo gostou?

4. A Maria falou?

5. A Yara chegou?

6. Ela notou?

7. José visitou?

8. Maria trabalhou?

#### В

Estudou, sim.

Praticou, sim.

Não, não gostou.

Não, não falou.

Não, não chegou.

Notou, sim.

Visitou, sim.

Não, não trabalhou.

## Practice 11:

1. Ela visitou?

2. A Maria gostou?

3. A Yara falou?

4. O menino praticou?

5. Ele estudou?

6. José chegou?

7. José trabalhou?

8. Roberto praticou?

9. Ele ficou?

10. Ele levantou?

11. Ela gostou?

12. Ela notou?

Visitou, sim.

Gostou, sim.

Falou, sim.

Praticou, sim.

Estudou, sim.

Chegou, sim.

Não, não trabalhou.

Não, não praticou.

Não, não ficou.

Não, não levantou.

Não, não gostou.

Não, não notou.

#### Practice 12:

- 1. O senhor estudou?
- 2. O senhor trabalhou?
- 3. O senhor praticou?
- 4. O senhor levantou?
- 5. O senhor gostou?
- 6. O senhor notou?
- 7. O senhor falou Português?
- 8. O senhor evitou o tráfego?
- 9. O senhor visitou o Paulo?
- 10. O senhor chegou ontem?
- 11. O senhor preparou o diálogo?
- 12. O senhor passou três horas?

# Practice 13:

- 1. A Yara levantou?
- 2. A Yara levantou às sete?
- 3. A Yara praticou?
- 4. A Yara praticou o diálogo?
- 5. O Paulo estudou?
- 6. O Paulo estudou a lição treze?
- 7. O Paulo trabalhou?
- 8. O Paulo trabalhou ontem?
- 9. O Paulo trabalhou hoje à tarde?
- 10. A Yara preparou?
- 11. A Yara preparou bem?
- 12. A Yara chegou?
- 13. A Yara chegou cedo?
- 14. A Yara falou inglês?
- 15. A Yara falou inglês com você?
- 16. A Yara passou o dia com você?

## Practice 14:

- 1. O Paulo não estudou ontem, mas ele vai estudar hoje.
- 2. O Paulo não trabalhou ontem, mas ele vai trabalhar hoje.
- 3. O Paulo não praticou ontem, mas ele vai praticar hoje.
- 4. O Paulo não chegou ontem, mas ele vai chegar hoje.
- O Paulo não preparou o diálogo ontem, mas ele vai preparar o diálogo hoje.
- 6. O Paulo não levantou cedo ontem, mas ele vai levantar cedo hoje.
- O Paulo não falou português ontem, mas ele vai falar português hoje.

## Part II.

# Practice 15:

- 1. Tive que trabalhar.
- 2. Tive que praticar.
- 3. Tive que estudar.
- 4. Tive que sair.
- 5. Tive que levantar.
- 6. Tive que chegar cedo.
- 7. Tive que visitar a embaixada.
- 8. Tive que passar o dia todo.
- 9. Tive que falar inglês.

## Practice 16:

- 1. Teve que estudar.
- 2. Teve que praticar.
- 3. Teve que comer.
- 4. Teve que trabalhar.
- 5. Teve que morar no Rio.
- 6. Teve que ficar na cidade.
- 7. Teve que preparar muito.
- 8. Teve que falar português.
- 9. Teve que sair cedo.

# Practice 17:

1.	O senhor	teve que	trabalhar?	Tive, sim.
2.	O senhor	teve que	ficar?	Tive, sim.
3.	O senhor	teve que	estudar?	Não, não tive.
4.	O senhor	teve que	sair?	Não, não tive.
5.	O senhor	teve que	falar português?	Não, não tive.
6.	O senhor	teve que	dar um telefonema?	Tive, sim.
7.	O senhor	teve que	preparar a comida?	Não, não tive.
8.	O senhor	teve que	visitar Nova York?	Não, não tive.

# Practice 18:

1.	Voce	teve	que	sair?	Tive,	sım.
2.	Você	teve	que	trabalhar?	Tive,	sim.
3.	Você	teve	que	ficar?	Tive,	sim.
4.	Você	teve	que	morar no Rio?	Tive,	sim.
5.	Você	teve	que	estudar muito?	Tive,	sim.
6.	Você	teve	que	falar com o professor?	Tive,	sim.
7.	Você	teve	que	estudar inglês?	Tive,	sim.
8.	Você	teve	que	preparar a lição?	Tive,	sim.

# Practice 19:

1.	Tell me tha	t you had	to	leave.	Tive que sair.
2.	Tell me tha	t you had	to	study.	Tive que estudar.
3.	Tell me tha	t you had	to	work.	Tive que trabalhar.
4.	Tell me tha Portugues	_	to	speak	Tive que falar português.
5.	Tell me tha	t you had	to	stay.	Tive que ficar.
6.	Tell me that the food.		. to	prepare	Tive que preparar a comida.
7.	Tell me tha	t vou had	to	spend the day.	Tive que passar o di

#### Practice 20:

- 1. Tell me that Carlos had to study.
- 2. Tell me that Carlos had to work.
- Tell me that Carlos had to stay in the Embassy.
- 4. Tell me that Yara had to prepare the food.
- Tell me that Yara had to get up early.
- 6. Tell me that the teacher had to prepare the lesson.
- 7. Tell me that Santos had to stay home.

- O Carlos teve que estudar.
- O Carlos teve que trabalhar.
- O Carlos teve que ficar na embaixada.
- A Yara teve que preparar a comida.
- A Yara teve que levantar cedo.
- O professor teve que preparar a lição.
- O Santos teve que ficar em casa.

#### Practice 21:

- 1. Ask me if I had to work yesterday.
- 2. Ask me if I had to leave with Yara.
- 3. Ask me if I had to speak with Yara.
- 4. Ask me if I had to practice a lot.
- 5. Ask me if I had to prepare a lot.
- 6. Ask me if José had to practice too.
- 7. Ask me if José had to arrive late.
- 8. Ask me if Bill had to stay until ten.
- Ask me if Bill had to study this afternoon.

- Você teve que trabalhar ontem?
- Você teve que sair com Yara?
- Você teve que falar com Yara?
- Você teve que praticar muito?
- Você teve que preparar muito?
- O José teve que praticar também?
- O José teve que chegar tarde?
- O Bill teve que ficar até às dez?
- O Bill teve que estudar hoje à tarde?

## Part III.

# Practice 22:

- A. l. ao Rio
  - 2. ao centro
  - 3. ao parque
  - 4. ao túnel
  - 5. ao Brasil
  - 6. ao Carlos
  - 7. ao cinema
- B. 1. à avenida
  - 2. à festa
  - 3. à embaixada
  - 4. à mesa
  - 5. à cidade
  - 6. à sala

# Practice 23:

1.	O senhor vai ao Rio?	Vou,	sim.
2.	O senhor vai à festa?	Não,	não vou.
3.	O senhor vai ao cinema?	Não,	não vou.
4.	O senhor vai ao centro?	Vou,	sim.
5.	A Maria vai à embaixada?	Vai,	sim.
6.	A Maria vai ao parque?	Vai,	sim.
7.	O Paulo vai ao Brasil?	Não,	não vai.

# Practice 24:

- 1. Eu vou à festa.
- 2. Eu vou ao cinema.
- 3. Eu vou ao Rio.
- 4. Ele vai à embaixada.
- 5. Ele vai ao Brasil.
- 6. Ele vai ao parque.
- 7. Ele vai à cidade.
- 8. O senhor vai à outra sala?
- 9. O senhor vai à cidade?
- 10. O senhor vai ao escritório?

## Part IV.

# Practice 25:

- 1. Eu fui ao parque.
- 2. Eu fui ao Brasil.
- 3. Eu fui ao cinema.
- 4. Eu fui à cidade.
- 5. Eu fui ao Leme.
- 6. Eu fui à embaixada.
- 7. Eu fui à festa.
- 8. Eu fui com a minha filha.
- 9. Eu fui trabalhar.
- 10. Eu fui visitar o Paulo.

# Practice 26:

- 1. Ela foi ao Brasil.
- 2. Ela foi à festa.
- 3. A Maria foi ao cinema.
- 4. A Maria foi ao centro.
- 5. A Maria foi comigo.

- 6. O Paulo foi com a Maria.
- 7. O Paulo foi com os outros.
- 8. Ele foi estudar o diálogo.
- 9. A Maria foi falar com a Yara.
- 10. Ela foi preparar a comida.

# Practice 27:

1.	Você foi ao cinema?	Fui,	sim.
2.	Você foi ao centro?	Fui,	sim.
3.	Você foi preparar a comida?	Fui,	sim.
4.	O José foi falar com a Yara?	Foi,	sim.
5.	O José foi ao cinema?	Não,	não foi
6.	O José foi preparar o diálogo?	Foi,	sim.
7.	A Yara foi à festa?	Não,	não foi
8.	A Yara foi estudar a lição?	Foi,	sim.

# Practice 28:

1.	Ask me if I went to the movies.	Você foi ao cinema?
2.	Ask me if I went downtown.	Você foi ao centro?
3.	Ask me if I went to talk with Yara.	Você foi falar com a Yara?
4.	Ask me if I went to visit Yara.	Você foi visitar a Yara?
5.	Ask me if José went to work.	O José foi trabalhar?
6.	Ask me if José went to Rio.	O José foi ao Rio?
7.	Ask me if José went to the embassy.	O José foi à embaixada?
8.	Ask me if Maria went to the party.	A Maria foi à festa?
9.	Ask me if Maria went to prepare the food.	A Maria foi preparar a comida?
10.	Ask me if I went to prepare the dialog.	Você foi preparar o diálogo?

## Practice 29:

1.	Você foi com Yara?	Fui,	sim.
2.	Você foi estudar?	Fui,	sim.
3.	Você foi falar com José?	fui,	sim.
	O José foi falar com a Yara?	Foi,	sim.
5.	O Jose foi à cidade?	Foi,	sim.
6.	A Maria foi ao centro?	Não,	não foi.
7.	A Maria foi com você?	Não,	não foi.
8.	A Maria foi trabalhar?	Não,	não foi.
9.	Você foi trabalhar?	Não,	não fui.
10.	Você foi com o Senhor Silva?	Não.	não fui.

## Practice 30:

- 1. Ele fala que vai chover.
- 2. Ele fala que está cansado.
- 3. Ele fala que não pode estudar.
- 4. Ele fala que quer sair.
- 5. Ele fala que gosta do Rio.
- 6. Ele fala que levanta cedo.
- 7. Ele fala que levantou cedo.
- 8. Ele fala que a Yara levantou cedo.
- 9. Ele fala que a Yara teve que estudar.
- 10. Ele fala que a Yara foi ao cinema.
- 11. Ele fala que a Yara vai ao cinema.

# Practice 31:

- 1. Ele falou que estudou.
- 2. Ele falou que preparou.
- 3. Ele falou que chegou cedo.
- 4. Ele falou que gostou da cidade.
- 5. Ele falou que morou no Leme.
- 6. Ele falou que passou três horas.

- 7. Ele falou que estuda muito.
- 8. Ele falou que vai estudar muito.
- 9. Ele falou que pretende preparar o diálogo.
- 10. Ele falou que não pode ficar hoje.
- 11. Ele falou que não conhece a Maria.

# Practice 32:

- 1. Eu falei que estou cansado.
- 2. Eu falei que sou americano.
- 3. Eu falei que sou de Nova York.
- 4. Eu falei que pretendo estudar.
- 5. Eu falei que vou trabalhar.
- 6. Eu falei que fui trabalhar.
- 7. Eu falei que tive que trabalhar.
- 8. Eu falei que ela teve que trabalhar.
- 9. Eu falei que ela trabalhou.
- 10. Eu falei que o José gostou da festa.

## Practice 33:

1.	Você	falou q	Iue	estudou?	Falei, sim.
2.	Você	falou q	Iue	trabalhou ontem?	Falei, sim.
3.	Você	falou q	Iue	gostou do Rio?	Falei, sim.
4.	Você	falou q	Iue	preparou a lição?	Não, não falei.
5.	Você	falou q	<b>I</b> ue	morou em Nova York?	Não, não falei.
6.	Você	falou q	Iue	foi a Nova York?	Não, não falei.
7.	Você	falou q	Iue	teve que sair cedo?	Falei, sim.

В

#### Comprehension

- O que é que o senhor vai fazer hoje à tarde?
- O que é que o senhor pretende fazer hoje à tarde?
- O que é que o senhor pretende fazer amanhã?
- O que é que o senhor pretende estudar hoje?
- O que é que a Yara pretende preparar hoje?
- O que é que a Yara tem que preparar hoje?
- O que é que a Yara tem que fazer hoje à tarde?
- O que é que você tem que fazer agora?
- 9. O que é que eu vou fazer agora?
- 10. O que é que eu tenho que fazer amanhã?
- 11. Eu tenho que estudar a lição treze?
- 12. Você vai estudar a doze?
- 13. Você estudou a doze ontem?
- 14. Você não estudou a treze também?
- 15. Você não preparou a outra lição?
- 16. Você não foi preparar a outra lição?
- 17. O Paulo passou três horas na lição doze?
- 18. Mas a Yara passou só duas horas nela.
- 19. Eu passei uma hora nela, mas passei tres horas na treze.
- 20. Não vou estudar mais hoje. Estou cansado.
- 21. O José ficou em casa hoje.
- 22. Ele teve que estudar e preparar os diálogos.
- 23. Ele não foi ao cinema.
- 24. Nossa! A lição é tão difícil!
- 25. 26. Claro. É muito difícil.
- O senhor tem que estudar a tarde tôda.
- 27. Ontem eu tive que sair cedo.
- 28. Eu fui ao centro.
- 29. Paulo teve que ficar na embaixada.
- 30. Ele trabalhou até as nove.
- 31. Nossa! Até às nove?!
- 32. O senhor falou que Paulo ficou até às nove?
- 33. Falei. Ele chegou em casa às dez.
- 34. E hoje ele teve que levantar muito cedo: às seis.
- 35. Ele está muito cansado, e não se sente muito bem.
- 36. É lógico! Não vai fazer muito hoje.

# Unit 15

# A Look at the Grammar

# Part I:

# Practice 1:

1.	falamos	8.	visitamos
2.	gostamos	9.	levantamos
3.	preparamos	10.	jantamos
4.	praticamos	11.	moramos
5.	tomamos	12.	estudamos
6.	chegamos	13.	ficamos
7.	evitamos	14.	preparamos

# Practice 2:

1.	visitamos	8.	atrapalhamos
2.	chegamos	9.	notamos
3.	falamos	10.	praticamos
4.	almoçamos	11	evitamos
5.	tomamos	12.	moramos
6.	estudamos	13.	preparamos
7.	ficamos	14.	gostamos

# Practice 3:

a.	preparamos	g.	trabalhamos
b.	gostamos	h.	jantamos
c.	chegamos	i.	ficamos
d.	levantamos	j.	tomamos
e.	almoçamos	k.	praticamos
f.	notamos	1.	moramos

# Practice 4:

- 1. qostaram
- 2. falaram
- 3. prepararam
- 4. notaram
- 5. passaram
- 6. estudaram
- 7. moraram

- 8. evitaram
- 9. almoçaram
- 10. jantaram
- 11. tomaram
- 12. ficaram
- 13. chegaram
- 14. praticaram

# Practice 5:

- 1. falaram
- 2. notaram
- 3. estudaram
- 4. moraram
- 5. prepararam
- 6. gostaram
- 7. chegaram

- 8. praticaram
- 9. trabalharam
- 10. levantaram
- 11. acharam
- 12. almoçaram
- 13. jantaram
- 14. atrapalharam

## Practice 6:

- a. tomaram
- b. almoçaram
- c. passaram
- d. jantaram
- e. trabalharam
- f. falaram

- q. acharam
- h. gostaram
- i. prepararam
- j. estudaram
- k. visitaram
- 1. chegaram

#### Practice 7:

# <u>A</u>

- 1. Eles chegaram?
- 2. Eles praticaram muito?
- 3. Eles falaram inglês?
- 4. Eles jantaram cedo?

## $\mathbf{B}$

- Chegaram, sim.
- Praticaram, sim.
- Falaram, sim.
- Jantaram, sim.

5.	Elas tomaram café?	Tomaram, sim.
6.	Elas almoçaram no restaurante?	Almoçaram, sim.
7.	Elas levantaram tarde?	Levantaram, sim.
8.	Elas gostaram da escola?	Gostaram, sim.
9.	Elas prepararam a comida?	Prepararam, sim.
10.	Eles trabalharam ontem?	Trabalharam, sim.

# Practice 8:

1.	Elas estudaram ontem?	Estudaram, sim.
2.	Elas passaram uma hora?	Passaram, sim.
3.	Elas jantaram com o Paulo?	Jantaram, sim.
4.	Elas gostaram do café?	Gostaram, sim.
5.	Elas almoçaram no restaurante?	Almoçaram, sim.
6.	Eles praticaram com você?	Praticaram, sim.
7.	Eles moraram no Rio?	Moraram, sim.
8.	Eles ficaram na embaixada?	Ficaram, sim.
9.	Eles trabalharam muito?	Trabalharam, sim.
10.	Eles prepararam a lição?	Prepararam, sim.

<u>B</u>

<u>B</u>

# Practice 9:

<u>A</u>
----------

1.	Os	senhores	jantaram bem?	Jantamos, sim.
2.	Os	senhores	chegaram bem?	Chegamos, sim.
3.	Os	senhores	praticaram muito?	Não, não praticamos.
4.	Os	senhores	falaram português?	Não, não falamos.
5.	Os	senhores	almoçaram em frente?	Almoçamos, sim.
6.	Os	senhores	<pre>estudaram ontem a noite?</pre>	Estudamos, sim.
7.	Os	senhores	chegaram cedo?	Não, não chegamos.
8.	Os	senhores	moraram lá?	Não, não moramos.
9.	Os	senhores	gostaram da comida?	Gostamos, sim.
10.	Os	senhores	tomaram café?	Tomamos, sim.

#### Practice 10:

7\	
А	

Os senhores almoçaram bem?
 Os senhores estudaram português?

3. Os senhores levantaram cedo?

4. Os senhores trabalharam ontem?

5. Os senhores prepararam o café?

6. Os senhores moraram em Washington?

7. Os senhores falaram com ela?

8. Os senhores notaram um sotaque?

9. Os senhores praticaram ontem?

10. Os senhores gostaram do restaurante?

# В

Almoçamos, sim.

Estudamos, sim.

Levantamos, sim.

Trabalhamos, sim.

Preparamos, sim.

Moramos, sim.

Falamos, sim.

Notamos, sim.

Praticamos, sim.

Gostamos, sim.

# Practice 11:

#### <u>A</u>

1. Os senhores gostaram da comida?

2. Os senhores ficaram lá?

3. Os senhores jantaram juntos?

4. Os senhores almoçaram aqui?

5. Os senhores tomaram café?

6. Os senhores evitaram o tráfego?

7. Os senhores passaram um dia todo?

8. Os senhores estudaram juntos?

#### В

Não, não gostamos.

Não, não ficamos.

Não, não jantamos,

Não, não almoçamos.

Não, não tomamos.

Não, não evitamos.

Não, não passamos.

Não, não estudamos.

## Practice 12:

 Ask me if Paul and Carlos ate dinner.

2. Ask me if Paul and Carlos ate lunch.

Ask me if Paul and Carlos stayed until five. O Paulo e o Carlos jantaram?

O Paulo e o Carlos almoçaram?

O Paulo e o Carlos ficaram até às cinco?

- 4. Ask me if Paul and Yara had coffee together.
- 5. Ask me if Paul and Yara liked the restaurant.
- 6. Ask me if Maria and Yara prepared the table.
- 7. Ask me if Maria and Yara worked at home.
- 8. Ask me if Maria and Yara studied hard.

- O Paulo e a Yara tomaram café juntos?
- O Paulo e a Yara gostaram do restaurante?
- A Maria e a Yara prepararam a mesa?
- A Maria e a Yara trabalharam em casa?
- A Maria e a Yara estudaram muito?

# Practice 13:

- 1. O José trabalhou muito.
- 2. O José preparou a lição.
- O José cheqou? 3.
- 4. O José levantou?
- 5. Eu tomei café.
- 6. Eu estudei duas horas.
- 7. Nós almoçamos.
- 8. Nós evitamos o tráfego.
- 9. Eles falaram bem de você.
- 10. Eles praticaram?

# Practice 14:

- 1. Ask if José has eaten lunch. O José já almoçou?
- 2. Ask if José has eaten dinner yet.
- 3. Ask if Maria has gotten up yet.
- 4. Ask if he has spoken yet.
- 5. Ask if they have had coffee yet.
- 6. Ask if they have arrived yet.

- O José já jantou?
- A Maria já levantou?
  - Ele já falou?
  - Eles já tomaram café?
  - Eles já chegaram?

- 7. Ask if they have (ever) lived there.
- Éles já moraram lá?

8. Ask me if I have worked yet.

Você já trabalhou?

9. Ask me if I have studied yet.

Você já estudou?

## Practice 15:

- 1. O Paulo já falou? Ainda não, mas ele vai falar agora.
- O Paulo já jantou? Ainda não, mas ele vai jantar agora.
- A Maria já levantou? Ainda não, mas ela vai levantar agora.
- 4. Você já estudou? Ainda não, mas eu vou estudar agora.
- Você já praticou? Ainda não, mas eu vou praticar agora.
- 6. Eles já prepararam? Ainda não, mas eles vão preparar agora.
- 7. Eles já almoçaram? Ainda não, mas eles vão almoçar agora.
- 8. A Maria já chegou? Ainda não, mas ela vai chegar agora.

# Practice 16:

- Os senhores já estudaram? Já. Estudamos ontem à noite.
- 2. Os senhores já praticaram? Já. Praticamos ontem à noite.
- Os senhores já falaram?
   Já. Falamos ontem à noite.
- 4. Os senhores já prepararam? Já. Preparamos ontem à noite.
- 5. Os senhores já chegaram? Já. Chegamos ontem à noite.
- Os senhores já trabalharam? Já. Trabalhamos ontem à noite.

# Practice 17:

- a. l. Ele já tomou café.
  - 2. Ele já levantou.
  - 3. Ele já falou.
  - 4. Eu já pratiquei.
  - 5. Eu já almocei.
  - 6. Nós já jantamos.
  - 7. Nós já estudamos.
  - 8. Eles já chegaram.
- b. 1. Eu ainda não estudei.
  - 2. Eu ainda não morei lá.
  - 3. Eles ainda não foram à festa.

O Paulo e o José tiveram que levantar?

- 4. Eles ainda não levantaram.
- 5. Nós ainda não almoçamos.
- 6. Nós ainda não jantamos.

Practice 18: See Text.

# Practice 19:

8.

1. Os senhores tiveram que ficar? Tivemos, sim. 2. Os senhores tiveram que trabalhar? Tivemos, sim. 3. Eles tiveram que sair? Tiveram, sim. 4. Eles tiveram que estudar? Tiveram, sim. 5. A Maria e a Yara tiveram que preparar? Tiveram, sim. 6. Vocês tiveram que jantar? Tivemos, sim. 7. Vocês tiveram que abrir a janela? Tivemos, sim.

Tiveram, sim.

Practice 20 - See Text.

Practice 21 - See Text.

Practice 22 - See Text.

# Practice 23:

1.	Eles	foram	ao	centro?

2. Eles foram ao Rio?

3. Vocês foram à cidade?

4. Elas foram a Nova York?

5. Vocês foram à festa?

6. Os senhores foram jantar?

7. Os senhores foram almoçar?

8. Eles foram trabalhar?

9. A Maria e a Yara foram com você?

Não, não foram.

Não, não foram.

Não, não fomos.

Não, não foram.

Não, não fomos.

Não, não fomos.

Não, não fomos.

Não, não foram,

Não, não foram.

Practice 24: Not recorded.

# Practice 25:

1. Quantos carros vocês têm?

2. Quantos meninos vocês têm.

3. Quantas horas eles têm?

4. Ouantas filhas eles têm?

5. Quantas crianças eles têm.

6. Quantos intervalos vocês têm?

7. Quantas janelas eles têm?

8. Quantos amigos vocês têm?

Practice 26: See Text.

Practice 27: See Text.

Temos três.

Temos dois.

Têm duas.

Têm duas.

Têm quatro.

Temos cinco.

Têm só uma.

Não temos muitos.

# Practice 28:

- 1. Somos do Rio.
- 2. Somos de Nova York.
- 3. Somos do Brasil.
- 4. Somos da Embaixada Americana.
- 5. Somos de Washington.
- 6. Estamos em Nova York.
- 7. Estamos no restaurante.
- 8. Estamos perto do restaurante.
- 9. Estamos longe da escola.
- 10. Estamos aqui.

# Practice 29:

- 1. São do Rio.
- 2. São do Brasil.
- 3. São do Leme.
- 4. São da escola.
- 5. São da embaixada.
- 6. Estão na embaixada.
- 7. Estão na festa.
- 8. Estão no diálogo.
- 9. Estão no cinema.
- 10. Estão lá embaixo.

# Practice 30:

1. Tell me that you (plural) are from Boston.

Tell me that you (plural) are in Boston.

3. Tell me that you (plural) are in the restaurant.

4. Tell me that they are from Chicago.

Somos de Boston.

Estamos em Boston.

Estamos no restaurante.

São de Chicago.

5.	Tell	me	that	they	are	in
	Washington now.					

- 6. Tell me that Maria and Yara are in the school.
- Tell me that Bill and Paulo are downstairs.
- 8. Tell me that Bill and Paulo are from Rio.
- 9. Tell me that Mr. Smith and you are from (do) Texas.

Estão em Washington agora.

A Maria e a Yara estão na escola.

O Bill e o Paulo estão lá embaixo.

O Bill e o Paulo são do Rio.

O senhor Smith e eu somos do Texas.

## Practice 31:

- 1. Os senhores são de Washington?
- 2. Os senhores estão em Washington?
- 3. Os senhores estão perto?
- 4. Os senhores são da embaixada?
- 5. Eles são da embaixada?
- 6. Eles estão lá embaixo?
- 7. Elas estão no restaurante?
- 8. Elas são do Recife?

Somos, sim.

Estamos, sim.

Estamos, sim.

Somos, sim.

São, sim.

Estão, sim.

Estão, sim.

São, sim.

#### Part IV.

#### Practice 32:

B. l. O senhor é brasileiro?

2. Os senhores são brasileiros?

3. O Paulo é aluno?

4. A Yara é brasileira?

5. Elas são brasileiras?

Sou, sim.

Somos, sim.

É, sim.

É, sim.

São, sim.

6. Eles são alunos?

7. O senhor é Bill Watkins?

8. O senhor é professor?

9. Você é americano?

10. Vocês são todos americanos?

11. Você é inglês?

12. Eles são ingleses?

13. Os senhores são portugueses?

14. Este é o restaurante?

15. Este é o túnel?

Não, não são.

Não, não sou.

Não, não sou.

Sou, sim.

Somos, sim.

Não, não sou.

Não, não são.

Não, não somos.

Não, não é.

É, sim.

## Practice 33:

1. O Paulo é brasileiro?

2. Eles são brasileiros?

3. Eles são alunos?

4. Os senhores são americanos?

5. Este é o seu carro?

6. Este é o seu professor?

7. Vocês são professores?

8. A Yara é a filha dele?

9. Os alunos são americanos?

10. O carro é um Volkswagen?

É, sim.

São, sim.

São, sim.

Somos, sim.

É, sim.

É, sim.

Somos, sim.

É, sim.

São, sim.

É, sim.

Practice 34: Not recorded.

Practice 35: See Text.

Practice 36: See Text.

#### Comprehension

- Deixe-me trabalhar. 1.
- Deixe-me falar com ele. 2.
- Deixe-me ficar com você.
- Deixe-me almoçar com ela.
- Deixe-me praticar português com eles.
- 5. Deixe-me tomar café agora.
- Está na hora do café.
- 8. Está na hora da festa.
- 9. Está na hora do diálogo.
- Está na hora de praticar. 10.
- Está na hora de abrir a porta. 11.
- 12. Está na hora de falar português.
- **1**3. Por que não abrimos a janela?
- 14. Por que não tomamos café?
- 15. Por que não jantamos agora?
- 16. Por que não almoçamos às oito?
- 17.
- Boa noite! O senhor já jantou? Boa idéia! O senhor vai jantar agora? 18.
- 19. Boa tarde! O senhor almoçou bem?
- 20. Almocei, sim. Almocei demais.
- 21. Fui ao restaurante em frente.
- 22. Não estou com fome agora porque almocei demais.
- 23. Parece que o José almoçou demais também.
- 24. Acho que a Yara almoçou no centro.
- 25. Ela e o Paulo foram lá juntos.
- 26. Não sei que horas são.
- 27. Não sei quando é a festa.
- 28. Não sei quando vamos praticar.
- 29. Não sei como vamos estudar hoje.
- 30. Não sei onde vamos almoçar hoje.
- 31. Não sei o que fazer.
- 32. Não sei o que fazer, ir à festa ou ficar em casa.
- 33. Não sei o que tomar, café ou Coca-cola:
- 34. Não sei o que falar, português ou inglês.
- 35. 36. Eu ainda não falei nada.
- Eu ainda não notei nada.
- Eu ainda não preparei o diálogo.
- 37. 38. Yara ainda não levantou, porque não se sente bem.
- 39. O Bill ainda não jantou, porque não está com fome.
- 40. O Paulo ainda não estudou porque teve que trabalhar.
- 41. A Maria e a Yara já chegaram?
- 42. Não, elas ainda não chegaram porque tiveram que praticar.
- 43. Eu ainda não estudei nada porque estou muito cansado.
- 44. A Susana já preparou a lição?
- 45. 46. Não, ela ainda não preparou porque foi ao cinema.
- As crianças foram com ela?
- 47. Não, não foram. Tiveram que ficar em casa.
- 48. Passaram três horas em casa.
- 49. Vocês almoçaram em frente ou lá embaixo?
- 50. Não almoçamos. Fomos a Washington.

#### Translations

- A. (Not recorded)
- B. 1. São dez horas.
  - Os professores ainda não chegaram, e eu acho que sei por quê.
  - Eles foram a uma festa ontem à noite, e eles ficaram lá até muito tarde.
  - 4. Nossa! E nós, alunos, estudamos tanto! Passamos horas no diálogo. Estudamos a noite toda!
  - 5. E os professores ainda não estão aqui.
  - 6. Nós não podemos fazer o diálogo sem os professores.
  - 7. Oba! aqui estão eles! Boa tarde!
- C. (Not recorded)

### A Look at the Grammar

# Practice 2.

	Instructor A	<u>Instructor</u> B
1.	Você esqueceu?	Não, não esqueci.
2.	A Yara esqueceu?	Esqueceu, sim.
3.	Você leu o jornal?	Li, sim.
4.	A Yara leu o jornal?	Leu, sim.
5.	E vocês, leram o jornal também?	Lemos, sim.
6.	O Carlos escreveu a carta?	Não, não escreveu.
7.	Eles escreveram um livro?	Não, não escreveram.
8.	Você escreveu o diálogo?	Escrevi, sim.
9.	Choveu muito ontem?	Choveu, sim.
10.	Eles beberam Coca-cola?	Não, não beberam.
11.	Você comeu muito?	Comi, sim.
12.	Comemos demais?	Comemos, sim.
13.	Eles comeram lá embaixo?	Comeram, sim.
	embarko:	
Pra	ctice 3.	
Pra	•	<u>B</u>
<del></del>	ctice 3.	<u>B</u> Não, não esqueci.
<del></del>	ctice 3.	_
1.	ctice 3.  A  Você esqueceu?	Não, não esqueci.
1.	Ctice 3.  A  Você esqueceu?  A Yara esqueceu?	Não, não esqueci. Esqueceu, sim.
1. 2. 3.	Ctice 3.  A  Você esqueceu?  A Yara esqueceu?  Você leu o jornal?	Não, não esqueci. Esqueceu, sim. Li, sim.
1. 2. 3. 4.	Ctice 3.  A  Você esqueceu?  A Yara esqueceu?  Você leu o jornal?  A Yara leu o jornal?  E vocês, leram o	Não, não esqueci. Esqueceu, sim. Li, sim. Leu, sim.
1. 2. 3. 4.	Ctice 3.  A  Você esqueceu?  A Yara esqueceu?  Você leu o jornal?  A Yara leu o jornal?  E vocês, leram o jornal também?  O Carlos escreveu a	Não, não esqueci. Esqueceu, sim. Li, sim. Leu, sim. Leuos, sim.
1. 2. 3. 4.	Ctice 3.  A  Você esqueceu?  A Yara esqueceu?  Você leu o jornal?  A Yara leu o jornal?  E vocês, leram o jornal também?  O Carlos escreveu a carta?  Eles escreveram um	Não, não esqueci. Esqueceu, sim. Li, sim. Leu, sim. Lemos, sim. Não, não escreveu.
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.	Ctice 3.  A  Você esqueceu?  A Yara esqueceu?  Você leu o jornal?  A Yara leu o jornal?  E vocês, leram o jornal também?  O Carlos escreveu a carta?  Eles escreveram um livro?  Você escreveu o	Não, não esqueci. Esqueceu, sim. Li, sim. Leu, sim. Lemos, sim. Não, não escreveu. Não, não escreveram.

11. Você comeu muito? Comi, sim.

12. Comemos demais? Comemos, sim.

13. Eles comeram lá Comeram, sim. embaixo?

### Practice 4.

Example: A Yara leu o livro?
Não, não leu, mas eu li.

- A Yara escreveu a carta?
   Não, não escreveu, mas eu escrevi.
- A Yara bebeu café?
   Não, não bebeu, mas eu bebi.
- A Yara leu o jornal?
   Não, não leu, mas eu li.
- 4. A Yara comeu em casa?
  Não, não comeu, mas eu comi.
- A Yara esqueceu?
   Não, não esqueceu, mas eu esqueci.
- 6. A Yara escreveu o diálogo? Não, não escreveu, mas eu escrevi.
- 7. A Yara esqueceu o livro? Não, não esqueceu, mas eu esqueci.

#### Practice 5.

Example: Eles leram o livro?
Não, não leram, mas nós lemos.

- Eles comeram em casa?
   Não, não comeram, mas nós comemos.
- Eles esqueceram?
   Não, não esqueceram, mas nós esquecemos.
- Eles escreveram a carta?
   Não, não escreveram, mas nós escrevemos.
- 4. Eles beberam muito? Não, não beberam, mas nós bebemos.
- 5. Eles leram o jornal?
  Não, não leram, mas nós lemos.
- Eles esqueceram estudar?
   Não, não esqueceram, mas nós esquecemos.

# Practice 6.

- 1. O que você esqueceu?
- 2. O que você leu?
- 3. O que você notou?
- 4. O que você preparou?
- 5. O que você estudou?
- 6. 0 que você bebeu?
- 7. O que você falou?
- 8. O que você escreveu?
- 9. O que você visitou?

Esqueci o livro.

Li o jornal.

Notei um sotaque.

Preparei o diálogo.

Estudei a lição treze.

Bebi Coca-cola.

Falei inglês.

Escrevi uma carta.

Visitei o centro.

# Practice 7. See Text.

## Practice 8.

- 1. São 4:17.
- 2. são 7:45.
- 3. São 3:15.
- 4. são 7:48.
- 5. São 8:42.
- 6. São 10:50.

- 7. são 2:03.
- 8. £ 1:05.
- 9. São 6:50.
- 10. São 12:55.
- 11. São 11:55.
- 12. São 5:00.

13. São 8:22.

# Practice 9.

- 1. São 8:07.
- 2. são 7:08.
- 3. são 7:53.
- 4. É meia-noite.
- 5. São 4:45.
- 6. É uma e meia.
- 7. É um quarto para as oito.
- 8. São oito e um quarto.
- 9. É uma e cinco.
- 10. São cinco para a uma.
- 11. É uma em ponto.

- 12. As 4:00.
- 13. As 7:30.
- 14. A 1:45.
- 15. Ao meio-dia.
- 16. As 2:05.
- 17. As 6:47.
- 18. As 12:15 (p.m.).
- 19. As 8:17.
- 20. As 11:20.

# Practice 10.

- 1. São quatro e trinta.
- 2. São quatro e um quarto.
- 3. São quatro e quinze.
- 4. São quinze para as quatro.
- 5. É um quarto para as quatro.
- 6. São três e cinco.
- 7. São cinco para as três.
- 8. São nove.
- 9. As nove.
- 10. As nove e quinze.
- 11. A um quarto para as nove.
- 12. A meia-noite.
- 13. Hoje às três.
- 14. Amanhã às dez.
- 15. Amanhã à meia-noite.

# Practice 11. See Text.

#### Comprehension

A.

- 1. Eu me deitei muito cedo ontem à noite.
- 2. Estava muito cansado e com muito sono.
- 3. Passei muito bem a noite.
- 4. Levantei tarde, lá pelas nove.
- 5. Chequei aqui às dez, e logo depois tomei café.
- 6. Mas estava com tanta pressa que esqueci o meu livro.
- 7. Não deixei o livro em casa.
  Deixei o livro no carro.
- 8. Deixei tudo no carro.
- 9. Bom. Vamos começar o diálogo.
- 10. A que horas o senhor começou?
- 11. Lá pelas nove, mais ou menos.
- 12. O senhor passou bem a tarde?
- 13. Não, não passei. Almocei demais e estava com sono.
- 14. E também choveu a tarde tôda.
- 15. Está chovendo agora e parece que vai chover amanhã também, o dia todo.
- 16. O senhor estava acordado lá pelas onze horas?
- 17. O senhor estava acordado quando choveu?
- 18. A senhora estava acordada quando eu me deitei?
- 19. Você estava acordado quando eu preparei a lição?
- 20. Você estava com sono quando se deitou?
- 21. Eu não estava com sono quando me deitei.
- 22. Mas eu estava com sono quando me levantei, e ainda estou com um pouco de sono.
- 23. Eu estava com fome quando jantei, e ainda estou com um pouco de fome.
- 24. Ele estava cansado quando se levantou, e ainda está um pouco cansado.
- 25. Ele não estava acordado quando você levantou.
- 26. Ela estava acordada quando eu levantei.
- Eu estava com muito sono quando me deitei ontem à noite.
- 28. Eu me deitei muito tarde ontem e levantei muito cedo hoje.
- 29. Estudei até tarde e depois li o jornal.
- B. See Text.

# Programming

# Practice 4.

1.	Você saiu cedo?	Saí, sim.
2.	Você dormiu bem?	Dormi, sim.
3.	Você repetiu a lição?	Repeti, sim.
4.	Você abriu o livro?	Abri, sim.
5.	Ela caiu?	Caiu, sim.
6.	Ela saiu com você?	Não, não saiu.
7.	Ela preferiu ficar?	Preferiu, sim.
8.	O Paulo dormiu muito?	Não, não dormiu.
9.	O Paulo repetiu o diálogo?	Repetiu, sim.
10.	Ele preferiu almoçar aqui?	Preferiu, sim.

# Practice 5.

1.	Você dormiu bem?	Dormi, sim.
2.	Você saiu às oito?	Sai, sim.
3	Você repetiu muito?	Repeti, sim.
4.	Você caiu?	Caí, sim.
5	Você abriu a janela?	Abri, sim.
6	A professora repetiu o diálogo?	Repetiu, sim.
7	A Yara preferiu ficar?	Preferiu, sim.
8	A Yara saiu com o Paulo?	Saiu, sim.
9	O Paulo caiu?	Caiu, sim.
10.	O Paulo dormiu até tarde?	Dormiu, sim.

#### Practice 6.

-	^	4 ^	
1.	VOCES	sairam?	

2. Vocês dormiram?

3. Vocês repetiram?

4. Vocês abriram a janela?

5. Eles abriram a janela?

6. Eles dormiram?

7. Eles sairam?

8. Eles repetiram?

9. Eles cairam?

Saimos, sim.

Dormimos, sim.

Repetimos, sim.

Abrimos, sim.

Abriram, sim.

Dormiram, sim.

Não, não sairam.

Não, não repetiram.

Cairam, sim.

#### Practice 7.

	1.	As	criancas	тã	dormiram?	
--	----	----	----------	----	-----------	--

2. As professoras sairam?

3. Eles abriram a janela?

4. Eles repetiram o diálogo?

5. Vocês repetiram o diálogo?

6. Vocès dormiram?

7. Vocês jā sairam?

8. Vocês abriram os livros?

9. Voces preferiram ficar?

Dormiram, sim.

Sairam, sim.

Abriram, sim.

Repetiram, sim.

Repetimos, sim.

Dormimos, sim.

Saimos, sim.

Abrimos, sim.

Preferimos, sim.

#### Practice 8.

- 1. Ele vai sair do Brasil.
- 2. Ele vai sair do Rio amanhã.
- 3. Ele j**ā** saiu da Embaixada.
- 4. Ele saiu de lá ontem.
- 5. Ele pretende sair de casa cedo.
- 6. Ele saiu do restaurante cedo.

#### **EXPANSION EXERCISES**

# Expansion Exercise 1. See Text.

### Expansion Exercise 2.

- 1. Amanhã de manhã
- 2. Hoje à noite
- 3. Hoje à tarde
- 4. Amanhã à noite
- 5. Ontem à tarde
- 6. Ontem de noite
- 7. Hoje de manhã

### Expansion Exercise 3.

- a. 1. Eu saí hoje de manhã.
  - 2. Eu vou sair hoje à noite.
  - Ela vai sair amanhã à noite.
  - 4. Mas o Paulo vai sair amanhã de manhã.
  - 5. Eu não vou estudar hoje à tarde.
  - 6. Porque eu já estudei ontem de noite.
  - 7. O senhor dormiu bem essa noite?
  - 8. Não, mas eu vou dormir bem hoje de manhã.
- b. 1. Quando é que o senhor saiu? Ontem de manha.
  - Quando é que o senhor voltou?
     Ontem de tarde.
  - 3. Quando é que o senhor caiu? Hoje de manhã.
  - 4. Quando é que o senhor dormiu? Hoje de manhã.
  - 5. Quando é que o senhor foi para casa? Ontem à noite.

- 6. Quando é que o senhor escreveu a carta?
- 7. Quando é que o senhor vai dormir?
- 8. Quando é que o senhor vai dirigir?
- 9. Quando é que o senhor vai voltar?
- 10. Quando é que o senhor vai praticar?
- 11. Quando é que o senhor vai ler o livro?
- 12. Quando é que o senhor vai chegar no Rio?

Hoje à tarde.

Amanhã de manhã.

Hoje de noite.

Amanhã de manhã.

Amanhã à noite.

Hoje de noite.

Amanhã de tarde.

### Comprehension

- 1. Nós voltamos da praia ontem à tarde.
- 2. Os outros voltaram hoje de manhã.
- 3. Eu voltei cedo com a minha filha.
- 4. Eu deixei o meu filho lá.
- 5. Eu deixei o meu livro na Embaixada.
- 6. Eu deixei tudo no escritório.
- 7. Eu dormi muito bem essa noite.
- 8. Eu dormi oito horas.
- 9. Eu dormi às onze.
- 10. Eu dormi até às sete.
- 11. Eu acordei às sete, e levantei às sete e meia.
- 12. Eu dormi até às sete, e levantei às sete e meia.
- 13. Eu acordei às sete, mas só levantei às sete e meia.
- 14. Eu caí no sono outra vez.
- 15. Eu estava com tanto sono que caí no sono outra vez.
- 16. Eu levantei às sete e meia e saí de casa às oito.
- 17. O José dormiu até às oito e saiu de casa tarde.
- 18. Ele estava muito cansado e dormiu até às oito.
- 19. Ele deitou cedo ontem à noite e dormiu às dez.
- 20. Ele dormiu das dez até às oito.
- 21. Ele dormiu muito? Parece. Claro! Dormiu 10 horas.
- 22. Ele passou a noite bem.
- 23. Hoje ele não está com sono.
- 24. O senhor sabe o que aconteceu ontem à noite?
- 25. O senhor sabe que um pneu furou ontem à noite?
- 26. O senhor sabe que o pneu furou logo na ponte?
- 27. O senhor sabe que a Maria caiu logo na Embaixada?
- 28. O senhor sabe que a Yara caiu no sono logo no cinema?
- 29. Você sabe que o João repetiu o diálogo outra vez?
- 30. Você sabe que eu estou cansado?

#### Translations

I.

- A. 1. O que é que aconteceu?
  - 2. O que é que caiu?
  - 3. O que é que ele comeu?
  - 4. O que é que ele bebeu?
  - 5. O que é que ele tomou?
  - 6. O que é que ele preparou?
  - 7. O que é que ele preferiu?
  - 8. O que é que ele escreveu?
  - 9. O que é que ele sentiu?
  - 10. O que é que ele abriu?
- B. 1. Como é que aconteceu?
  - 2. Como é que ele caiu?
  - 3. Como é que ele começou?
  - 4. Como é que eles começaram?
  - 5. Como é que eles dormiram?
  - 6. Como é que eles passaram a noite?
  - 7. Como é que eles chegaram?
- C. l. Quem é que caiu?
  - 2. Quem é que abriu a janela?
  - 3. Quem é que preparou a comida?
  - 4. Quem é que dirigiu?
  - 5. Quem é que levantou tarde?
  - 6. Quem é que voltou cedo?
  - 7. Quem é que saiu com Yara?
  - 8. Quem é que escreveu o livro?
  - 9. Quem é que quer comer?
  - 10. Quem é que quer ir?
  - 11. Quem é que quer começar?
  - 12. Quem é que tem que trabalhar?

- 13. Quem é que tem que voltar?
- 14. Quem é que vai voltar?
- 15. Quem é que vai dirigir?
- 16. Quem é que se lembra?
- 17. Quem é que conhece a Maria?
- 18. Quem é que está acordado?
- 19. Quem é que está com sonc?
- 20. Quem é que está com fome?
- 21. Quem é que está dirigindo?
- 22. Quem é que está dançando com José?
- D. 1. Por que é que eles cairam?
  - 2. Por que é que eles sairam?
  - 3. Por que é que eles ficaram?
  - 4. Por que é que eles voltaram?
  - 5. Por que é que eles comeram tanto?
  - 6. Por que é que eles começaram tarde?
  - 7. Por que é que eles deitaram cedo?
  - 8. Por que é que eles esqueceram?
  - 9. Por que é que eles abriram a porta?
  - 10. Por que é que eles cairam no sono?
  - 11. Por que é que eles dirigiram?
- E. 1. Onde é que ela almoçou?
  - 2. Onde é que ela ficou?
  - 3. Onde é que ela caiu?
  - 4. Onde é que ela dirigiu?
  - 5. Onde é que ela comeu?
  - 6. Onde é que ela foi?
  - 7. Onde é que ela deixou o livro?
  - 8. Onde é que ela começou?

### Programming

#### Practice 2.

- 1. A minha filha está em Nova York.
  - A minha está em N.Y. também.
- 2. O meu carro é um Chevrolet.
  - O meu é um Chevrolet também.
- 3. O meu filho é casado.
  - O meu é casado também.
- 4. As minhas filhas são americanas.
  - As minhas são americanas também.
- 5. Os meus filhos trabalham aqui.
  - Os meus trabalham aqui também.
- 6. A minha casa é velha.
  - A minha é velha também.
- 7. Os meus pneus são velhos.
  - Os meus são velhos também.
- 8. A minha esposa foi ao Rio.
  - A minha foi também.

#### Practice 4.

- 1. o amigo dele
- 2. o amigo dela
- 3. o sotaque dela
- 4. as mesas dela
- 5. os amigos dele
- 6. os filhos dele
- 7. a esposa dele
- 8. o Chevrolet dele
- 9. as casas dele
- 10. as casas dela
- 11. A comida dela
- 12. A sala dele
- 13. As crianças dele
- 14. Os jornais dele
- 15 00 41410000 4010

#### Practice 5.

1.	os livros dela	os dela
2.	os amigos dela	os dela
3.	os amigos dele	os dele
4.	o amigo dele	o dele
5.	a comida dela	a dela
6.	os pneus dele	os dele
7.	os filhos dela	os dela
8.	as filhas dela	as dela
9.	O chevrolet dele	o dele
10.	A menina dele	a dele
11.	As crianças dele	as dele
12.	O espanhol dela	o dela
13.	as oportunidades dele	as dele
14.	As lições dele	as dele
15.	as idéias dela	as dela

#### Practice 6.

- 1. A minha filha é americana. E a dele?
- 2. O meu carro é um Chevrolet. E o dela?
- 3. Os meus pneus são velhos. E os dele?
- 4. A minha casa é velha. E a dela?
- 5. A minha festa é amanhã. E a dela?
- 6. Os meus filhos estão em Washington. E os dele?
- 7. O meu português é muito bom. E o dela?

# Practice 7.

- 1. o carro do Paulo
- 2. os carros do Paulo
- 3. o espanhol da Maria
- 4. o sotaque do José
- 5. as palavras do professor
- 6. as praias do Rio
- 7. a porta da Embaixada
- 8. o jornal do João
- 9. a esposa do João
- 10. o livro da Yara

## Practice 8.

Example. O da Yara é um Chevrolet.

- 1. a. A do Paulo chegou ontem.
  - b. A minha chega hoje.
  - c. A da Maria vai chegar amanhã.
- 2. a. O meu é um Ford.
  - b. O do professor é um Ford também.
  - c. Mas o do Roberto e um Volkswagen.
- 3. a. Os do Roberto falam português.
  - b. Os da Yara falam português também.
  - c. Os seus falam português também?
- 4. a. A minha é hoje.
  - b. A da Maria é hoje também.
  - c. A da Sandra vai ser amanhã?
- 5. a. Os do Carlos são velhos.
  - b. Os meus também são velhos.
  - c. E os do Bill furaram.
- a. O do Fred é brasileiro.
  - b. O meu também é.
  - c. O da Yara é americano.

#### Expansion Exercise 2.

- 1. A senhora já comprou o carro?
- 2. Eu já comprei o carro.
- 3. A senhora vai comprar o carro?
- 4. Eu não vou comprar nada.
- 5. Eu quero comprar um cartão.
- 6. Compramos duas passagens.

### Expansion Exercise 3.

- 1. Ele vai mandar um cartão de São Paulo.
- 2. Ele já mandou um cartão.
- 3. Eu mandei uma carta ontem.
- 4. O senhor já mandou a carta a Brasília?
- 5. A Varig já mandou as passagens a Nova York.

# Expansion Exercise 4.

- 1. A gente vai receber uma carta?
- 2. A gente vai gostar?
- 3. A gente vai trabalhar amanhã?
- 4. A gente vai parar no Rio?
- 5. A gente vai dormir até tarde?
- 6. A gente toma muito café.
- 7. A gente almoça bem aqui.

## Comprehension

- 1. A minha formatura é sexta-feira. Quando é a sua?
- 2. A minha festa é domingo. Quando é a dela?
- 3. O meu carro está lá embaixo. Onde está o seu?
- 4. A minha esposa é do Rio. De onde é a sua?
- 5. O meu filho é americano. E o seu?
- 6. O professor deles é de São Paulo. De onde é o nosso?
- 7. A nossa professora fala inglês muito bem. A sua fala bem também?
- 8. A Varig vai diretamente ao Rio.
- A Varig não vai diretamente a São Paulo; pára no Rio, e de lá vai para São Paulo.
- 10. A Pan American vai para o Rio todos os dias
- 11. Eu vou parar na Flórida e passar uns dias com meus país.
- 12. Ele vai parar na Flórida e passar uma semana com eles.
- 13. Ele não vai diretamente ao Rio; ele vai parar em Belém.
- 14. Ele saiu da Flórida ontem e foi para o Rio.
- 15. Ele não dormiu bem.
- 16. Ela foi ao Brasil e voltou ontem à tarde.
- 17. Eu fui no meu carro; é Chevrolet.
- 18. Ele foi no dele, que é Ford.
- 19. A minha esposa é brasileira; e a sua?
- 20. Eu esqueci o meu livro. Você esqueceu o seu?
- 21. É meio-dia: Vamos almoçar!
- 22. É meia-noite: Vamos dormir!

#### Translations

- I. See Text.
- II. 1. A. O meu carro está muito perto, na Avenida Rio Branco. Onde está o seu?
  - B. O meu está lá também.
  - A. Então, vamos no meu, ou no seu?
  - B. O do Jorge está perto também. Por que não vamos no dele?
  - 2. A. O senhor já comprou as passagens?
    - B. Já, sim. Para o dia 28 de junho, pela Braniff.
    - A. Porque pela Braniff? O senhor não gosta da Pan Am?
    - B. Gosto, claro, mas a Pan Am vai diretamente ao Rio. A Braniff pára em Lima, e eu quero passar uns dias lá.
    - A. O senhor conhece Lima?
    - B. Conheço, sim. Eu tenho amigos lá.
    - A. Que bom!
  - 3. Not recorded.
- III. Not recorded.

# Programming

# Practice 3.

1.	Eles sentem fome?	Sentem, sim.
2.	Eles dirigem bem?	Dirigem, sim.
3.	Eles abrem cedo?	Abrem, sim.
4.	Eles saem às sete?	Saem, sim.
5.	Os senhores saem de Washington?	Saímos, sim.
6.	Os senhores caem no s	sono? Caimos, si

- 7. Os senhores dirigem no Dirigimos, sim. Rio?
- 8. Os senhores abrem às nove? Abrimos, sim.

# Practice 4.

1.	Ele dirige bem?	Dirige, sim.
2.	Ela sai hoje?	Não, não sai.
3.	A embaixada abre às	sete? Não, não abre.
4.	Ele sente fome?	Sente, sim.
5.	Você sente sono?	Sinto, sim.
6.	Você cai no sono?	Caio, sim.
7.	Você sai amanhã?	Saio, sim.

### Practice 8.

- 1. Você está chegando? Não, estou saindo.
- 2. Ele está trabalhando? Não, está dormindo.
- Ele está escrevendo uma carta? Não, está mandando um cartão.
- 4. Eles estão falando espanhol? Não, estão falando português.
- 5. Eles estão estudando? Não, estão lendo o jornal.
- Ele está tomando café? Não, está preparando o diálogo.
- 7. Ele está levantando? Não, está dormindo.

### Practice 9.

- 1. Ele está almoçando.
- 2. Ele está dando um telefonema.
- 3. Ele está caindo.
- 4. Ele está sentindo fome.
- 5. Ele está escrevendo uma carta.
- 6. Eu estou voltando.
- 7. Eu estou recebendo muitas notícias.
- 8. Eu estou morando no Rio.
- 9. Eu estou estudando.
- 10. Eu estou pretendendo.
- 11. Eu estou pretendendo começar.
- 12. Eu estou começando.

#### Expansion Exercise 1.

- A. Model: O que é que você está fazendo?
  - 1. O que é que você está estudando?
  - 2. O que é que você está comendo?
  - 3. O que é que você está preparando?
  - 4. O que é que você está bebendo?
  - 5. O que é que você está comprando?
  - 6. O que é que você está lendo?
  - 7. O que é que você está falando?
- B. Model: Quem é que está falando?
  - 1. Quem é que está praticando?
  - 2. Quem é que está saindo?
  - 3. Quem é que está dirigindo?
  - 4. Quem é que está falando?
  - 5. Quem é que está dormindo?
  - 6. Quem é que está estudando?
  - 7. Ouem é que está morando?
- C. Model: Por que é que ele está praticando?
  - 1. Por que é que ele está dormindo?
  - 2. Por que é que ele está descansando?
  - 3. Por que é que ele está saindo?
  - 4. Por que é que ele está estudando?
  - 5. Por que é que ele está dirigindo?
  - 6. Por que é que ele está trabalhando?
  - 7. Por que é que ele está lendo?
- D. Model: Onde é que eles estão estudando?
  - 1. Onde é que eles estão dormindo?
  - 2. Onde é que eles estão lendo?
  - 3. Onde é que eles estão almoçando?
  - 4. Onde é que eles estão morando?
  - 5. Onde é que eles estão praticando?
  - 6. Onde é que eles estão trabalhando?
  - 7. Onde é que eles estão passando a noite?

### Expansion Exercise 2.

- Model: A. O que há com o Paulo? Ele sempre está cansado.
  - B. Eu sei lá. Parece que está trabalhando demais.
- A. O que há com o Sr. Ferreira? Ele está sempre com fome.
  - B. Eu sei lá. Parece que ele gosta de comer.
- 2. A. O que há com a Maria? Ela ainda não está acordada.
  - B. Eu sei lá. Parece que ela deitou tarde.
- 3. A. O que há com Paulo? Ele sempre está dormindo.
  - B. Eu sei lá. Eu acho que ele está trabalhando à noite.
- 4. A. O que há com ele? Ele sempre está esquecendo o livro.
  B. Eu sei lá. Parece que ele não gosta de português.

#### Expansion Exercise 3.

- Model: A. Mas ele é bom, viu?
  B. É mesmo.
- 1. A. Mas ele é americano, viu?
  - B. É mesmo.
- 2. A. Mas ele fala bem, viu?
  - B. Fala mesmo.
- 3. A. Mas ele dirige bem, viu?
  - B. Dirige mesmo.
- 4. A. Mas ele gosta de comer, viu?
  - B. Gosta mesmo.
- 5. A. Mas ele caiu, viu?
  - B. Caiu mesmo!
- 6. A. Mas ele voltou tarde, viu?
  - B. Voltou mesmo.
- 7. A. Mas ele deixou tudo no carro, viu?
  - B. Deixou mesmo.

#### Expansion Exercise 4.

Models: Ele é brasileiro, viu? É mesmo?

Ele trabalhou ontem, viu?
Trabalhou mesmo?

- 1. Ele é solteiro, viu?
   É mesmo?
- 2. Ele fala espanhol, viu? Fala mesmo?

- 3. Ele conhece o presidente, viu? Conhece mesmo?
- 4. Ela vai diretamente ao Rio, viu? Vai mesmo?
- 5. Ela já comprou as passagens, viu? Comprou mesmo?
- 6. Ela foi pela Pan Am, viu? Foi mesmo?
- 7. É difícil, viu? É mesmo?
- 8. Foi difícil, viu? Foi mesmo?
- 9. Foram a Florida, viu? Foram mesmo?
- 10. O inglês dele é péssimo, viu? É mesmo?
- 11. A. Paulo! está na hora de levantar.
   B. (Bocejo)...Está mesmo?
- 13. A. Paulo...são às sete e meia!
  B. Uh...são mesmo?
- 14. A. Paulo...Acorde...Temos exame hoje!
- B. (Bocejo)...Temos mesmo?
- 15. A. Paulo...Acorde!
  - B. (Bocejo)...Estou acordado!
  - C. Está mesmo?

### Expansion Exercise 6.

Model: Ele está sempre dando provas.

- 1. Ele está sempre dando telefonemas.
- 2. Ele está sempre estudando.
- 3. Dona Barbara está sempre falando com o Sr. Ferreira.
- 4. Pona Barbara está sempre saindo com ele.
- 5. Eu estou sempre fazendo isso.
- 6. Eu estou sempre esquecendo o meu livro.
- 7. Você está sempre falando isso.
- 8. Você está sempre comendo.
- 9. Você está sempre notando o meu sotaque.

## Expansion Exercise 7.

Model: Você nunca descansa?

- 1. Você nunca trabalha?
- 2. Você nunca vai a Nova York?
- 3. Você nunca estuda?
- 4. Você nunca chega tarde?
- 5. Você nunca abre as janelas?
- 6. Ele nunca sai cedo?
- 7. Ele nunca se sente bem?
- 8. Ele nunca se deita cedo?
- 9. Ele nunca para em Washington?
- 10. Ele nunca tem que estudar?

#### Comprehension

- 1. Ele está falando com o presidente.
- 2. Ele está falando como o presidente.
- 3. Ele está comendo com um menino.
- 4. Ele está comendo como um menino.
- 5. Eles pararam num hotel.
- 6. Eles pararam num motel.
- 7. O hotel é muito bom, viu?
- 8. É mesmo. E novo também.
- 9. O hotel é muito bom, não é?
- 10. É mesmo. E é muito velho, sabe?
- 11. Ele é casado, não é?
- 12. Não, não é. É solteiro.
- 13. É minha vez?
- 14 É sim.
- 15. É minha vez de repetir?
- 16. Não, é minha.
- 17. É sua vez de falar?

- 18. É sim. Mas não vou falar nada. Estou cansado.
- 19. O que é que o Paulo está fazendo?
- 20. Eu sei lá. Vamos falar com ele?
- 21. O que é que o Paulo está estudando?
- 22. Eu sei lá. Por que não falamos com ele?
- 23. Quando é que o Paulo vai para o Brasil?
- 24. Não sei. Parece que o Paulo também não sabe.
- 25. Olhe, mudando de assunto, quando vamos jantar?
- 26. Olhe, falando de outro assunto, quando é que a gente vai jantar?
- 27. Olhe, falando de outro assunto, o que é que você acha da Embaixada?
- 28. Olhe, mudando de assunto, eu gosto muito do seu carro.
- 29. Olhe, mudando de assunto, eu estou gostando muito do seu carro.
- 30. Nós estamos estudando muito porque temos exame amanhã.
- 31. Nós estamos trabalhando muito porque temos que sair hoje à noite.
- 32. Nós estamos voltando cedo porque temos que trabalhar amanhã.
- 33. Este é o meu novo carro. É um Chevrolet.
- 34. Este é o meu novo professor. Ele é de São Paulo.
- 35. E lembre que é minha vez.
- 36. E lembre que ela é casada.
- 37. E lembre que eu tenho exame amanhã.
- 38. E lembre que o professor Ferreira é novo.
- 39. E lembre que eu não me sinto muito bem hoje.
- 40. E lembre que amanhã a gente vem no meu carro.
- 41. Eu nunca saio cedo.
- 42. Eu nunca estudo.
- 43. Eu nunca tenho que estudar.
- 44. Eu nunca tenho que praticar.

#### Programming

# Practice 3.

- 1. Este carro é Chevrolet.
- 2. Esse carro é Ford.
- 3. Esta casa é velha.
- 4. Este diálogo é difícil.
- 5. Esse diálogo é horrível.
- 6. Esta vista é maravilhosa.
- 7. Estes carros são americanos.
- 8. Estas meninas falam inglês.
- 9. Estes meninos são brasileiros.
- 10. Essas meninas são americanas.
- 11. Estes brasileiros trabalham muito.
- 12. Estes professores são do Brasil.

# Practice 4.

Model: Você conhece essa moça?

- 1. Você conhece esse professor?
- 2. Você conhece este restaurante?
- 3. Você conhece esta cidade?
- 4. Você conhece este livro?
- 5. Você conhece essas crianças?
- 6. Você conhece esses americanos?
- 7. Você conhece esses estados?

### Practice 5.

Model: A senhora estudou esta lição?

- 1. A senhora preparou estas lições?
- 2. A senhora leu este livro?
- 3. A senhora escreveu essas cartas?
- 4. A senhora trabalhou muito esta hora?
- 5. A senhora preparou esta comida?
- 6. A senhora comprou este café no Brasil?
- 7. A senhora notou esse sotaque? Nossa!

### Practice 6.

Model: Este é o meu amigo, Carlos.

- 1. Este é o meu amigo, Paulo.
- 2. Esta é a minha amiga, Sandra.
- 3. Esta é a minha esposa, Brünhilde.
- 4. Esta é a minha filha, Ângela.
- 5. Essa é a minha filha, Luísa.
- 6. Esse é o meu filho, Roberto.
- 7. Esses são os meus filhos, Roberto and Paulo.
- 8. Essas são as minhas filhas, Ângela and Luísa.
- 9. Estes são os meus livros.
- 10. Estes são os meus pneus.
- 11. Estes são as minhas passagens.
- 12. Estas são as minhas crianças
- 13. Este é o meu carro.
- 14. Este é o meu escritório.
- 15. Este é o meu intervalo.

# Expansion Exercise 2.

Model 1: Dá para ir às montanhas.

- " 2: Dá para ir à praia.
- " 3: Dá para tomar café.
- " 4: Dá para fazer um passeio.
- 1. Dá para escrever uma carta.
- 2. Dá para ir à cidade.
- 3. Dá para almoçar no centro.
- 4. Dá para falar com a professora.
- 5. Dá para parar na Flórida.
- 6. Dá para ler o jornal.
- 7. Dá para fazer um sanduíche.
- 8. Dá para dormir mais uma hora.

### Expansion Exercise 3.

Model 1: Que calor!

- " 2: Oue carro!
- " 3: Oue festa!
- " 4: Que tráfego!
- 1. Que professora!
- 2. Que restaurante!
- 3. Que amigo!
- 4. Que sanduíche!
- 5. Que cidade!
- 6. Que vista!
- 7. Que livro!
- 8. Que palavra!
- 9. Que dorminhoco!
- 10. Que comida!

# Expansion Exercise 5.

## Model Sentence A: Não gosto da cidade.

- 1. Não gosto da situação.
- 2. Não gosto da solução.
- 3. Não gosto da organização.
- 4. Não gosto da expressão.
- 5. Não gosto da missão.
- 6. Não gosto da decisão.
- 7. Não gosto da conclusão.

# Model Sentence B: O que é que você acha da praia?

- 1. O que é que você acha da invasão?
- 2. O que é que você acha da solução?
- 3. O que é que você acha da expressão?
- 4. O que é que você acha da situação?
- 5. O que é que você acha da repetição?
- 6. O que é que você acha da organização?
- O que é que você acha da decisão?
   Model Sentence C: A praia é boa.

#### Model Bentence C. A p.

1. A decisão é boa.

2.

3. A repetição é boa.

A situação é boa.

- 4. A solução é boa.
- 5. A posição é boa.
- 6. A administração é boa.
- 7. A promoção é boa.
- 8. A visão é boa.

# Expansion Exercise 8

- 1. Uma solução legal.
- 2. Uma decisão legal.
- 3. Uma organização legal.
- 4. A decisão final.
- 5. A conclusão final.
- 6. A promoção anual.
- 7. Minha promoção anual.
- 8. Minha missão especial.
- 9. Uma operação normal.
- 10. A operação final.
- 11. A repetição final.
- 12. A solução final.
- 13. A promoção final.
- 14. Uma promoção normal.
- 15. A posição oficial.
- 16. A posição social.

### Comprehension

- 1. A. Você nota que eu estou almoçando muito?
  - B. Noto, e não estou gostando.
- 2. A. Eu moro em Copacabana. E vocês? Onde é que vocês moram?
  - B. Nós moramos lá também.
- 3. A. A que horas você começa?
  - B. Eu começo cedo, às seis.
- 4. A. Este escritório é meu?
  - B. É, é seu.
  - A. Que bom! Que vista!

- 5. A. Este livro é seu?
  - B. É meu, sim. Obrigado.
- 6. A. Esse livro é seu?
  - B. Não, é do Roberto.
- 7. A. Estes sanduíches são seus?
  - B. Não, são deles.
- 8. A. Essa Coca-Cola é sua?
  - B. Não, é da Sandra.
- 9. A. Esta comida é boa, não é?
  - B. Não, eu não gosto.
  - A. Você não está com fome!
- 10. A. Esta casa é sua?
  - B. Não, é dos meus pais.

# Units 21 and 22 - See Text.

#### Unit 23

#### Practice I

## Group I

- 1. Eu estava acordado.
- 2. Eu estava cansado.
- 3. Eu estava com sono.
- 4. Ele estava com pressa.
- 5. Ele estava com fome.
- 6. Eu estava resfriado.
- 7. O tráfego estava horrível.

## Group II

- 1. Eu tinha sotaque inglês.
- 2. Ela tinha sotaque português.
- Eu tinha Ford.
- 4. Ela tinha Chevrolet.
- 5. Nós tínhamos certeza.
- 6. Eles tinham razão.
- 7. Nós tinhamos dois.
- 8. Eles tinham três.

#### Group III

- 1. Eu era funcionário.
- 2. Ela era professora.
- 3. Nós éramos americanos.
- 4. Eles eram brasileiros.
- 5. Ela era secretária.
- 6. Ela era solteira.
- 7. Ele era o presidente.
- 8. Ele era casado.
- 9. Eles eram de Nova York.
- 10. Nós éramos de Pennsylvania.

#### Practice 2.

- 1. O Bill era americano.
- 2. Ele era funcionário do Departamento de Estado.
- 3. Ele falava português bem.
- 4. Ele tinha muita oportunidade de praticar.
- 5. Por quê? Porque ele morava e trabalhava no Rio.

## Practice 3.

- 1. A Yara era brasileira.
- 2. Ela era de São Paulo.
- 3. Ela falava inglês bem.
- 4. Ela falava sem sotaque.
- 5. Ela trabalhava no Rio.
- 6. Ela viajava muito.
- 7. Ela passava os fins de semana em casa.
- 8. Ela ia a praia.
- 9. Ela gostava do seu trabalho.

# Programming

# Practice 2.

- É fácil voltar cedo.
- É fácil vender o carro.
- É difícil trabalhar com ele.
- É difícil ser bom funcionário.
- E possivel levar sanduiches.
- É possível comprar as passagens aqui.

# Section I

# Nouns

# Practice 1.

- 1. o jornal
- 2. o exame
- 3. a praia
- 4. o livro
- 5. a passagem
- 6. a porta
- 7. a filha
- 8. o refrigerante
- 9. a montanha
- 10. o funcionário
- 11. a empresa
- 12. a seção
- 13. o sanduíche
- 14. a noite
- 15. a hora
- 16. a oportunidade
- 17. o fim de semana
- 18. o cartão
- 19. o feriado
- 20. o calor

# Practice 2.

- 1. uma festa
- 2. um parque
- 3. um túnel
- 4. uma avenida
- 5. uma semana
- 6. uma cidade
- 7. uma idéia
- 8. um restaurante
- 9. um dorminhoco
- 10. uma ponte
- 11. uma carta
- 12. uma senhora
- 13. um senhor
- 14. uma secretária
- 15. uma casa
- 16. uma escola
- 17. um terno
- 18. um dia

# Practice 3.

- 1. umas festas
- 2. uns parques
- 3. uns túneis
- 4. umas avenidas
- 5. umas semanas

- 6. umas cidades
- 7. umas idéias
- 8. uns restaurantes
- 9. uns dorminhocos
- 10. umas pontes
- 11. umas cartas
- 12. umas senhoras
- 13. uns senhores
- 14. umas secretárias
- 15. umas casas
- 16. umas escolas
- 17. uns ternos
- 18. uns dias

# Practice 4.

- l. esta lição
- 2. esta vista
- 3. este carro
- 4. este estado
- 5. este escritório
- 6. esta embaixada
- 7. essa palavra
- 8. essa idéia
- 9. esse sotaque

- 10. esse café
- 11. essa carta
- 12. essa moça
- 13. estas montanhas
- 14. estas praias
- 15. estes dias
- 16. estes assuntos
- 17. estas casas
- 18. estas lições
- 19. esses senhores
- 20. esses livros
- 21. esses sanduíches
- 22. essas máquinas
- 23. essas palavras
- 24. esses túneis

## Practice 5.

- 1. a minha casa
- 2. o meu livro
- 3. a minha mãe
- 4. o meu dinheiro
- 5. o meu sotaque
- 6. o meu filho
- 7. o meu sapato

- 8. o seu inglês
- 9. o seu café
- 10. a sua esposa
- 11. o seu pneu
- 12. o sua gramática
- 13. o seu escritório
- 14. o seu amigo
- 15. o nosso filho
- 16. a nossa filha
- 17. a nossa embaixada
- 18. o nosso dinheiro
- 19. a nossa porta
- 20. o nosso professor
- 21. a nossa professora
- 22. a nossa escola
- 23. o nosso carro
- 24. a nossa hora
- 25. as minhas idéias
- 26. as minhas janelas
- 27. os meus amigos
- 28. os meus pais
- 29. os meus livros
- 30. as minhas filhas

- 31. os meus filhos
- 32. as suas festas
- 33. as suas cartas
- 34. os seus pais
- 35. os seus jornais
- 36. as suas oportunidades
- 37. as suas palavras
- 38. os seus professores
- 39. as nossas passagens
- 40. as nossas máquinas
- 41. os nossos sanduíches
- 42. as nossas mesas
- 43. os nossos amigos
- 44. as nossas cidades
- 45. os nossos fins de semana

## Practice 7

- 1. o dinheiro dele
- 2. o sotaque dele
- 3. a esposa dele
- 4. a filha dele
- 5. o filho dele
- 6. o sapato dele
- 7. o Chevrolet dele

- 8. a festa dela
- 9. a máquina dela
- 10. o café dela
- 11. o intervalo dela
- 12. a carta dela
- 13. o emprego dela
- 14. o Ford dela
- 15. os carros dele
- 16. os sanduíches dele
- 17. as filhas dele
- 18. os pais dele
- 19. os filhos dele
- 20. as palavras dele
- 21. os carros dela
- 22. os sanduíches dela
- 23. as filhas dela
- 24. os pais dela
- 25. as palavras dela

# Practice 8.

- 1. o livro do Paulo
- 2. o sotaque do Paulo
- 3. a secretária do Paulo
- 4. a passagem do Paulo

- 5. a esposa do Luís
- 6. o dinheiro do Luís
- 7. a casa do Luís
- 8. o sapato do Luís
- 9. o filho da Sônia
- 10. a idéia da Sônia
- 11. o inglês da Sônia
- 12. a carta da Sônia
- 13. o café da Inês
- 14. a passagem da Inês
- 15. a comida da Inês
- 16. o Chevrolet da Inês
- 17. os livros do Antônio
- 18. os amigos do Antônio
- 19. as passagens do Antônio
- 20. os filhos do Antônio
- 21. as crianças da Ângela
- 22. as cartas da Ângela
- 23. os pais da Ângela
- 24. as amigas da Ângela

## Contractions

Practice 9 - See Text.

## Practice 10:

- 1. Eu vou ao Rio.
- 2. Eu vou ao centro.
- 3. Eu vou ao escritório.
- 4. Eu vou à Embaixada.
- 5. Eu vou à Seção Política.
- 6. Eu vou ao meio-dia.
- 7. Vamos ao restaurante.
- 8. Vamos ao parque.
- 9. Vamos à cidade.
- 10. Vamos ao Consulado.
- 11. Vamos à Inglaterra.
- 12. Vamos à casa do José.
- 13. Nós mandamos ao Consulado.
- 14. Nós mandamos à Embaixada.
- 15. Nós mandamos ao centro.
- 16. Nós mandamos à Alemanha.
- 17. Nós mandamos ao Rio.
- 18. Nós mandamos ao Brasil.
- 19. Nós mandamos à casa dela.
- 20. Eu deitei às onze.
- 21. Eu caí no sono à meia-noite.
- 22. Eu acordei às seis e meia.
- 23. Eu levantei às sete.
- 24. Eu saí às oito.
- 25. Eu cheguei às oito e meia.
- 26. Eu comecei às nove.
- 27. Eu almocei ao meio-dia.

Practice 11 - See Text.

#### Practice 12:

- 1. Eu vou às montanhas.
- 2. Ele vai às cidades.
- 3. Nós vamos às festas.
- 4. Ela vai às sete.
- 5. Nós fomos aos parques.
- 6. Ele foi aos escritórios no centro.
- 7. Eles vão aos restaurantes.
- 8. Eu fui às dez.
- 9. Ela foi ontem às três.
- 10. Eles foram às escolas.

Practice 13 - See Text.

Practice 14 - See Text.

Practice 15 - See Text.

Practice 16 - See Text.

## Adjectives

Practice 17 - See Text.

#### Practice 18:

- A. l. O carro dele é bonito.
  - 2. O carro dele é caro.
  - 3. O carro dele é azul.
  - 4. O carro dele é útil.
  - 5. O carro dele é horrível.
  - 6. O carro dele é famoso.

- B. l. Tânía é brasileira.
  - 2. Tânía é bonita.
  - 3. Tânía é solteira.
  - 4. Vânia é portuguesa.
  - 5. Vânia é casada.
  - 6. Vânia é velha.
- C. 1. O senhor Mattos trabalha numa empresa particular.
  - 2. O senhor Mattos trabalha numa empresa americana.
  - 3. O senhor Mattos trabalha numa empresa brasileira.
  - 4. O senhor Mattos trabalha numa empresa velha.
  - 5. O senhor Mattos trabalha numa empresa local.
  - 6. O senhor Mattos trabalha numa empresa famosa.
  - 7. O senhor Mattos trabalha numa empresa comercial.
- D. 1. O trabalho dele é fácil.
  - O trabalho dele é difícil.
  - 3. O trabalho dele é bom.
  - 4. O trabalho dele é útil.
  - 5. O trabalho dele é péssimo.
  - 6. O trabalho dele é político.
- E. 1. Marli tem uma vista maravilhosa.
  - 2. Marli tem uma vista boa.
  - 3. Marli tem uma vista horrível.
  - 4. Marli tem uma vista bonita.
  - 5. Marli tem uma vista ótima.
- F. 1. Cláudia comprou um sapato brasileiro.
  - 2. Cláudia comprou um sapato bonito.
  - 3. Cláudia comprou um sapato azul.
  - 4. Cláudia comprou um sapato caro.
  - 5. Cláudia comprou um sapato americano.
  - 6. Cláudia comprou um sapato bom.

- G. 1. Vai ser um dia difícil.
  - 2. Vai ser um dia bonito.
  - 3. Vai ser um dia fácil.
  - 4. Vai ser um dia maravilhoso.
  - 5. Vai ser um dia útil.
  - 6. Vai ser um dia péssimo.
  - 7. Vai ser um dia ótimo.
  - 8. Vai ser um dia gostoso.

#### Section II

Practices 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 - See Text.

### Practice 6:

- 1. Nossa! Eu achava que ele era solteiro.
- 2. Nossa! Eu achava que ele tinha dinheiro.
- 3. Nossa! Eu achava que você sabia isso.
- 4. Nossa! Eu achava que Marcos ia também.
- 5. Nossa! Eu achava que Yara estava em casa.
- 6. Desculpe. Eu achava que o senhor se sentia bem.
- 7. Desculpe. Eu achava que o senhor conhecia o Paulo.
- 8. Desculpe. Eu achava que o senhor falava inglês.
- 9. Desculpe. Eu achava que o senhor morava no Leme.
- 10. Desculpe. Eu achava que o senhor trabalhava aqui.
- 11. Sinto muito. Eu achava que você saía agora.
- 12. Sinto muito. Eu achava que a gente ia à praia.
- 13. Sinto muito. Eu achava que a festa era hoje.
- 14. Sinto muito. Eu achava que era uma boa idéia.

- 15. Sinto muito. Eu achava que eram dez horas.
- Sinto muito. Eu achava que você levava os refrigerantes.
- 17. Hoje? Eu não sabia que você ia hoje.
- 18. Hoje? Eu não sabia que você praticava hoje.
- 19. Amanhã? Eu não sabia que você saía amanhã.
- 20. Agora? Eu não sabia que você pretendia ir agora.
- 21. As cinco? Eu não sabia que a festa era às cinco.
- 22. Hoje à noite? Eu não sabia que você tinha que trabalhar hoje à noite.
- 23. Ah, é? Eu não sabia que ele era o chefe.
- 24. Ah, é? Eu não sabia que ela era portuguesa.
- 25. Ah, é? Eu não sabia que Recife ficava tão longe.
- 26. Ah, é? Eu não sabia que Júlio tinha tanto dinheiro.
- 27. Ah, é? Eu não sabia que Maria chegava em casa tão tarde.
- 28. Já? Eu não sabia que ele estava com tanta fome.
- 29. Já? Eu não sabia que ele estava com tanta pressa.
- 30. Já? Eu não sabia que ele sabia tanto.
- 31. Já? Eu não sabia que horas eram.
- 32. Já? Eu não sabia que estava na hora de parar.

## Section III

- A. The verb ser
  - Practices 1 and 2 See Text.
- B. The verb estar
  - Practices 1 and 2 See Text.

C. The verbs ser and estar mixed.

A Glória é americana; ela é de Duluth.

Ela é secretária.

Ela é bonita, e é casada.

Ela não está no escritório hoje.

Está em casa.

A casa dela é em Copacabana.

Ela está resfriada.

Não está com fome.

Ela não está com pressa agora.

Ela está descansando.

O Jorge é brasileiro.

Ele é da Bahia.

Ele é solteiro, e é bonito.

Ele é professor.

O Jorge é meu amigo, e é dorminhoco!

São nove horas, e ele está aqui no Consulado.

Mas ele ainda não está acordado.

Ele ainda está com sono.

Ele está com fome também.

Ele está tomando café e comendo um sanduíche.

As vezes ele está impossível!

D. The verb ir

Practices 1 and 2 - See Text.

E. The verb ter

Practice 1 - See Text.

#### Practice 2:

- 1. Quantos carros você tem?
- 2. Quantas crianças você tem?
- 3. Quantos sanduíches ele tem?

- 4. Quantas passagens eles têm?
- 5. Quantos chefes nós temos?
- 6. Quanto dinheiro você tem?
- 7. É verdade. Eduardo tem três carros.
- 8. É verdade. Henrique tem muito dinheiro.
- 9. É verdade. Eu tenho uma carta para você.
- 10. É verdade. Nós temos uma boa oportunidade.
- 11. É verdade. Carlos tem outro emprego.
- 12. É verdade. Eles só têm um.
- 13. É verdade. O senhor tem que lembrar tudo.
- 14. É verdade. Nós temos que estudar mais.
- 15. Não é verdade! Eu não tenho que comer menos!
- 16. Que pena! Eles tiveram que sair.
- 17. Que pena! Eles tiveram que trabalhar hoje.
- 18. Que pena! Nós tivemos que vender o carro.
- 19. Que pena! Eu tive que escrever outra carta.
- 20. Que pena! Glória teve que ficar em casa.
- 21. Que pena! Você teve que começar outra vez.
- 22. Que pena! Fernando teve que fazer tudo.
- 23. Que amanhã! Eu tenho que sair hoje.
- 24. Que às sete! Eu tenho que levantar às seis.
- 25. Que mais tarde! Eu tenho que ir agora.
- 26. Que espanhol! Ele tem que falar português.
- 27. Que descansar! Nós temos que trabalhar.
- 28. Que pela Varig! Eles tem que viajar pela Pan Am.
- 29. Que eu! Você é que tem que comer menos.
- 30. Que eu! Meu chefe é que tem que fazer isso.

#### Section IV

# Asking Questions with Question Words.

- A. Model: O que é que ele quer?
  - 1. O que é que ele tem?
  - 2. O que é que ele faz?
  - 3. O que é que ele pretende?
  - 4. O que é que ele fala?
  - 5. O que é que ele sabe?
  - 6. O que é que ele acha?
  - 7. O que é que ele ensina?
  - 8. O que é que ele lê?
  - 9. O que é que ele prefere?
- B. Model: Quem é essa moça?
  - 1. Ouem é ela?
  - 2. Ouem é dona Alice?
  - 3. Quem é o casado?
  - 4. Ouem é a solteira?
  - 5. Quem é o bonito?
  - 6. Quem é a bonita?
  - 7. Quem é o espanhol?
  - 8. Ouem é a americana?
  - 9. Quem é a mais velha?
- C. Model: Onde é que ele dorme?
  - 1. Onde é que ele trabalha?
  - 2. Onde é que ele mora?
  - 3. Onde é que ele pratica?
  - 4. Onde é que ele vai?
  - 5. Onde é que ele ensina?
  - 6. Onde é que ele almoça?
  - 7. Onde é que ele come?
  - 8. Onde é que ele passa os fins de semana?
  - 9. Onde é que ele toma café?

- D. Model: Quando é que o senhor lembrou?
  - 1. Quando é que o senhor estudou?
  - 2. Quando é que o senhor lembrou?
  - 3. Quando é que o senhor foi?
  - 4. Quando é que o senhor chegou?
  - 5. Quando é que o senhor vendeu?
  - 6. Quando é que o senhor praticou?
  - 7. Quando é que o senhor se perdeu?
  - 8. Quando é que o senhor notou?
  - 9. Quando é que o senhor nasceu?
- E. Model: Por que é que o senhor não estudou?
  - 1. Por que é que o senhor não foi?
  - 2. Por que é que o senhor não voltou?
  - 3. Por que é que o senhor não saiu?
  - 4. Por que é que o senhor não escreveu a carta?
  - 5. Por que é que o senhor não mandou o dinheiro?
  - 6. Por que é que o senhor não trabalhou ontem?
  - 7. Por que é que o senhor não ficou até a meia-noite?
  - 8. Por que é que o senhor não comprou o terno?
  - 9. Por que é que o senhor não levou sanduíches?
- F. Model: Como é que ela sabe?
  - 1. Como é que ela dorme?
  - 2. Como é que ela fala?
  - 3. Como é que ela lembra?
  - 4. Como é que ela compra?
  - 5. Como é que ela vende?
  - 6. Como é que ela viaja?
  - 7. Como é que ela vai?
  - 8. Como é que ela se sente?
  - 9. Como é que ela faz isso?

# FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE LANGUAGE PUBLICATIONS available from

# U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C. 20402 and from

Spoken Language Services, Inc., P. O. Box 783, Ithaca, N. Y. 14850

(Spoken Language Services agrees to supply the items below (subject to availability) at current GPO prices when inquiries indicate that ordering information was obtained from the Foreign Service Institute.)

0F CF +10 .

*Amharic	(Units 1-50)	\$5.65	*Contemporary Cambodian:	
*Amharic	(Units 51-60)	\$6.00	Introduction	\$5.40
*Saudi Arabic	(Units 1-50)	\$4.50	*Contemporary Cambodian:	,
*Bulgarian	(Units 1-15)	\$6.75	Land and the Economy	\$4.30
*Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	\$5.05	*Contemporary Cambodian:	
*Cambodian	(Units 46-90)	\$5.25	Political Institutions	\$4.30
*Cantonese	(Units 1-15)	\$7.50	*Contemporary Cambodian:	
*Cantonesc	(Units 16-30)	\$7.50	The Social Institutions	\$5.10
*Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	\$3.70	Dutch Reader	\$4.00
*French	(Units 1-12)	\$5.75	*Finnish Graded Reader	\$7.00
*French	(Units 13-24)	\$7.75	*French Phonology, Programmed	
*Fula	(Units 1-40)	\$5.50	Introduction	\$5.25
*German	(Units 1-12)	\$4.00	French Phonology, Programmed	
*German	(Units 13-24)	\$4.35	Introduction (Instructor's	
*Greek	(Vol. I)	\$5.50	Manual)	\$3.00
*Greek	(Vol. II)	\$5.50	*German: A Programmed	
*Greek	(Vol. III)	\$5.50	Introduction	\$7.75
*Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	\$6.75	Hindi - An Active Introduction	\$2.10
*Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	\$4.75	*Hungarian Graded Reader	\$7.30
*Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	\$3.55	Indonesian Newspaper Reader	\$3.10
*Kituba	(Units 1-35)	\$4.15	*Italian (Programmed) Vol. I	\$6.70
*Korean	(Vol. I)	\$6.05	Italian, (Programmed) Vol. I	
*Korean	(Vol. II)	\$4.65	Instructor's Manual	\$4.05
Lao	(Vol. I)	\$5.00	*Reading Lao: A Programmed	,
Lao	(Vol. II)	\$4.35	Introduction	\$5.25
*Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-24)	\$6.80	Communicating in Polish	\$3.40
*Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	\$7.10	*Portuguese: Programmatic	, .
*Spanish	(Units 1-15)	\$8.45	Course, Vol. I	\$7.75
*Spanish	(Units 16-30)	\$8.00	*Portuguese: Programmatic	• • • •
*Spanish	(Units 31-45)	\$8.10	Course, Vol. II	\$10.00
*Spanish	(Units 46-55)	\$5.15	Portuguese: Programmatic Course	
*Swahili	(Units 1-150)	\$6.75	(Instructor's Man., Vol. I)	\$3.70
*Thai	(Units 1-20)	\$5.60	Sinhala Basic Course, Mod. I	40
*Thai	(Units 21-40)	\$4.70	Beginning Signs & Letters	\$4.25
*Turkish	(Units 1-30)	\$5.75	Sinhala Basic Course, Mod. II	,
*Turkish	(Units 31-50)	\$7.00	General Conversation	\$7.50
*Twi	(Units 1-20)	\$3.00	Sinhala Basic Course, Mod. III	,
*Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	\$6.00	Sinhala Structures	\$4.25
*Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	\$2.95	Spoken Brazilian Portuguese	¥ -1.=0
*Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	\$4.35	(Units 1-18)	\$6.05
TOTUDA	(Onits 1-43)	φ4.00	*From Spanish to Portuguese	\$1.60
Adapting and Writin	a I naminan		Russian: An Active Introduction	\$3.50
Adapting and Writing Language Lessons		\$5.15	Spanish Programmatic Course	Ψ0.00
From Eastern to Western Arabic		\$ .95	(Instructor's Manual, Vol. I)	\$1.75
*Levantine Arabic: Introduction		φ .50	*Spanish Programmatic Course	Ψ1.10
to Pronunciation		\$2.20	(Student Workbook, Vol. I)	\$6.50
Levantine and Egyptian Arabic		φ2.20	Spanish Programmatic Course	φ0.00
0.1		\$1.20	(Instructor's Manual, Vol. II)	\$3.50
Comparative Study		\$4.85	*Spanish Programmatic Course	φυ.υυ
*Modern Written Arabic, Vol. I		\$6.25	(Student Workbook, Vol.II)	\$10.00
*Modern Written Arabic, Vol. II		\$7.00	*Swahili General Conversation	\$1.80
Modern Written Arabic, Vol. III		φ1.00	*Swahili Geography	\$1.55
Contemporary Cambodian:		Ø1 1E	*Testing Kit: French & Spanish	\$4.75
Glossary		\$4.15	Vietnamese Familiarization Crse.	\$2.35
Contemporary Camb		¢1 50	*Yoruba Intermediate Texts	\$3.40
Grammatical Sl	cetcu	a1.00	Torupa Intermediate Texas	Ψ3.10

Supplies of all materials listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the agency from which the texts are ordered. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

<sup>\*</sup>Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D. C. 20409.